This is a quick-access, pocket-sized guide to the diagnosis and treatment of all major movement disorders. Written for busy practitioners who need an immediate reference at the bedside, it presents medical, behavioral, surgical, and nonpharmacological approaches in an expanded outline and bulleted format.

The revised and expanded second edition is divided into four convenient sections. The medical section provides a starting point for assessing and treating patients who present with a movement disorder and guides practitioners through the clinical presentation, diagnosis, and work up of all major disease categories. A new section on psychiatric issues delves into the behavioral features that typically manifest with Parkinson’s disease, Huntington’s disease, Tourette syndrome, and also covers conversion disorders with concomitant movement abnormalities. The surgical approach section has been completely updated to incorporate recent advances in functional neurosurgery including deep brain stimulation. The final section on nonpharmacologic therapies includes informative chapters on physical and occupational therapy, speech and swallowing evaluation and therapy, and nutrition.

The second edition also incorporates new information about sleep-related movement disorders and covers treatment of Parkinson’s disease in greater depth. Loaded with tables, algorithms, and flow charts that illustrate key concepts, outline management of disorders, and highlight important information about diagnosis and treatment, this book is a highly useful addition to the pockets of all clinicians who work with patients with movement disorders.

Key Features:
- Completely revised and updated second edition of popular practical resource for busy clinicians
- Covers medical, psychiatric, surgical, and nonpharmacologic approaches to all types of movement disorders
- Written concisely in expanded outline, bullet-point format for quick access to information
- Emphasizes diagnosis, work up, and treatment
- Packed with management algorithms, tables, and flow charts outlining drug dosing, side effects, and other therapeutic regimens
A PRACTICAL APPROACH TO
MOVEMENT DISORDERS
This book is warmly dedicated to our wives, Cecilia, Sandra, and Laura, and to our children, Annella Marie, Gabriella, Julia, Sameer, and Sara, for unconditionally supporting us in good times and bad; for providing us the strength to overcome all challenges, big and small; and most of all, for inspiring us to strive to become better men, with pride and with humility.

H. H. F.
A. G. M.
M. P.
CONTENTS

Contributors ix
Preface xiii
Acknowledgments xv

Share A Practical Approach to Movement Disorders

I Getting Started

1 The Body Language of Movement Disorders 3

II Neurological Approach to Movement Disorders

2 Tremors 27
3 Parkinsonism 45
4 Parkinson’s Disease 67
5 Dystonia 123
6 Chorea 149
7 Myoclonus 165
8 Ataxia 199
9 Tics 217
10 Sleep-Related Movement Disorders 229

III Psychiatric Approach to Movement Disorders

11 The Psychiatric Assessment 245
12 Psychiatric Issues in Parkinson’s Disease 259
13 Psychiatric Issues in Huntington’s Disease 271
14 Psychiatric Issues in Tourette Syndrome 279
15 Approach to Conversion Disorder 289
IV Surgical Approach to Movement Disorders

16   Surgical Approach to Movement Disorders  303

V Nonpharmacologic Approach to Movement Disorders

17   Physical and Occupational Therapy  321
18   Speech and Swallowing Therapy  337
19   Nutritional Considerations  369

Index  393
CONTRIBUTORS

Anwar Ahmed, MD
Staff, Center for Neurological Restoration
Fellowship Program Director, Section of Movement Disorders
Neurological Institute
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio
Neurological Approach to Tremors

Kristin Appleby, MD
Staff, Center for Neurological Restoration
Neurological Institute
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio
Neurological Approach to Tics

Joseph Austerman, DO
Staff, Center for Behavioral Health
Neurological Institute
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio
Psychiatric Issues in Tourette Syndrome

Jawad Bajwa, MD
Assistant Professor of Neurology
King Saud bin Abdulaziz University for Health Sciences
Riyadh, Saudi Arabia;
Program Director, Adult Movement Disorders and Neurorestoration
Clerkship Director, Neuroscience
Department of Neurology
National Neuroscience Institute  
King Fahd Medical City  
Riyadh, Saudi Arabia;  
Adjunct Assistant Professor of Neurology  
University of Florida  
Gainesville, Florida

*Neurological Approach to Ataxia*

**Amy Chan, PT, NCS**  
Clinical Specialist  
Mellen Center for Multiple Sclerosis  
Neurological Institute  
Cleveland Clinic  
Cleveland, Ohio

*Physical and Occupational Therapy*

**Margo Funk, MD, MA**  
Staff, Center for Behavioral Health  
Neurological Institute  
Cleveland Clinic  
Cleveland, Ohio

*Approach to Conversion Disorder*

**Gencer Genc, MD**  
Fellow, Center for Neurological Restoration  
Neurological Institute  
Cleveland Clinic  
Cleveland, Ohio;  
Neurologist, Gumussuyu Military Hospital  
Istanbul, Turkey

*Nutritional Considerations*

**Justin Havemann, MD**  
Staff, Center for Behavioral Health  
Neurological Institute  
Cleveland Clinic  
Cleveland, Ohio

*Psychiatric Issues in Parkinson's Disease*

**Ilia Itin, MD**  
Staff, Center for Behavioral Health  
Neurological Institute  
Cleveland Clinic  
Cleveland, Ohio

*Neurological Approach to Dystonia*
Thien Thien Lim, MD, MRCP (UK)
Fellow, Center for Neurological Restoration
Neurological Institute
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio;
Consultant, Island Hospital
Penang, Malaysia
*Neurological Approach to Parkinsonism*
*Neurological Approach to Parkinson’s Disease*

Andre G. Machado, MD, PhD
Director, Center for Neurological Restoration
Neurological Institute
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio
*Surgical Approach to Movement Disorders*

Raja Mehanna, MD
Fellow, Center for Neurological Restoration
Neurological Institute
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio;
Assistant Professor, Department of Neurology
University of Texas Health Science Center at Houston
Houston, Texas
*Neurological Approach to Sleep-Related Movement Disorders*

Heather Murphy, SLP
Clinical Specialist, Mellen Center for Multiple Sclerosis
Neurological Institute
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio
*Speech and Swallowing Therapy*

Rafael Palacio Jr, MD
Fellow, Center for Neurological Restoration
Neurological Restoration
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio;
Chief of Clinics
Western Batangas Medical Center
Balayan, Batangas, Philippines
*Getting Started: The Body Language of Movement Disorders*
Contributors

Mayur Pandya, DO
Staff, Center for Neurological Restoration
Director, Huntington’s Disease Comprehensive Clinic
Neurological Institute
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio
*The Psychiatric Assessment*
*Psychiatric Issues in Huntington’s Disease*

Joseph Rudolph, MD
Staff, Center for Regional Neurosciences
Neurological Institute
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio
*Neurological Approach to Dystonia*

Junaid Habib Siddiqui, MD, MRCP (UK)
Fellow, Movement Disorders
Center for Neurological Restoration
Neurological Institute
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio
*Neurological Approach to Myoclonus*

Sumeet Vadera, MD, PhD
Resident, Neurosurgery
Neurological Institute
Cleveland Clinic
Cleveland, Ohio
*Surgical Approach to Movement Disorders*

Ryan Walsh, MD, PhD
Staff, Lou Ruvo Center for Brain Health and Center for
  Neurological Restoration
Neurological Institute
Cleveland Clinic—Las Vegas
Las Vegas, Nevada
*Neurological Approach to Chorea*
Preface

Medicine is evolving at an unprecedented pace. Therefore, 7 years after the success of *A Practical Approach to Movement Disorders*, we felt that it was time for a second edition. Now more than ever, busy practicing clinicians need a quick guide to the diagnostic approach and to the medical, behavioral, surgical, and nonpharmacologic therapies for various movement disorders. To fill this need, we have kept the handy, paper-bound, fit-in-your-coat-pocket format and the practical yet authoritative guide to all types of movement disorders that was offered in the first edition. Our readers appreciated the expanded outline and bulleted point format with an emphasis on clinical presentation, diagnosis, workup, and management. However, we have added several new features, which we hope will increase the usefulness of this handbook for even the busiest clinician faced with a patient who has a movement disorder.

This handbook is now divided into four parts: neurological, psychiatric, surgical, and nonpharmacologic approaches to movement disorders. The first section, on the neurological approach, provides a starting point for the clinician who has a patient presenting with a movement disorder. A new chapter on sleep-related movement disorders has been added, the latest genetic discoveries have been incorporated, and the approach to Parkinson’s disease is discussed in greater depth. Another new addition to this book is the section on the psychiatric approach, as almost all movement disorders manifest with behavioral and psychiatric features, which can be intimidating to even the most experienced clinicians. Emphasis is placed on the psychiatric features of Parkinson’s disease, Huntington’s Disease, Tourette syndrome, and conversion disorders that present with movement abnormalities. With the recent advancements in functional neurosurgery, the section on the surgical approach has been completely updated. And finally, the section on the nonpharmacologic approach acknowledges the need for a comprehensive approach to treatment that includes nutritional, physical, occupational, speech, and swallowing therapy.
Content overlap between chapters was encouraged and is intentional, to emphasize essential concepts and principles in diagnosis and treatment. Also, several disorders can present with various movement disorder phenomenologies, and these are therefore discussed in several chapters. We added more figures, flow charts, and tables that simplify approaches and summarize key findings.

We hope that this second edition, even more than the first, will help to make the assessment and treatment of the most common movement disorders less intimidating and more rewarding.

Hubert H. Fernandez
Andre G. Machado
Mayur Pandya
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We would like to sincerely thank Christine Moore for the editorial support she has provided, without which this book would never have been finished, and Terri O’Brien for the wonderful illustrations and figures that make this book fun to read and easy to follow.

We would also like to thank our colleagues, including the following: Michael S. Okun, Ramon L. Rodriguez, Frank M. Skidmore, Harrison N. Jones, Neila J. Donovan, John C. Rosenbek, and Keith J. Myers, who all contributed to the first edition of Practical Approach to Movement Disorders and whose chapters served as the foundation for this second edition.
Getting Started
Movement is controlled by a highly evolved and sophisticated system of interacting circuits in the nervous system that allow human thought to be expressed! Because of this level of sophistication, disorders affecting the control of movement may have a plethora of manifestations. The treatment of movement disorders is a subspecialty of neurology concerned with patients who move either “too much” or “too little.” Therefore, movement disorders are neurological syndromes in which there is either an excess of movement (hyperkinesia) or a paucity of voluntary and automatic movements (hypokinesia) that is unrelated to weakness or spasticity.

- Most, but not all, movement disorders result from some element of basal ganglia dysfunction and are sometimes termed extrapyramidal disorders.
- However, movement disorders can also result from injury to the cerebral cortex, cerebellum, brainstem, spinal cord, peripheral nerves, and other elements of the central and peripheral nervous system.

Prevalence of Movement Disorders

Movement disorders are quite common. Before the recognition of restless legs syndrome (RLS), the most common movement disorder was essential tremor (ET). The estimated prevalence rates of the most common movement disorders per 100,000 of the general population are listed in Table 1.1.

Approach to the Patient with a Movement Disorder

The approach to a patient with a movement disorder, like that to a patient with any other condition, begins with taking the history of the illness (Figure 1.1). Then, the examination of a patient with a movement disorder depends on careful observation.
The first task should be to determine whether the phenomenon represents too little movement (hypokinesia) or too much movement (hyperkinesia) (Figure 1.2).

If the patient is hyperkinetic, the next question to be answered is whether the extraneous movements are involuntary, voluntary, or “semivoluntary.”

- It should be noted that as a general rule, abnormal involuntary movements, including those with an organic etiology, are exaggerated by anxiety, and most diminish or disappear during sleep.²

## HYPOKINETIC DISORDERS

Patients with hypokinetic disorders present with a paucity of symptoms and are often best observed while they are unaware that their examination has already begun. For example, patients can be observed from the time they enter the room to the moment when they reach the chair or examination table. Verbal prompting, although a standard part of examinations, may cause patients’ movements to be faster (or slower) than those of their usual state.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Movement Disorder</th>
<th>Prevalence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Restless legs syndrome</td>
<td>9,800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essential tremor</td>
<td>415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parkinson’s disease</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tourette syndrome</td>
<td>29–1,052</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary torsion dystonia</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemifacial spasm</td>
<td>7.4–14.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blepharospasm</td>
<td>13.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereditary ataxia</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huntington’s disease</td>
<td>2–12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson’s disease</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive supranuclear palsy</td>
<td>2–6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple systems atrophy</td>
<td>4.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 1.1
Features worth extracting from the patient’s history.

Figure 1.2
Classification of movement disorders.
Akinesia, bradykinesia, and hypokinesia literally mean “absence,” “slowness,” and “decreased amplitude” of movement, respectively. The three terms are commonly grouped together for convenience, and the conditions they describe are usually referred to collectively as bradykinesia (Figure 1.3).²

- Bradykinesia is one of the cardinal motor features of parkinsonism.
- These motor features are elicited during voluntary tasks and may also be seen when the automatic or “unvoluntary” movements associated with learned tasks are observed.

Parkinsonism is the most common cause of hypokinesia, but there are other, less common causes, such as cataplexy and drop attacks, catatonia, hypothyroid slowness, rigidity, and stiff muscles (Table 1.2).

Hypokinetic movements may be further subdivided into those with parkinsonian or nonparkinsonian etiologies (Figure 1.4).

Parkinsonism is the most recognized form of hypokinesia and accounts for about half of all hypokinetic movement disorders.

- It manifests as any combination of its four cardinal motor features: resting tremor, bradykinesia (slowness in movement), rigidity (stiffness), and gait/postural instability.
- Not all four motor features need to be present. At least two of the cardinal features need to be present, with one of them being resting tremor or bradykinesia, before the diagnosis of parkinsonism is made.
- There are several forms of parkinsonism, which can be broadly categorized as primary, secondary, parkinson-plus, and heredodegenerative disorders (Figure 1.5).
- In general, primary parkinsonism (ie, idiopathic Parkinson’s disease) is a progressive, neurodegenerative, almost “purely” parkinsonian disorder of unclear etiology. Sometimes, this diagnosis can be made only after other causes of parkinsonism have been systematically excluded. It is probably the most common form of parkinsonism.

Figure 1.3
The spectrum of bradykinesia.
## Table 1.2
Phenomenology of Movement Disorders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hyperkinetic Disorders</th>
<th>Hypokinetic Disorders</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common</strong></td>
<td><strong>Common</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chorea</td>
<td>Parkinsonism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dystonia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myoclonus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restless legs syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tremor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Less common</strong></td>
<td><strong>Less common</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal dyskinesia</td>
<td>Apraxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Akathetic movements</td>
<td>Blocking (holding) tics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia/asynergia/dysmetria</td>
<td>Cataplexy and drop attacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athetosis</td>
<td>Catatonia, psychomotor depression, and obsessional slowness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ballism</td>
<td>Freezing phenomenon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemifacial spasm</td>
<td>Hesitant gaits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperekplexia</td>
<td>Hypothyroid slowness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypnogenic dyskinesia</td>
<td>Rigidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumping disorders</td>
<td>Stiff muscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumpy stumps</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movement of toes and fingers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myokymia and synkinesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myorhythmia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxysmal dyskinesia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periodic movements in sleep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REM sleep behavior disorder</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereotypy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Figure 1.4
Classification of hypokinetic disorders according to the presence or absence of parkinsonism.
Secondary parkinsonism refers to parkinsonism with an identifiable cause, such as drug-induced parkinsonism (eg, by dopamine receptor blockers like antipsychotic and antiemetic drugs) or parkinsonism resulting from a stroke (vascular parkinsonism), infection (postencephalitic parkinsonism), or tumors in the basal ganglia.

**Parkinson-plus syndromes** are progressive neurodegenerative disorders in which parkinsonism is the main but not the only feature. Examples of Parkinson-plus disorders are the following: *progressive supranuclear palsy*, often presenting with early dementia, vertical gaze palsy, and frequent falls at disease onset; *multiple system atrophy*, characteristically presenting with a lack of tremor, relatively prominent cerebellar features (eg, ataxia and incoordination), significant autonomic dysfunction (eg, urinary incontinence, erectile dysfunction, orthostatic hypotension), and pyramidal features (eg, turned-up toes and spasticity); and *corticobasal ganglionic degeneration* or *corticobasal degeneration*, presenting with early dementia, cortical sensory loss, apraxia, limb dystonia, and “alien limb phenomenon” characterized by autonomous movements of a limb.

Other neurodegenerative disorders can also present with parkinsonism. The main difference between this group of disorders and the parkinson-plus disorders is that parkinsonism is not their most prominent feature. For example, Alzheimer disease is primarily a neurodegenerative disorder of memory dysfunction, but parkinsonism can occur at the later stages of the illness.

**Drop attacks** are sudden falls that occur with or without a loss of consciousness. They are caused by either a collapse of postural muscle tone or an abnormal contraction of the leg muscles during ambulation or standing.
- About two-thirds of cases of drop attacks are of unclear etiology.
- Known causes include epilepsy, myoclonus, startle reactions, and structural central nervous system lesions (e.g., cervical cord pathology from disk disease).
- Syncope is the most common nonneurological cause (Table 1.3).

**Cataplexy** is another cause of symptomatic drop attacks. Patients fall suddenly without a loss of consciousness, but with the inability to speak during an attack.

- There is often a preceding trigger, usually laughter or a sudden emotional stimulus.
- Cataplexy is one of the four cardinal features of narcolepsy, along with excessive sleepiness, sleep paralysis, and hypnagogic hallucinations (see Table 1.3).

**Catatonia** is a syndrome (not a specific diagnosis) that is characterized by catalepsy (development of fixed postures), waxy flexibility (retention of limbs for an indefinite period of time in the position in which they are placed), and mutism. It can also be associated with bizarre mannerisms.

- Patients remain in one position for hours and move exceedingly slowly in response to commands, but when they move spontaneously (e.g., scratch themselves), they do so quickly.
- Catatonia is classically a feature of schizophrenia but can also occur with severe depression, hysterical disorders, and even organic brain disease (see Table 1.3).

**Hypothyroid slowness** can be mistaken for parkinsonism. Additional clues, such as decreased metabolic rate, cool temperature, bradycardia, myxedema, and a lack of the rigidity and resting tremors seen in parkinsonism, should suggest the diagnosis (see Table 1.3).

### Table 1.3
**Features of Other Nonparkinsonian Hypokinetic Movements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drop Attacks</th>
<th>Cataplexy</th>
<th>Catatonia</th>
<th>Hypothyroid Slowness</th>
<th>Rigidity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Collapse of postural muscle tone, typically without (but can be with) loss of consciousness</td>
<td>Brief loss of postural muscle tone with inability to speak</td>
<td>Development of fixed postures, waxy flexibility, mutism, and bizarre mannerisms</td>
<td>Decreased metabolic rate</td>
<td>Increased muscle tone, especially noted with slow, passive motion (i.e., not velocity-dependent)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rigidity is characterized by an increase in muscle tone that is especially noted during slow and passive motion. It is distinguished from spasticity (a sign of corticospinal/pyramidal tract pathology) in that it is present equally in all directions of the passive movement. Rigidity is not velocity-dependent and as such does not exhibit the “clasp-knife” phenomenon. Rigidity is almost always associated with parkinsonism but can occur independently.

HYPERKINETIC DISORDERS

To help determine the phenomenology of hyperkinetic movement disorders, evaluate features such as rhythmicity, speed, duration, and movement pattern (eg, repetitive, flowing, continual, paroxysmal, diurnal).

- Hyperkinetic movements can be described based on how they are induced (ie, stimuli, action, exercise); the complexity of the movements (complex or simple); and their suppressibility (by volitional attention or by “sensory tricks”).

![Figure 1.6](image)

**Figure 1.6**
Movement categories based on volition.
It is also worthwhile to determine whether movements are accompanied by sensations such as restlessness or the urge to make a movement to release built-up tension.

The description of a hyperkinetic movement disorder should always identify which body parts are involved.²

As mentioned earlier, it is important to note that not all hyperkinetic movements are involuntary. Hyperkinetic (or hypokinetic) movements can be seen in four major states: automatic, voluntary, semivoluntary (eg, as in RLS or akathisia), and involuntary (Figure 1.6).

Common hyperkinetic disorders include RLS, dystonia, chorea, tics, myoclonus, and tremors (Table 1.4).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1.4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Characteristics of the Most Common Types of Hyperkinetic Disorders</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chorea</strong> Involuntary, irregular, purposeless, nonrhythmic, often abrupt,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rapid, and unsustained movements seem to flow randomly from one body part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to another; they are unpredictable in timing, direction, and distribution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dystonia</strong> Both agonist and antagonist muscles of a body region contract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simultaneously to produce a twisted posture of the limb, neck, or trunk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In contrast to chorea, dystonic movements repeatedly involve the same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group of muscles. They do not necessarily flow or affect different muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>groups randomly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Myoclonus</strong> Sudden, brief, shocklike jerks are caused by muscular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contraction (positive myoclonus) or inhibition (negative myoclonus, such</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as asterixis).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Restless legs syndrome</strong> An unpleasant, crawling sensation in the legs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(or arms), particularly during sitting and relaxation, is most prominent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the evening (but can also occur during the day). It disappears (or is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>significantly relieved) during ambulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tics</strong> Abnormal, stereotypic, repetitive movements (motor tics) or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abnormal sounds (phonic tics) can be suppressed temporarily but may need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be “released” at some point. The release provides internal “relief”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the patient until the next “urge” is felt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tremor</strong> An oscillatory, usually rhythmic (to-and-fro) movement of one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or more body parts, such as the neck, tongue, chin, or vocal cords or a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limb. The rate, location, amplitude, and constancy vary depending on the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specific type of tremor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Resting tremor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Postural/sustention tremor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Action/intention tremor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Less common hyperkinetic movement disorders include entities such as paroxysmal dyskinesia, stereotypies, episodic ataxia, RLS, periodic limb movements of sleep, myokymia, myorhythmia, hemifacial spasm, and hyperekplexia.\textsuperscript{1}

**Chorea** refers to involuntary, irregular, purposeless, nonrhythmic, abrupt, rapid, unsustained movements that seem to flow from one body part to another.

- They are unpredictable in timing, direction, and distribution.
- They can be partially suppressed, and the patient can often camouflage some of the movements by incorporating them into semipurposeful movements (termed *parakinesia*).
- An example of a movement disorder that presents primarily with chorea is Huntington’s disease.

Involuntary movements that are slow, writhing, and continuous are sometimes called *athetosis*. **Athetosis** has been used in two senses: to describe a class of slow, writhing, continuous, involuntary movements and to describe the syndrome of athetoid cerebral palsy.

- Athetotic movements affect the limbs, especially distally, but can also involve the axial musculature, including that of the neck, face, and tongue.
- Athetosis is often associated with sustained contractions producing abnormal posturing. In this regard, athetosis can blend with dystonia.
- However, these involuntary movements can sometimes be faster and blend with those of chorea; the term *choreoathetosis* is then used.
- *Pseudoathetosis* refers to distal athetoid movements of the fingers and toes due to loss of proprioception.\textsuperscript{2}
- When movements are very large in amplitude and involve primarily the proximal parts of the limbs, causing flinging and flailing limb movements, they are referred to as *ballism*.
- **Ballism** is frequently unilateral and is classically (but not solely) described as resulting from a lesion of the contralateral subthalamic nucleus.
- Athetosis, chorea, and ballism may represent a continuum of one type of hyperkinetic movement disorder and are sometimes combined (*choreoathetosis* or *chorea-ballism*) (Figure 1.7).

**Dystonia** is characterized by involuntary, sustained, patterned, and often repetitive contractions of opposing muscles, causing twisting movements or abnormal postures.

- In contrast to the movements of chorea, which are more random in nature, dystonic movements repeatedly involve the same group of muscles (Table 1.5). The movements appear to progress to prolonged abnormal postures.
The abnormal posturing is caused by the simultaneous contraction or co-contraction of the agonist and antagonist group of muscles.

Patterned involvement means that the movements affect the same muscle groups repeatedly.

Initially, dystonia manifests mostly with voluntary action of the affected part and disappears with rest. This is called action dystonia.

Dystonia can also involve distant muscle groups that are not primarily involved with the voluntary action (eg, abnormal posturing of the hands while the patient walks). This often occurs with progression of the disease.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distribution</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Focal</td>
<td>Single body part (eg, blepharospasm, spasmodic torticollis, writer’s cramp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segmental</td>
<td>Two or more contiguous regions of the body (eg, craniocervical dystonia or Meige syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized</td>
<td>Trunk, legs, and other body parts (eg, idiopathic torsion dystonia)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dystonia may eventually be present even during rest, as the disease progresses. Therefore, organicity of the dystonia is often questioned when the abnormal posturing occurs suddenly and is initially present at rest, rather than during action.

Primary dystonia usually begins as action dystonia and may persist as a kinetic or clonic dystonia. Secondary dystonia can begin with sustained postures (tonic dystonia).

The speed of the movement in dystonia varies widely. The duration of the co-contraction contributes to the variation in the presentation of dystonia (Table 1.6).

A feature that is unique to dystonia is that the movements can often diminish with a tactile or proprioceptive geste antagoniste (“sensory trick”).

○ This phenomenon can be seen as a reduction in muscle contraction when the involved body part or adjacent area is touched (or sometimes, just nearly touched).

○ Eliciting this sign suggests an organic rather than a psychogenic movement disorder.

Tonic ocular deviation is a specific kind of dystonia. Upward tonic deviation is usually called oculogyric crisis. Although oculogyria is commonly associated with dopamine receptor blockers, it was initially associated with encephalitis lethargica and has been documented to occur along with other parkinsonian syndromes due to biochemical deficiencies of the monoamine pathways, such as pterin deficiency and aromatic amino acid deficiency.

A particular form of dystonia appears when the patient is eating. The tongue is uncontrollably pushed out of the mouth during chewing. As a result, food is pushed out of the mouth and the tongue is bitten. This type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Athetotic dystonia</td>
<td>Slow writhing movements with superimposed posturing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myoclonic dystonia</td>
<td>Superimposed, shocklike movements or jerks in a twisted body part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dystonic movement</td>
<td>Sustained for seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dystonic postures</td>
<td>Sustained for minutes to hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dystonic tremors</td>
<td>Intermittent, usually arrhythmic tremors that are superimposed over a dystonic body part</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
of dystonia, termed *lingual feeding dystonia*, is almost pathognomonic for neuroacanthocytosis.2

**Myoclonus** is a sudden, brief, shocklike jerk caused by muscular contraction (positive myoclonus) or inhibition (negative myoclonus) (Table 1.7).

- The most common form of negative myoclonus is asterixis. Asterixis is commonly associated with metabolic encephalopathies. It is seen as a brief flapping of an outstretched limb.
- Myoclonus often arises from lesions elsewhere in the central nervous system and does not appear to be related primarily to any basal ganglia pathology.
- Lesions that produce myoclonus may be located in the cerebral cortex (*cortical reflex myoclonus*), brainstem (*reticular reflex myoclonus, hyperekplexia, rhythmic brainstem myoclonus, ocular myoclonus*), or spinal cord (*rhythmic segmental myoclonus, nonrhythmic propriospinal myoclonus*).

**Restless legs syndrome** is defined as a syndrome induced by a desire to move the legs. RLS is a very common illness.

- Although the legs are commonly involved, the same restless sensation has been described in the arms and even the trunk.
- There are two distinct types of RLS: primary (idiopathic) and secondary (Table 1.8).
- Moreover, the diagnostic criteria have been recently updated (Table 1.9).

### Table 1.7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive Myoclonus (Muscle Contraction)</th>
<th>Negative Myoclonus (Muscle Inhibition)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Associated with:</td>
<td>Associated with:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Epileptic syndromes</td>
<td>• Asterixis (hepatic or renal impairment)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Drugs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Metabolic disturbance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Central nervous system lesions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 1.8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of Restless Legs Syndrome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tics consist of abnormal movements (motor tics) and/or abnormal sounds (phonic tics).

- When both types of tics are present, occur in a person younger than 15 years of age, and are accompanied by obsessive–compulsive features, the designation of Tourette syndrome is commonly applied.

- Tics frequently vary in severity over time, and patients can have remissions and exacerbations.

- Motor and phonic tics can be simple (eg, a grunt) or complex (eg, a phrase or full sentence). Most of the time tics are repetitive or stereotypic.

- They can be suppressed temporarily but will need to be “released” at some point to provide internal “relief” to the patient until the next “urge” is felt.

- Examples include shoulder shrugging, head jerking, blinking, twitching of the nose, touching other people, head shaking with shoulder shrugging, kicking of the legs, obscene gesturing, grunting, and throat clearing.

Tremors are oscillatory, usually rhythmic, to-and-fro regular movements affecting one or more body parts, such as the limbs, neck, tongue, chin, or vocal cords.

- The rate, location, amplitude, and constancy vary depending on the specific type of tremor (Table 1.10).

- Tremors can be present at rest (resting tremor), while a posture is held (pos- tural tremor), or during actions like writing and pouring water (intention or kinetic tremor).
The various types of hyperkinesia can also be described in terms of the suddenness and duration of their presentation (Table 1.11). *Paroxysmal dyskinesia* episodes are often sudden and end abruptly. Movements are *continual* if they appear as recurring episodes, whereas *continuous* episodes are nonstop and nonrepetitive.

**Table 1.10**
Phenomenologic Classification of Tremors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of Tremor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resting</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tremors are evident when the affected body part is supported against gravity (and often diminish or disappear during voluntary movement).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Action</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tremors are evident during voluntary movement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Different types of action tremor:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Postural</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evident during maintenance of an antigravity posture, such as keeping the arms in an outstretched horizontal position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Kinetic</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evident when the voluntary movement starts (<em>initial tremor</em>), during the course of the movement (<em>dynamic tremor</em>), or as the affected body part approaches the target (<em>terminal tremor</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Task-specific</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evident or exacerbated only while a certain task is performed (eg, handwriting tremor, voice tremor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Position-specific</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evident while a certain posture is maintained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Isometric</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evident during voluntary muscular contraction without a change in the position of the body part</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 1.11**
Classification of Hyperkinesia Based on Duration and Repetitiveness

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paroxysmal (Sudden and Intermittent)</th>
<th>Continual (Repetitive)</th>
<th>Continuous (Nonstop)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tics</td>
<td>Ballism</td>
<td>Abdominal dyskinesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxysmal kinesigenic dyskinesia</td>
<td>Chorea</td>
<td>Athetosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxysmal nonkinesigenic dyskinesia</td>
<td>Dystonic movements</td>
<td>Tremors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxysmal tremor</td>
<td>Myoclonus, arrhythmic</td>
<td>Dystonic postures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxysmal ataxia</td>
<td>Akathitic moaning</td>
<td>Minipolymyoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypnogenic dystonia</td>
<td></td>
<td>Myoclonus, rhythmic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereotypies</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tardive stereotypy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Akathitic movements</td>
<td></td>
<td>Myokymia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumpy stumps</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tic status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Moving toes/fingers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Myorhythmia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Finally, some movement disorders are not as common but still noteworthy (Table 1.12).

### Table 1.12
Less Common Types of Hyperkinesia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Akathisia</td>
<td>A feeling of inner, general restlessness that is reduced or relieved by moving about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemifacial spasm</td>
<td>Unilateral facial muscle contractions that may be either clonic (continual, rapid, brief, repetitive) or tonic (prolonged, sustained spasms) interrupted by periods of quiescence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Painful legs/moving toes</td>
<td>Toes (unilateral or bilateral) are in continual flexion–extension with some lateral motion; usually associated with deep pain in the leg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumpy stumps</td>
<td>Involuntary, chaotic movements of the remaining stump (amputated limb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belly dancer’s dyskinesia</td>
<td>Abnormal movements of the abdominal wall resulting in movement of the umbilicus (usually associated with trauma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereotypy</td>
<td>Coordinated movements that are repeated continually and identically (usually in patients with tardive dyskinesia, schizophrenia, intellectual disability, or autism)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myorhythmia</td>
<td>Low-frequency, continuous, patterned, relatively rhythmic movement that occurs during rest but may persist during activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperekplexia</td>
<td>Excessive motor response or jump in response to unexpected auditory and sometimes somesthetic and visual stimuli</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 1.13
Hyperkinetic Disorders Classified Based on Speed of Movements (Fast Versus Slow)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fastest</th>
<th>Intermediate</th>
<th>Slowest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minipolymyoclonus</td>
<td>Chorea</td>
<td>Moving toes/fingers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myoclonus</td>
<td>Ballism</td>
<td>Myorhythmia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperekplexia</td>
<td>Jumpy stumps</td>
<td>Akathitic movements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemifacial spasm</td>
<td>Tardive stereotypy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Useful Clues in Identifying Movement Disorders

Hyperkinetic disorders can be further classified based on the speed of the movements (Table 1.13), their amplitude (Table 1.14), and their response to voluntary control (Tables 1.15 and 1.16).
Hyperkinetic movements can also be described in terms of their relation to sleep. Most movement disorders disappear or diminish during sleep. Some persist, and a few appear only during sleep (Table 1.17).

Hyperkinetic movements can also be described in terms of their relationship to voluntary movement. Some types of hyperkinesia appear only when a limb is at rest, and others appear only during active limb movement. Patients with the latter are asymptomatic while at rest in a supine or sitting position. Several types appear regardless of whether or not there is voluntary movement (Table 1.18).

Several conditions manifest with a combination of types of hyperkinesia. The phenomenology of the movements is difficult to classify under any one particular description. This phenomenon is usually seen in a few conditions, which are listed in Table 1.19.

Dyskinetic movements can also be associated with characteristic symptoms that can help focus the differential diagnosis (Table 1.20). These may require
Table 1.17
Hyperkinesia Classified According to Level of Sensorium

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appears During Sleep and Disappears on Awakening</th>
<th>Persists During Sleep</th>
<th>Diminishes During Sleep</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypnogenic dyskinesias</td>
<td>Secondary palatal myoclonus, Ocular myoclonus, Spinal myoclonus, Oculofaciomasticatory myorhythmia</td>
<td>All others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periodic movements in sleep</td>
<td>Moving toes, Myokymia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REM sleep behavior disorder</td>
<td>Neuromyotonia (Isaacs syndrome), Severe dystonia, Severe tics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypnogenic dyskinesias</td>
<td>Secondary palatal myoclonus</td>
<td>All others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periodic movements in sleep</td>
<td>Ocular myoclonus, Spinal myoclonus, Oculofaciomasticatory myorhythmia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REM sleep behavior disorder</td>
<td>Moving toes, Myokymia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neuromyotonia (Isaacs syndrome), Severe dystonia, Severe tics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypnogenic dyskinesias</td>
<td>Secondary palatal myoclonus</td>
<td>All others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periodic movements in sleep</td>
<td>Ocular myoclonus, Spinal myoclonus, Oculofaciomasticatory myorhythmia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REM sleep behavior disorder</td>
<td>Moving toes, Myokymia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neuromyotonia (Isaacs syndrome), Severe dystonia, Severe tics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.18
Hyperkinesia in Relation to State of Activity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>At Rest Only (Disappears With Action)</th>
<th>With Action Only</th>
<th>At Rest and Continues With Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Akathitic movements</td>
<td>Ataxia, Action dystonia, Action myoclonus, Orthostatic tremor, Tremor (postural, action, intention)</td>
<td>Abdominal dyskinesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paradoxicval dystonia</td>
<td></td>
<td>Athetosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resting tremor (but can reemerge with posture holding)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chorea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restless legs</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dystonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthostatic tremor (only while subject is standing still)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Jumpy stumps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Minipolymyoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Moving toes/fingers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Myokymia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pseudodystonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.19
Diseases Presenting With the Phenomenology of More Than One Movement Disorder

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Phenomenology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psychogenic movement disorders</td>
<td>Myoclonus, dystonia, chorea, tremor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tardive syndromes</td>
<td>Dystonia (typically retrocollis, opisthotonus, sometimes blepharospasm); chorea (typically oral–lingual–buccal); akathisia; myoclonus; tics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 1.19 (cont.)
Diseases Presenting With the Phenomenology of More Than One Movement Disorder

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Phenomenology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neuroacanthocytosis</td>
<td>Chorea (with characteristic food propulsion during eating), dystonia, akathisia, tics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson’s disease</td>
<td>Tremor (sometimes characteristically described as “wing beating”), parkinsonism, dystonia, and sometimes chorea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dentatorubropallidoluysian atrophy (DRPLA)</td>
<td>Cerebellar ataxia, choreoathetosis, dystonia, rest and postural tremor, parkinsonism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huntington’s disease</td>
<td>Chorea, dystonia, motor impersistence, dysarthria, parkinsonism (in juvenile Huntington’s disease), sometimes myoclonus, tics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-linked dystonia parkinsonism</td>
<td>Dystonia (typically seen early in the disease), parkinsonism (more prominent later in the disease)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxia (SCA) types 1, 2, 3, 17</td>
<td>Ataxia, parkinsonism, dystonia (SCA type 3), chorea (SCA types 1, 2, 3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid-onset dystonia parkinsonism</td>
<td>Dystonia, parkinsonism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myoclonus–dystonia syndrome</td>
<td>Myoclonus, dystonia (alcohol-responsive)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 1.20
Dyskinesia With Various Characteristic Associated Findings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Associated Findings</th>
<th>Etiology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dyskinesia with vocalizations</td>
<td>Huntington’s disease, Neuroacanthocytosis, Cranial dystonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyskinesia with self-mutilation</td>
<td>Lesch-Nyhan syndrome, Neuroacanthocytosis, Tourette syndrome, Psychogenic movement disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyskinesia with complex movements</td>
<td>Stereotypies, Tics, Psychogenic movement disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyskinesia with a sensory component</td>
<td>Akathisia, Painful legs/moving toes syndrome, Restless legs syndrome</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
a longer period of observation. Being aware of these symptoms and including them in the description of the phenomenology may help in narrowing the etiology.

Finally, the differential diagnosis for a pediatric patient presenting with a movement disorder can be different from that for an adult patient. Table 1.21 lists some of the disorders to consider when a pediatric patient presents with a hyperkinetic disorder.
### Table 1.21
Differential Diagnoses to Consider in a Pediatric Patient With a Movement Disorder

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hyperkinetic Disorder</th>
<th>Differential Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chorea</td>
<td>Sydenham chorea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Huntington’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wilson’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fahr disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pantothenate kinase–associated neurodegeneration (PKAN)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ramsay Hunt syndrome (dentatorubral atrophy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neuroaxonal dystrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lesch-Nyhan syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pelizaeus-Merzbacher syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metabolic: hyper- and hypothyroidism, hyper- and hypoparathyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drugs: phenytoin, phenothiazines, lithium,amphetamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Toxins: mercury, carbon monoxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dystonia</td>
<td>Huntington’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wilson’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fahr disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PKAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ceroid lipofuscinosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sea-blue histiocytosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leigh disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GM1/GM2 gangliosidosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dystonia musculorum deformans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dopamine-responsive dystonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Encephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia (acute)</td>
<td>Acute cerebellar ataxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Occult neuroblastoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Traumatic posterior fossa hematoma, subdural/epidural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fisher variant of Guillain-Barré syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Basilar migraine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metabolic: maple syrup urine disease, Hartnup pyruvate decarboxylase deficiency, arginosuccinic aciduria, hypothyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acute intermittent familial ataxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Childhood multiple sclerosis/Schilder disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leigh disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia (chronic)</td>
<td>Cerebellar hypoplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Arnold-Chiari malformation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dandy Walker syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cerebral palsy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
### Table 1.21 (cont.)
Differential Diagnoses to Consider in a Pediatric Patient With a Movement Disorder

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hyperkinetic Disorder</th>
<th>Differential Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumors: medulloblastoma, cerebellar astrocytoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxias</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friedreich ataxia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roussy-Levy form (hereditary motor sensory neuropathy type 1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia telangiectasia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bassen-Kornzweig syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refsum disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metachromatic leukodystrophy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tay-Sachs disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maple syrup urine disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Myoclonus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wilson’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lafora body disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cereoid lipofuscinosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramsay Hunt syndrome (dyssynergia cerebellaris myoclonica)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia telangiectasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herpes simplex virus infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herpes zoster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic: hypoglycemia, uremia, hepatic failure, hyponatremia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bismuth toxicity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### REFERENCES


II

Neurological Approach to Movement Disorders
Tremor is defined as a rhythmic, involuntary, oscillating movement of a body part occurring in isolation or as part of a clinical syndrome. In clinical practice, characterization of tremor is important for etiologic consideration and treatment. Common types include resting tremor, postural tremor, kinetic tremor, intention tremor, and task-specific tremor.

**PATHOPHYSIOLOGY**

The pathophysiology of tremor is not fully understood. However, four basic mechanisms are linked to the production of tremor.\(^1\)\(^2\) It is likely that combinations of these mechanisms produce tremor in different disease states (Figure 2.1).

- **Mechanical oscillations** of the limb can occur at a particular joint; this mechanism applies in cases of *physiologic tremor*.
- **Reflex oscillation** is elicited by afferent muscle spindle pathways and is responsible for stronger tremors by synchronization. This mechanism is a possible cause of tremor in hyperthyroidism or other toxic states.
- **Central oscillators** are groups of cells in the central nervous system in the thalamus, basal ganglia, and inferior olives. These cells have the capacity to fire repetitively and produce tremor. *Parkinsonian tremors* may originate in the basal ganglia, and *essential tremors* may originate within the inferior olives and thalamus.
- Abnormal functioning of the cerebellum can produce tremor. Positron emission tomography studies have shown cerebellar activation in almost all forms of tremor.\(^3\)

Two neuronal pathways are of particular importance in the production of tremor (Figure 2.2).\(^4\)
Figure 2.1
Pathophysiology of different etiologies of tremor.

Figure 2.2
Schematic and simplified synopsis of the brain regions and pathways involved in tremorogenesis. See text for details. D1, dopamine receptor type 1; D2, dopamine receptor type 2; exc., excitatory; GABA, gamma-aminobutyric acid; Glu, glutamate; GPe, external globus pallidus; GPi, internal globus pallidus; ICP, inferior cerebellar peduncle; inh., inhibitory; SCP, superior cerebellar peduncle; SNc, substantia nigra, pars compacta; SNr, substantia nigra, pars reticulata; STN, subthalamic nucleus; VIM, ventrointermediate nucleus of thalamus.

One is the corticostriatothalamocortical loop through the basal ganglia. This pathway maintains the ongoing pattern of movement.

The other pathway connects the red nucleus, inferior olivary nucleus, and dentate nucleus, forming the “Guillain-Mollaret triangle.” This pathway is involved in fine-tuning the precision of voluntary movements.

**CLASSIFICATION (Figure 2.3)**

- **Rest tremor**
  - Parkinson’s disease
  - Essential tremor in advanced state can have resting component

- **Postural tremor**
  - Essential tremor
  - Medication induced tremor

- **Action tremor**
  - Essential tremor

- **Intention tremor**
  - Cerebellar tremor

- **Task-specific tremor**
  - Primary writing tremor

*Figure 2.3*
Classification of tremors.
RESTING TREMOR. Resting tremor occurs when the affected extremity is at complete rest and diminishes with movement of the affected body part.

POSTURAL TREMOR. Postural tremor occurs when the affected limb is held in sustentation against gravity.

ACTION OR KINETIC TREMOR. Action or kinetic tremor occurs during voluntary movement.

INTENTION TREMOR. Intention (or terminal) tremor manifests as a marked increase in tremor amplitude during the terminal portion of a targeted movement.

TASK-SPECIFIC TREMOR. Task-specific tremor emerges during a specific activity. An example of this type is primary writing tremor.

CLINICAL DISORDERS (Table 2.1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
<th>Predominant Tremor</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parkinson’s disease</td>
<td>Resting</td>
<td>Associated symptoms include rigidity, bradykinesia, and postural instability. Usually an elderly patient (&gt; 50 y) with asymmetric onset, 4–6 Hz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essential tremor</td>
<td>Postural and kinetic</td>
<td>Usually symmetric, responds to alcohol, bimodal age at onset (teens, &gt; 50 y), 4–10 Hz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebellar tremor</td>
<td>Intention</td>
<td>Postural component may be present, other cerebellar features on examination. Unilateral or bilateral depending on location of lesion, 2–4 Hz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holmes tremor</td>
<td>Rest, postural, and intention</td>
<td>Seen in multiple sclerosis and traumatic brain injury, 2–5 Hz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dystonic tremor</td>
<td>Postural and intention</td>
<td>Abnormal posture of affected limb may be observed, variable frequency, 4–8 Hz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enhanced physiologic tremor</td>
<td>Postural</td>
<td>Check for metabolic disorders (thyroid, diabetes, renal failure, liver disease) or tremor-inducing drugs, 8–12 Hz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthostatic tremor</td>
<td>Postural, in the legs, upon standing</td>
<td>Usually occurs when patient stands up, improves with ambulation and sitting, 15–18 Hz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palatal tremor</td>
<td>Postural</td>
<td>1–6 Hz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuropathic tremor</td>
<td>Postural and kinetic</td>
<td>In association with neuropathy, 5–9 Hz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson’s disease</td>
<td>Resting, postural, or action</td>
<td>All tremor types are possible; “wing-beating tremor” usually manifests later. Should be considered in any movement disorder in a patient &lt; 50 y.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Physiologic Tremor

Physiologic tremor is a very-low-amplitude, fine tremor (6–12 Hz) that is barely visible to the eye.

- It is present in every normal person while a posture or movement is being maintained.
- The neurological examination is often nonfocal in patients with physiologic tremor.

Enhanced Physiologic Tremor

Enhanced physiologic tremor is a high-frequency, low-amplitude, visible tremor that occurs primarily when a specific posture is maintained.

- Drugs and toxins induce this form of tremor. The suspected mechanism is mechanical activation at the muscular level. Signs and symptoms of drug toxicity or other side effects may or may not be present.
- Trigger conditions include hyperthyroidism, liver disease, benzodiazepine withdrawal, lithium, valproate, calcium channel blockers, anxiety, and hypoglycemia, among other conditions.
- Tremor symptoms can improve after the discontinuation of the causative agents or management of the underlying problem.

Parkinson’s Disease

Parkinson tremor (see also Chapter 4 and Table 2.2) is often characterized by a low-frequency resting tremor typically seen as a pill-rolling tremor. Some patients may have postural and action tremors as well. Resting tremors may also be observed in other parkinsonian syndromes.

- Parkinson tremors occur in association with other symptoms, such as micrographia, slowness (bradykinesia), and muscle rigidity.
- A characteristic feature of the symptoms in Parkinson’s disease (PD) is the asymmetric nature of the symptoms, especially early in the disease.
- The characteristic frequency associated with this tremor is 4 to 6 Hz. Tremors can emerge during posture (reemergent tremor when it occurs a few seconds after the hands have been held in sustention) and action.
- The areas most commonly affected include the hands, legs, chin, and jaw.
- Patients sometimes complain of the sensation of “internal tremors” that are not visible externally.
Essential Tremor

Essential tremor (ET) (Table 2.2) is the most common type of tremor disorder in the general population.

- The characteristic tremors seen in ET are postural and action tremors, with a frequency between 4 and 8 Hz. Most patients have a symmetric onset of their tremor.

- In familial ET, the mode of inheritance is autosomal dominant, with incomplete penetrance.
  - A positive family history is reported by 50% to 70% of patients with ET.

- The tremor worsens during eating, drinking, and writing.

- Drinking alcohol may temporarily help to alleviate ET.

- The most hands, head, and voice are most commonly affected, but tremors can also be seen in the legs, trunk, and face.

- Mild resting tremor can sometimes develop in patients with long-standing ET.

- The tremor in ET is exacerbated by conditions such as stress, exercise, fatigue, caffeine, and certain medications, and it improves with relaxation and alcohol.

- Other associated symptoms can include mild gait difficulty, manifested as tandem walking.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Essential Tremor</th>
<th>Parkinson Tremor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tremor type</td>
<td>Postural and action tremors</td>
<td>Resting tremor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>All age groups</td>
<td>Older age (＞60 y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family history</td>
<td>Positive in ＞60% of patients</td>
<td>Usually negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol response</td>
<td>Often beneficial</td>
<td>Not beneficial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tremor onset</td>
<td>Usually bilateral</td>
<td>Unilateral in about 80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscle tone</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Cogwheel rigidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facial expression</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Decreased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gait</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Decreased arm swing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tremor latency during hand sustention</td>
<td>None or shorter: 1–2 sec</td>
<td>Longer, sometimes up to 8–9 sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.2
Characteristics of Parkinsonian Versus Essential Tremor
Some patients with ET have decreased hearing.

Several tremor conditions are believed to be variants of essential tremor, including the following:
- Task-specific tremor (eg, primary writing tremor)
- Isolated voice tremor
- Isolated chin tremor

**Cerebellar Tremor**

Cerebellar tremor is a slow-frequency tremor, between 3 and 5 Hz. It occurs during the execution of a goal-directed (intentional) movement.

- The amplitude usually increases with the movement and as the intended target is approached, and the tremor can be associated with a postural component.
- Signs and symptoms of cerebellar dysfunction may be present, including ataxia, dysmetria, dysdiadochokinesia, and dysarthria.
- Another tremor with a cerebellar etiology is titubation, better described as a slow-frequency “bobbing” motion of the head or trunk.
- It is usually seen in conditions such as multiple sclerosis, hereditary ataxia syndromes, brainstem stroke affecting cerebellar pathways, and traumatic brain injury.

Unfortunately, these tremors are highly disabling and very difficult to treat.

**Holmes Tremor**

*Holmes tremor or rubral tremor* designates a combination of rest, postural, and action tremors due to midbrain lesions in the vicinity of the red nucleus.

- This type of tremor is irregular and of low frequency (2–4 Hz).
- Signs of ataxia and weakness may be present.
- Common causes include cerebrovascular accident and multiple sclerosis, with a possible delay of 2 weeks to 2 years in tremor onset and the occurrence of lesions.
- The tremor is disabling and resistant to treatment.

**Dystonic Tremor**

As the name implies, dystonic tremor is a tremor that occurs in a body region affected by dystonia.
It presents as a postural/action tremor with irregular amplitudes and frequencies.

An example of this tremor is the dystonic, no-no or yes-yes head tremor associated with spasmodic torticollis. This tremor tends to be irregular or arrhythmic and may improve with a “sensory trick” (geste antagoniste), superimposed on abnormal neck posturing, in contrast to the rhythmic head tremor seen in ET.

**Neuropathic Tremor**

Neuropathic tremors are mostly postural or action tremors that occur in the setting of a peripheral neuropathy.

- They are more commonly associated with demyelinating neuropathies of the dysgammaglobulinemic type.\(^5\)
- The tremor frequency is often described as between 3 and 6 Hz in the hand and arm muscles.
- The exact etiology of this tremor is unknown.

**Palatal Tremor**

Palatal tremors (see also Chapter 7) are brief, rhythmic, involuntary, low-frequency movements of the soft palate.

Palatal tremors are classified in two forms:

- **Symptomatic palatal tremor** is believed to arise from a lesion of the brainstem or cerebellum (within the Guillain-Mollaret triangle), resulting in a rhythmic contraction of the levator veli palatini. Movement of the edge of the palate is appreciated.

- **Essential palatal tremor** is not associated with central nervous system (CNS) lesions and is a result of the rhythmic contractions of the tensor veli palatini, often associated with an ear click. Movement of the roof of the palate is also seen.

**Drug-Induced Tremors**

Types of tremors induced by drugs include enhanced physiologic tremor, rest tremor, and action tremor. The signs and symptoms of drug-induced tremors depend on the drug used and on a patient’s predisposition to its side effects. Some drugs cause extrapyramidal side effects manifesting as bradykinesia, rigidity, and tremor. Table 2.3 lists drugs that can induce tremor.
### Table 2.3
List of Potential Toxins and Drugs Inducing Tremor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Toxins</th>
<th>Drugs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol</td>
<td>Adrenalin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arsenic</td>
<td>Antiarrhythmics (amiodarone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon monoxide</td>
<td>Antidepressants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyanide</td>
<td>Caffeine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytostatics (vincristine, doxorubicin, cytosine arabinoside, ifosfamide)</td>
<td>Calcitonin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT)</td>
<td>Cocaine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dioxins</td>
<td>Dopamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunosuppressants (cyclosporin A)</td>
<td>Lithium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kepone</td>
<td>Metoclopramide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>Mexiletine, procainamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lindane</td>
<td>Neuroleptics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manganese</td>
<td>Perhexiline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercury</td>
<td>Reserpine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naphthalene</td>
<td>Steroids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicotine</td>
<td>Tetrabenazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphor</td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toluene</td>
<td>Valproate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid hormones</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: Adapted from Refs. 6–8.*

**Hysterical Tremors**

Also known as *psychogenic tremors*, hysterical tremors usually present a challenge in any neurological practice.

- Psychogenic tremors usually have an irregular frequency and are associated with sudden onsets and remissions.
- The frequency and amplitude may vary and diminish or disappear with distraction; a “coactivation sign” may be observed, and other somatization history may be present.
Orthostatic Tremor

Orthostatic tremor is tremor mostly confined to the legs that will occur upon standing and will subside with walking and sitting.

- There is no problem during sitting or lying down;
- The tremor rate is between 13 and 18 Hz (via electromyography [EMG]).
- Treatment includes low-dose clonazepam or primidone.

Tremor in Wilson’s disease

All tremor types can be seen in Wilson’s disease. This diagnosis should be considered for any patient with a movement disorder presenting before the age of 50 years.

- Resting and postural tremors are most common.
- The classic “wing-beating tremor” is not typically seen early in the disease, and it may be refractory to medication.
- Ataxia, parkinsonism, dysarthria, dystonia, and risus sardonicus are also common neurological manifestations.
- Wilson’s disease is often accompanied by liver disease and psychiatric manifestations (eg, depression, anxiety, psychosis).

EVALUATION OF THE PATIENT WITH TREMOR

Once the history has been reviewed (ie, once the patient history of the neuropathy, drug use, and toxic exposure and the family history of tremors have been obtained), one should proceed with the physical examination (Table 2.4 and Figure 2.4).

Diagnostic Testing

A laboratory workup is not necessary for most patients with tremor. However, in some patients, a focused workup may be helpful (Table 2.5).

Treatment

PARKINSON’S DISEASE. The resting tremor in PD usually responds to dopaminergic therapy (dopamine agonists, levodopa) and anticholinergic agents (Table 2.6).

- Levodopa is the most efficacious medication, sometimes resulting in dramatic tremor suppression. It may be combined with dopamine agonists or anticholinergic agents in patients with resistant tremors.
### Table 2.4
Clinical Examination of the Tremulous Patient

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>Examination Technique</th>
<th>Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Observe</td>
<td>What is the affected body region?</td>
<td>• Assess degree of disability; if head tremors only, consider spasmodic torticollis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is there an abnormal body posture?</td>
<td>• Suggests a dystonic tremor. Tremor at rest suggests PD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does the tremor occur at rest, or is it associated with purposeful movement?</td>
<td>• Tremor with posture/intention suggests ET or other disorders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Are there leg tremors?</td>
<td>• If the tremors occur only with standing, orthostatic tremor is the most likely diagnosis; resting tremor with sitting is more suggestive of PD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there a masked facies?</td>
<td></td>
<td>• A masked facies or shuffling gait suggests parkinsonism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there reduced amplitude of movement?</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Assess with finger taps, hand and arm movements; presence of bradykinesia suggests parkinsonism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there voice tremor?</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Suggestive of ET and dystonia; also seen in other conditions, but less pronounced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there a shuffling gait?</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Suggestive of parkinsonism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examine</td>
<td>With the patient keeping the extremities at rest, distract the patient by asking him or her to perform serial sevens.</td>
<td>• This maneuver may provoke the emergence of resting tremors (facilitation), suggestive of PD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examine extremities in the postural position (hands in front with arms outstretched, parallel to the floor). Finger-to-nose testing.</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postural tremors suggest ET; fast-frequency tremors may suggest exaggerated physiologic tremors; delay in tremors may suggest reemergent tremors, seen in PD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Intention tremors and ataxia suggest cerebellar or Holmes tremors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Intention tremors on their own suggest ET.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Intention tremors with dystonia suggest dystonic tremors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examine for rigidity and bradykinesia, decreased arm swing.</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Presence of these suggests PD or any parkinsonian syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examine for task-specific tremor by asking patient to write.</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Tremors manifest only during handwriting (primary writing tremor).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
### Table 2.4 (cont.)
Clinical Examination of the Tremulous Patient

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>Examination Technique</th>
<th>Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examine for orthostatic tremor by asking patient to stand up and put both hands on leg.</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Orthostatic tremors are sometimes better felt with hands on the legs and may not be visible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stance/gait</td>
<td>Casual gait</td>
<td>• Shuffling suggests parkinsonian syndromes. • Wide-based gait suggests the presence of ataxia, seen with cerebellar tremor. • Freezing of gait suggests parkinsonian disorders. • Abnormal body postures suggest dytonia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tandem gait</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Abnormalities may be seen in ET.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speech evaluation</td>
<td>Prepared text may be helpful (eg, “The Rainbow Passage”). See Appendix.</td>
<td>• Altered articulation of words. • Abnormal fluency. • Slowed speech. • “Scanning dysarthria”: words are broken into syllables. • Voice tremors.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** ET, essential tremor; PD, Parkinson’s disease.

- For patients with disabling tremors not responding to usual doses, the dose can be escalated as tolerated. Side effects from medications are usually the limiting factor.

- For the patient who continues to have disabling, medication-refractory tremors despite comprehensive trials of medication, or for the patient who cannot tolerate medications because of side effects, functional neurosurgery is an option. PD tremors have shown significant improvement with lesioning procedures (eg, thalamotomy) or with deep brain stimulation (of the thalamus, globus pallidus, or subthalamic nucleus).

**Essential Tremor.** Propranolol and primidone are the preferred first-line treatments for essential tremor, alone or in combination (Table 2.7).

- There is often a better response for hand tremors than for voice and head tremors.

- The dose range for propranolol is from 10 to 60 mg divided 3 times per day, and for the long-acting formulation the range is 60 to 320 mg 1 or 2 times per day. Propranolol is relatively contraindicated in patients with asthma, diabetes, or cardiac arrhythmias.
Figure 2.4
Sequence of examination for tremor.
### Table 2.5
Diagnostic Workup for Tremor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Recommendations</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid function tests</td>
<td>If hypo/hyperthyroid, treat as necessary.</td>
<td>Thyroid disorders, in particular hyperthyroidism, are associated with tremors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver function studies</td>
<td>Screen for liver disease.</td>
<td>Hepatic encephalopathy may be associated with tremors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete chemistry</td>
<td>Correct metabolic disturbances as necessary.</td>
<td>Uremia may induce tremors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serum ceruloplasmin</td>
<td>Usually obtained in patients &lt; 50 y.</td>
<td>Twenty-four-hour urine collection for copper excretion is also recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxicology screen</td>
<td>Assess for drug-induced tremors, illicit drug use,</td>
<td>Drug abuse or withdrawal (eg, ethanol withdrawal) may be associated with tremors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>toxic etiology (mercury, lead, other).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug levels</td>
<td>Antiepileptic agents, immunosuppressants.</td>
<td>Common examples are cyclosporine, valproate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI of the brain</td>
<td>Assess for structural, demyelinating, vascular</td>
<td>Cerebellar lesions for cerebellar tremors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lesions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FP-CIT SPECT scan (DaTscan)</td>
<td>Assess for dopaminergic loss.</td>
<td>Differentiate parkinsonism (results in an abnormal DaTscan) from essential tremor or drug-induced tremor (results in a normal DaTscan).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 2.6
Pharmacologic Treatment Options for the Patient With Newly Diagnosed Parkinson’s disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Dose Range</th>
<th>Potential Side Effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carbidopa/levodopa</td>
<td>300–1,200 mg/d</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, sedation, hallucinations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ropinirole</td>
<td>8–24 mg/d</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, sedation, hallucinations, sleep attacks, impulse control disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pramipexole</td>
<td>1.5–4.5 mg/d</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, sedation, hallucinations, sleep attacks, impulse control disorder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
### Table 2.6 (cont.)
Pharmacologic Treatment Options for the Patient With Newly Diagnosed Parkinson’s disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Dose Range</th>
<th>Potential Side Effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rotigotine patch</td>
<td>6–8 mg/d</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, sedation, hallucinations, sleep attacks, impulse control disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trihexyphenidyl</td>
<td>3–15 mg/d</td>
<td>Confusion, sedation, hallucinations, dry mouth, bladder retention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benztropine</td>
<td>1–6 mg/d</td>
<td>Confusion, sedation, hallucinations, dry mouth, bladder retention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amantadine</td>
<td>200–400 mg/d</td>
<td>Confusion, hallucinations, dry mouth, bladder retention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selegiline</td>
<td>5 mg 2 times per day (breakfast and lunch)</td>
<td>Confusion, hallucinations, insomnia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rasagiline</td>
<td>0.5–1.0 mg/d</td>
<td>Confusion, hallucinations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: See also Chapter 3.*

### Table 2.7
Pharmacologic Therapy for Essential Tremor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication</th>
<th>Dosagea</th>
<th>Potential Side Effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Propranolol</td>
<td>10–60 mg divided 2 or 3 times daily</td>
<td>Contraindicated in cardiac arrhythmias, diabetes, and pulmonary disorders. Watch for hypotension and depression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propranolol LA (long-acting formulation)</td>
<td>60–320 mg 1 or 2 times daily</td>
<td>Same as above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primidone</td>
<td>50–750 mg divided 3 times daily or given at bedtime</td>
<td>Sedation, nausea, dizziness, confusion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gabapentin (Neurontin)</td>
<td>900–2,400 mg divided 3 times daily</td>
<td>Leukopenia, somnolence, dizziness, ataxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topiramate</td>
<td>Up to 400 mg/d</td>
<td>Paresthesias, anorexia, difficulty with concentration, kidney stones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clonazepam</td>
<td>0.5–6 mg/d</td>
<td>Drowsiness.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aSlow titration schedules are recommended for all the above medications to reduce the incidence of side effects.

*Source: Adapted from Refs. 14, 16.*
The recommended dose range for primidone is 50 to 750 mg divided 3 times per day. Primidone is associated with drowsiness, nausea, dizziness, and confusion.

If monotherapy with primidone or propranolol is not beneficial, the two agents may be used in combination.

Open-label studies and double-blinded studies have demonstrated the efficacy of botulinum toxin injections in treating limb, head, vocal, palatal, and other tremors.\textsuperscript{12,13}

Gabapentin has also been shown to improve ET in two studies, with a dosage range of 1,800 to 2,400 mg divided 3 times per day.

Topiramate, clonazepam, and clozapine have also improved tremors in ET in multiple reports.\textsuperscript{14} Patients experiencing worsening of tremors associated with anxiety may benefit from anxiolytics.

As in PD, for patients who continue to have disabling tremors despite optimal medical therapy and an adequate medication trial or who cannot tolerate therapy as a result of side effects, thalamic lesioning or deep brain stimulation is an effective alternative.\textsuperscript{15}

CEREBELLAR TREMOR. No medication has been consistently successful in the treatment of cerebellar tremors. Medications that can be tried include clonazepam, propranolol, trihexyphenidyl, levodopa, physostigmine, and topiramate.\textsuperscript{17} Thalamic stimulation for disabling tremor may be an option, and referral to an experienced functional surgical center may be helpful.\textsuperscript{18}

DYSTONIC TREMOR. Head, arm, and voice tremors resulting from dystonia have been shown to improve with botulinum toxin injections. Other medications that can be tried include anticholinergic agents, levodopa, propranolol, and clonazepam.\textsuperscript{19}

ORTHOSTATIC TREMOR. The treatment of choice for orthostatic tremor is low-dose clonazepam. Phenobarbital, primidone, propranolol, levodopa, pramipexole, and gabapentin may also be tried when clonazepam fails or is not tolerated.

ENHANCED PHYSIOLOGIC TREMOR. The most important step in the treatment of enhanced physiologic tremor (EPT) is to find its cause. If a metabolic etiology is found during workup (eg, thyroid, glucose), it should be treated accordingly. In the anxious patient, treatment of the anxiety may improve tremors. If the tremors are drug-induced, decrease the dose or stop the suspected offending drug.

NEUROPATHIC TREMORS. To date, there no successful pharmacologic treatment has been reported for the treatment of neuropathic tremors. Medications such as clonazepam, primidone, and propranolol have been tried with inconsistent benefit. A
patient with disabling neuropathic tremor has been reported to have benefited from thalamic deep brain stimulation.20

PALATAL TREMORS. Fortunately, palatal tremors are usually not disabling. Patients who are bothered by the ear click associated with essential palatal tremor may benefit from pharmacologic treatment with trihexyphenidyl, valproate, or flunarizine. Injection of botulinum toxin in the tensor veli palatini has also been reported to be beneficial.21

DRUG-INDUCED TREMORS. The treatment for drug-induced tremors usually consists of discontinuation or reduction of the dose of the offending agent.

WILSON’S DISEASE. Patients should adhere to a diet low in copper and avoid foods with a high copper content. These include shellfish, liver, pork, duck, lamb, avocados, dried beans, dried fruits, raisins, dates, prunes, bran, mushrooms, wheat germ, chocolate, and nuts. Consider agents that deplete copper: penicillamine (1–2 g/d) with pyridoxine (50 mg/d), trientine (500 mg 2 times daily), tetrathiomolybdate (80–120 mg daily in 3 to 4 divided doses), and zinc (50 mg/d without food). Thalamotomy has been reported to improve medication-resistant tremors.

REFERENCES


The cardinal tetrad of parkinsonism includes tremor, rigidity, akinesia/bradykinesia, and postural instability. The most common cause of parkinsonism is Parkinson’s disease (PD), which is discussed in Chapters 2 and 4. Other neurodegenerative causes of parkinsonism include progressive supranuclear palsy, dementia with Lewy bodies, multiple system atrophy, and corticobasal degeneration.

**TREMORS**

- Tremors are the presenting symptom of PD in 40% to 70% of cases, and between 68% and 100% of patients with PD will have resting tremor at some point during the course of their illness. However, 10% to 20% of patients with PD do not have tremor.

- The tremor in PD is typically resting, although postural tremor and action tremor may be present.

- The typical resting tremor in PD is 4 to 6 Hz in frequency and most prominent in the distal extremity (also called pill-rolling tremor because the tremor has a rotatory component).

- Reemergent tremor (with a latency of a few seconds before the tremor reemerges during postural holding) occurs in PD.

- Distraction may help “bring out” a resting tremor, especially if the patient is anxious (eg, if the patient is asked to count backward). Certain provocations, such as naming the months of the year backward, may exacerbate the tremor.

- Tremor usually starts in one hand and arm, then progresses to the ipsilateral leg. It later spreads contralaterally.
Lips, chin, and jaw tremors are common in PD, but head tremors are rare in PD, although they are common in essential tremor.

Head tremor, seen as nodding (“yes–yes” tremor) or shaking (“no–no” tremor), is a feature of essential tremor rather than PD but can rarely occur in PD.

Head tremor can also occur in patients with cervical dystonia.

Tremors are often the most unpredictable symptom to treat. About half of patients will notice a treatment response, with improvement in tremor, but tremor is seldom completely abolished.

Patients can be troubled by the persistence of tremor despite therapy, and they may report that the treatment is not working because tremor remains, even though bradykinesia has improved.

Table 3.1 lists the differences between PD tremor and essential tremor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Parkinson’s Disease Tremor</th>
<th>Essential Tremor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tremor</td>
<td>At rest ± reemergent tremor</td>
<td>Postural tremor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>4–6 Hz</td>
<td>5–12 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distribution</td>
<td>Asymmetric</td>
<td>Mostly symmetric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body parts affected</td>
<td>Hands ± legs</td>
<td>Hands, head, voice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writing</td>
<td>Small (micrographia)</td>
<td>Large and tremulous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course</td>
<td>Progressive</td>
<td>Stable or slowly progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family history</td>
<td>Uncommon (1%)</td>
<td>Common (&gt;30%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extrapyramidal signs</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(bradykinesia, rigidity, and loss of postural reflex)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relieving factors</td>
<td>Levodopa, dopamine agonists, anticholinergics</td>
<td>Alcohol, propranolol, primidone, topiramate, gabapentin, clonazepam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usual site for surgical treatment with deep brain stimulation</td>
<td>Subthalamic nucleus or globus pallidus interna</td>
<td>Ventral intermediate thalamus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RIGIDITY

- Rigidity is an involuntary increase in muscle tone and can affect all muscle groups.
- Typically, cogwheel rigidity, especially when associated with tremor, may result in flexed neck and trunk posture.
- Rigidity is present throughout the range of movement. The term "lead pipe" rigidity can be used to describe movement that feels smooth. The term "cogwheel" rigidity is used when movement feels ratcheted. Although there may be a subjective coexisting tremor that gives a feeling of cogwheeling, true cogwheeling is a form of rigidity independent of tremor.
- Rigidity is tested by passively moving the limb.
- Mild rigidity may require "activation," such as by asking the patient to open and close the contralateral hand, before it can be appreciated by the examiner.
- Patients describe rigidity as muscle stiffness or sometimes pain. Not uncommonly, patients with PD experiencing significant rigidity initially present to an orthopedist with a "frozen shoulder." Pain in PD may also be caused by dystonia.

BRADYKINESIA/AKINESIA

- Bradykinesia is a slowness of initiating voluntary movement and sustaining repetitive movements, with progressive reduction in speed and amplitude.
- Hypokinesia is paucity of movement.
- Patient symptoms and functional limitations that reflect bradykinesia and hypokinesia include the following:
  - Loss of arm swing
  - Difficulty walking, with a tendency to drag a leg in early disease
  - Increasingly small handwriting (micrographia)
  - Difficulty with fine hand movements—manipulating buttons and zippers and cutting food
  - Difficulty turning in bed
  - Loss of facial expression, often described as a masklike face (hypomimia)
  - Hypophonia (reduced voice volume and modulation)
- Bradykinesia causes significant disability affecting the quality of life of patients with PD and almost always responds to antiparkinsonian therapy.
**POSTURAL INSTABILITY**

- Patients report poor balance, unsteadiness, and falls.\(^\text{11}\)
- Postural instability is examined with the *pull test*.\(^\text{12}\)
  - The examiner stands behind the patient and pulls back sharply on the patient’s shoulders (the feet should be slightly apart, unlike their position in a Romberg test).
  - Patients typically correct themselves easily in the early stages. They develop some retropulsion later on, in which they may take two to three steps back but can still correct themselves. Finally, in advanced stages, they may fall if unsupported.

**GAIT DYSFUNCTION**

- *Shuffling gait* is usually seen in akinetic–rigid syndromes like PD.
- It may be the initial complaint in patients with non–tremor-predominant PD (often termed the *akineti c–rigid* variant or *postural instability–gait dysfunction* variant of PD).
- Other conditions that may present with a shuffling gait include multiple system atrophy (MSA), progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP), corticobasoganglionic degeneration (CBGD), dementia with Lewy bodies (DLB), normal-pressure hydrocephalus (NPH), some dementing processes, and frontal lobe syndromes, among others.
- The patient with a characteristic shuffling gait adopts a stooped posture, with flexion of the neck and shoulders.
  - Steps are short. The trunk is flexed and rigid, and the knees tend to be flexed.
  - However, the patient with PSP often adopts a more erect truncal posture, whereas truncal flexion can be accentuated in MSA.
  - A *cock gait* has been described in parkinsonism resulting from manganese toxicity, with an exaggerated lumbar lordosis and leg movements resembling those of a cock walking. A *magnetic gait* is classically attributed to NPH and is described as slightly wide-based, unsteady, and associated with some difficulty lifting the foot, “as if a magnet underneath is preventing the normal heel–toe stride.” However, NPH can also present with a typical shuffling, parkinsonian gait, or the *marche à petit pas* (“walk with small steps”) seen in vascular parkinsonism.
  - The patient with PD (and also the patient with CBGD) usually has an asymmetric arm swing compared with patients who have other parkinsonian disorders.
- Festination, defined as a tendency to increase velocity but with shorter steps, may also be seen in the shuffling patient and is a characteristic, but not specific, finding in PD.

- The symptoms accompanying parkinsonism usually are the ones that give a clue to the diagnosis. For example:
  - When a shuffling gait is associated with urinary incontinence and cognitive impairment, NPH should be considered.
  - When a shuffling gait is associated with early falls and vertical ophthalmoplegia, PSP should be considered.
  - When cognitive impairment occurs early, DLB, CBGD, and PSP should be considered.
  - Prominent autonomic dysfunction suggests MSA.
  - Likewise, marked disequilibrium early in the disease is more suggestive of PSP, DLB, or MSA.

- Other gait abnormalities that may also present with shuffling are the following:
  - Isolated gait ignition failure. The patient often presents with difficulty initiating gait and frequent freezing during ambulation, aggravated by turning. The patient usually has normal postural responses but may have mild parkinsonian symptoms.
  - Frontal gait disorder. The patient gives the appearance of having the feet “glued” or “magnetized” to the floor. It is very difficult to initiate gait, and when gait is initiated, it may be shuffling in nature. Special maneuvers, like turning, may exacerbate the symptoms. This syndrome can result from extensive, bilateral ischemic white matter disease (atherosclerotic/vascular parkinsonism), hydrocephalus, or other frontal lobe disorders. It has also been called gait apraxia.

EXAMINATION OF THE PATIENT WITH SHUFFLING

- Once a comprehensive history is obtained, a careful evaluation of gait should be performed (Table 3.2).

- Observe trunk posture while the patient is walking. The patient’s pace, stance, stride, initiation, and performance in special maneuvers (eg, turning) should be noted.

- With the patient initially seated, ask him or her to stand up without pushing on the arm rests. Although failure to stand without assistance can result from proximal muscle weakness of the lower extremities (eg, a myopathic condition), the same problem is often appreciated in moderate and severe stages of parkinsonism.
Ask the patient to initiate walking. It should be an easy, free-flowing process.

- Hesitation in starting gait is suggestive of an akinetic–rigid syndrome.

Once gait is initiated, stride, stance, and velocity should be noted.

- Shuffling steps are suggestive of an akinetic–rigid syndrome, and the shuffling may range in severity from very short steps to complete inability to ambulate (“magnetic feet”).
- A wide-based gait or difficulty in heel-to-toe walking suggests a concomitant cerebellar disorder such as olivopontocerebellar (OPCA) type of MSA or truncal ataxia.

The patient should be observed in special maneuvers, such as when asked to turn in a corner or suddenly change direction. This may cause the patient to “freeze” or may worsen the shuffling.

The examiner should pay attention to symptom asymmetry or the development of tremors, which are features suggestive of PD.

The postural reflexes should then be examined, and the clinician usually performs this examination by standing behind the patient and giving him or her a good tug on the shoulders.

Examine for rigidity, bradykinesia, and tremors.

Look for associated features, such as apraxia, ataxia, sensory abnormalities, aphasia, cognitive impairment, and hyperreflexia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3.2</th>
<th>Important Aspects of Gait Evaluation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gait Aspect</td>
<td>Characteristics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posture</td>
<td>Stooped versus upright</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stance</td>
<td>Narrow versus wide-based</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>Slow versus normal, with or without festination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stride</td>
<td>Short, normal, or long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gait initiation</td>
<td>Is there hesitation? Is it “magnetic”?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freezing</td>
<td>Is there freezing during gait ignition or during turning?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptom asymmetry</td>
<td>Is the parkinsonism symmetric or asymmetric?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heel-toe walking</td>
<td>Look for truncal ataxia, cerebellar features</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postural reflexes</td>
<td>Early versus late onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Falls</td>
<td>Backward or forward, early versus late onset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Differential Diagnosis of Patients Presenting with Parkinsonism

- Patients presenting with parkinsonism as the main feature can be broadly classified as having primary parkinsonism, secondary parkinsonism, or a Parkinson-plus syndrome, as defined in Chapter 1 (Table 3.3).²⁰

Parkinson-Plus Syndromes

- Dementia with Lewy bodies (DLB)²¹–²⁵
  - DLB is characterized by progressive dementia with prominent attention and visual defects fluctuation in cognition and attention, visual hallucinations, and parkinsonism.
  - It may be difficult to differentiate from PD dementia because patients with either condition can exhibit fluctuations in sensorium/alertness, frequent falls, hallucinations, and sensitivity to PD medications (Table 3.4).
  - Recurrent visual hallucinations and delusions (may be unrelated to medications).
  - Symmetric akinetic–rigid parkinsonism (bradykinesia and rigidity > tremor).
  - Gait abnormalities and falls occur early.
  - REM sleep behavior disorder is common.
  - There is a partial response to levodopa.
  - Dementia occurs before or within 1 year after onset of parkinsonism in DLB.

Table 3.3
Classification of Disorders With Parkinsonism as the Main Feature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Parkinsonism</th>
<th>Parkinson-Plus Syndromes</th>
<th>Secondary Parkinsonism</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parkinson’s disease</td>
<td>Progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP)</td>
<td>Drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Juvenile parkinsonism</td>
<td>Multiple system atrophy (MSA)</td>
<td>Metabolic causes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Corticobasal syndrome (CBS)</td>
<td>Toxins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dementia with Lewy bodies (DLB)</td>
<td>Trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parkinsonism–dementia–amyotrophic lateral sclerosis complex</td>
<td>Postencephalitic parkinsonism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prion disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Brain tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vascular causes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 3.4
Comparison of Clinical Presentations of Parkinson’s Disease Dementia and Dementia With Lewy Bodies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parkinson’s Disease Dementia</th>
<th>Dementia With Lewy bodies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cognitive impairment occurs at least 12 months after motor manifestations of the disease (usually 4 to 5 years at least).</td>
<td>Cognitive impairment usually occurs within 12 months of motor manifestations of disease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hallucinations occur later and after Parkinson’s disease medication use.</td>
<td>Hallucinations occur earlier and sometimes prior to Parkinson’s disease medication use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tremor is common.</td>
<td>Tremor is less common.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predominantly unilateral motor symptoms are common.</td>
<td>Bilateral motor symptoms are more common.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axial symptoms and gait difficulty are less common.</td>
<td>Axial symptoms and gait difficulty are more common.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Progressive supranuclear palsy\(^{15, 26–31}\)
  - PSP is also known as Steele-Richardson-Olszewski syndrome.
  - PSP can have a wide clinical spectrum, with different clinical “variants” described.
    - *Classic PSP/Steele-Richardson variant* is characterized by supranuclear gaze palsy (predominantly vertical gaze), parkinsonism, pseudobulbar affect, prominent frontal lobe syndrome, axial symptoms (neck and trunk) with early falls in the first year after onset, and symmetric symptoms. Resting tremor is uncommon. Gait is broad-based and unsteady, unlike the typical small-stepped shuffling gait in PD, with the typical “surprised” facies, spastic dysarthria, and retrocollis.
    - *Parkinsonian variant* has parkinsonian features very similar to those seen in PD or MSA, but without much response to levodopa and a predominance of postural instability and gait dysfunction.
    - *Gait ignition failure/primary progressive freezing of gait–like variant* may present with minimal parkinsonian features, at least initially, and mainly with gait freezing.
    - *Corticobasoganglionic–like variant*: autopsy-proven PSP has been described in patients who present with limb dystonia, limb apraxia, and alien limb syndrome with or without ophthalmoplegia.
  - Some eye findings include choppy pursuits and saccades and “square-wave jerks” (subtle, intermittent, quick movements of the eyes when
the patient is asked to fix the gaze on an object). These can be appreciated before vertical ophthalmoplegia, characteristic of PSP, becomes evident.

- **Multiple system atrophy**<sup>16,32–36</sup>
  - Cerebellar dysfunction, parkinsonism, and autonomic dysfunction. MSA is mainly divided into the parkinsonian type (MSA-P, formerly known as *striatonigral degeneration*) and the cerebellar type (MSA-C, formerly known as *olivopontocerebellar atrophy*) (Figure 3.1). MSA-P is between two and four times more common than MSA-C.
  - Rapid course, *nocturnal stridor* (typically elicited from a bed partner), early disability and falls, stimulus-sensitive myoclonus, pyramidal tract signs, severe dysarthria and transient response to levodopa, “cold hands,” minipolymyoclonus (jerky and irregular, affecting individual fingers without a particular pattern), and profound autonomic dysfunction are some of the features of MSA.
  - The mean age at onset is 54 years (younger than in idiopathic PD), and there are no known pathologically proven cases in which symptoms developed before the age of 30 years.
  - Resting tremor can be seen initially, as well as asymmetry; facial dyskinesias after levodopa use can also be seen.
  - Anterocollis is common, including an exaggerated truncal flexion.
  - REM sleep behavior disorder is seen in almost all patients.
  - Depression can occur; dementia is less common.
  - Although choppy saccades and pursuits are also seen in MSA, just as in other neurodegenerative parkinsonian conditions, the presence of gaze-evoked nystagmus and positioning downbeat nystagmus (ie, nystagmus seen during the Dix-Hallpike maneuver) is more suggestive of MSA.
  - Although they are not specific, some imaging clues can be appreciated in MSA (Figures 3.2 and 3.3).

![Figure 3.1](image)

*Figure 3.1*

The clinical presentations of multiple system atrophy, parkinsonian type, and multiple system atrophy, cerebellar type, can overlap.
Corticobasal syndrome\textsuperscript{37–43}

- Unilateral parkinsonism, myoclonus, limb kinetic apraxia, and early limb dystonia occur.
- Dementia with cortical and subcortical features is common and occurs early.
- Alien limb phenomenon is seen in 50\% of patients.
- MSA usually presents in the sixth decade.
- Pharmacotherapy may include antidepressants and a trial of dopaminergic therapy. Clonazepam may help myoclonus, and baclofen can be used for muscle spasm. Botulinum toxin injections may alleviate limb dystonia.

Table 3.5 summarizes the clinical features that may suggest atypical parkinsonism, especially Parkinson-plus syndromes.\textsuperscript{44}
Figure 3.3
Sagittal T1-weighted MRI showing midbrain atrophy ("humming bird sign") in a patient with progressive supranuclear palsy.

Table 3.5
Clinical Features of Atypical Parkinsonian Disorders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Motor</th>
<th>Oculomotor</th>
<th>Cognitive and Behavioral</th>
<th>Autonomic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Early instability and falls</td>
<td>Supranuclear gaze palsy</td>
<td>Early dementia</td>
<td>Early autonomic failure unrelated to treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid disease progression</td>
<td>Slowing of saccades</td>
<td>Visual hallucinations, not</td>
<td>(orthostatic hypotension, impotence, or urinary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absent, poor, or unsustained response to</td>
<td>Difficulty initiating saccades (oculomotor</td>
<td>treatment-induced</td>
<td>disturbances)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>levodopa</td>
<td>apraxia)</td>
<td>Ideomotor apraxia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyramidal signs</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sensory or visual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebellar signs</td>
<td></td>
<td>neglect/cortical disturbances</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early dysarthria and/or dysphagia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Secondary Parkinsonism

- Vascular parkinsonism\textsuperscript{45–47}
  - Vascular parkinsonism is also known as lower body parkinsonism.
The pattern typically involves the lower body (whereas in idiopathic PD, the arms and upper body are more often initially affected). However, the upper body can be involved in vascular parkinsonism.

Patients with vascular parkinsonism are more likely to be older and to have postural instability, a history of falling, dementia, corticospinal findings, and incontinence.

The original description by Critchley in the 1920s was predominantly one of a gait disorder (marche à petit pas, “walk with short steps”) with additional features of dementia and pyramidal signs. Classically, the presentation was described as having an acute onset, symmetric and without tremor, but with postural instability and a poor response to dopamine replacement therapy. However, the onset is more commonly insidious. In one series, only about a quarter of cases of vascular parkinsonism were considered to have an acute onset with a new ischemic stroke event, but even here, the new event may have unmasked an insidious process.

There are three pathologic patterns of vascular parkinsonism:

- Multiple lacunar infarcts are clinically associated with a gait disorder, pyramidal deficits, cognitive impairment, and pseudobulbar palsy.
- Subcortical arteriosclerotic encephalopathy (Binswanger disease) is clinically associated with a progressive gait disorder and dementia.
- Basal ganglia infarct (usually lacunar) is a rare type.

Patients exhibit a wide-based, small-stepped gait and freezing.

There is a gradual onset with stepwise progression.

Addressing vascular risk (control of hypertension, diabetes, and hypercholesterolemia; consideration of antiplatelet therapy) and advising smoking cessation seem sensible, although these therapeutic strategies have not been studied in vascular parkinsonism.

Typically, there is a poor therapeutic response to levodopa in vascular parkinsonism, but some evidence of a levodopa response in patients with pathologic confirmation of vascular parkinsonism was noted in a case review (12 of 17 patients had a good or excellent response documented).

- In clinical practice, it is appropriate to try levodopa, often up to the maximum tolerated dose, and to continue treatment if there is clinical benefit but discontinue it if there is no response, or if adverse effects outweigh any benefit.
The results of functional imaging with single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) or positron emission tomography (PET) to check the integrity of presynaptic neurons are abnormal in idiopathic PD but normal in vascular parkinsonism (unless there is widespread basal ganglia infarction).

**Drug-induced parkinsonism**

- This is the second most common cause of parkinsonism after PD (and may be the most common cause in certain countries).
- Usually caused by antiemetics (eg, metoclopramide, promethazine, and prochlorperazine) and antipsychotics (eg, chlorpromazine, haloperidol, and risperidone) that possess strong dopamine D2 receptor–blocking properties.
- Occasionally associated with other tardive syndromes: oral–buccal–lingual dyskinesias, retrocollis (dystonia), and akathisia.
- Although drug-induced parkinsonism is typically symmetric with predominant rigidity, and with much less tremor and postural instability, it may be difficult to differentiate from PD as it can also have an asymmetric presentation with resting tremor.
- It may require 6 months or longer for parkinsonian symptoms to resolve after discontinuation of the offending agent; persistence of parkinsonian symptoms persist can be a sign of “conversion” to idiopathic PD.
- Table 3.6 summarizes the differences between drug-induced parkinsonism and PD.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Drug-Induced Parkinsonism</th>
<th>Parkinson’s Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tremor</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distribution</td>
<td>Commonly symmetric</td>
<td>Asymmetric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concurrent choreathetoid dyskinesias</td>
<td>More common (representing tardive dyskinesia)</td>
<td>Uncommon (except when associated with levodopa-induced dyskinesia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment</td>
<td>Withdrawal of offending medication, anticholinergic agents, amantadine</td>
<td>Levodopa, dopamine agonist, monoamine oxidase B inhibitors, anticholinergics, amantadine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Normal-pressure hydrocephalus\textsuperscript{14,51–53}

- NPH is a rather rare condition in which parkinsonism is associated with “normal-pressure” hydrocephalus and primary empty sella.
- In addition to parkinsonism, there are symptoms of urinary incontinence, gait disturbance, and dementia.
- NPH is distinguished from PD by the following:
  - Rigidity, tremor, and bradykinesia tend to be less common in NPH than in PD.
  - There is a limited, if any, response to levodopa.
  - Incontinence is usually urinary but may also be bowel incontinence.
- Dementia may progress less rapidly than in Alzheimer disease or in PD dementia.
- Structural neuroimaging aids the diagnosis (Figure 3.4).

\textbf{Figure 3.4}

CT scan of the brain of a patient with normal-pressure hydrocephalus.
Surgical shunting should be considered. However, the risks of surgery may outweigh the potential benefit, particularly when poor prognostic features, including dementia, long-standing symptoms, and cortical atrophy, are present.\textsuperscript{54}

NPH may be confused with PD or vascular dementia. Many experts feel that NPH is overdiagnosed, and caution should be exercised before high-risk surgical procedures, such as shunting, are considered.

Other Neurodegenerative Disorders Presenting With Parkinsonism

- Wilson’s disease\textsuperscript{55–58}
  - Wilson’s disease is an autosomal recessive genetic disorder of copper metabolism.
  - It is characterized by hepatic, ophthalmologic, neurological, and psychiatric manifestations (Table 3.7).
  - Movement disorders are protean and can include parkinsonism, tremors (classically described as “wing beating”), dystonia (limb and trunk, and also facial dystonia, termed \textit{risus sardonicus}), and less commonly ataxia, myoclonus, or chorea.
  - The gene responsible is \textit{ATP7B} on chromosome 13.
  - Laboratory findings for Wilson’s disease include the following:
    - Serum ceruloplasmin less than 0.2 g/L (normal, 0.2–0.5 g/L)
    - Twenty-four-hour urinary copper greater than 100 mcg per 24 hours (>1.6 mcmol/24 h)
    - Hepatic copper less than 250 mcg/g dry weight

- Spinocerebellar ataxias\textsuperscript{59–61}
  - Some autosomal dominant spinocerebellar ataxias (SCAs) have parkinsonism as part of their clinical presentation.
  - These include SCAs 1, 2, 3, 12, 21, and 27.
  - Dentatorubropallidoluysian atrophy (DRPLA), although not part of the SCAs, can present with ataxia, parkinsonism, myoclonus, and dystonia along with dementia and also follows an autosomal dominant pattern.
Table 3.7
Summary of Clinical Characteristics of Wilson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System involvement</th>
<th>Clinical features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neurological manifestations</td>
<td>Tremor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May be resting, postural, or kinetic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Wing-beating” appearance suggests proximal upper extremity tremor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Head titubation may appear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dysarthria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Extrapyramidal or cerebellar character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dystonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Risus sardonicus (frozen facial expression)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drooling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Whispering dysphonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Choreiform movements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Painless variant of painful legs and moving toes syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seizures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peripheral sensorimotor polyneuropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Olfactory impairment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pseudobulbar emotional lability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypersomnia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Priapism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Muscle cramps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psychiatric manifestations</td>
<td>Personality changes (antisocial or criminal behavior)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mood disorder, especially depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Psychosis unusual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sexual preoccupation and disinhibition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cognitive impairment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fronto-executive behavior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Visuospatial processing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Memory impairment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ophthalmologic manifestations</td>
<td>Kayser-Fleischer rings (deposition of copper within Descemet membrane); virtually always present in persons with neurological or psychiatric manifestations in Wilson’s disease “Sunflower cataract”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatic manifestations</td>
<td>Asymptomatic enlargement of liver and spleen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hepatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Elevated unconjugated (indirect) bilirubin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Liver cirrhosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

continued
### Table 3.7 (cont.)
Summary of Clinical Characteristics of Wilson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System involvement</th>
<th>Clinical features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Other manifestations</td>
<td>Osteoporosis (may cause spontaneous fractures)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Joint involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hemolytic anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Renal tubular dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperpigmentation of skin at anterior lower legs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gynecologic abnormalities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Menstrual irregularities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delayed puberty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gynecomastia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cardiovascular abnormalities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Congestive cardiac failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cardiac arrhythmia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glucose intolerance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parathyroid insufficiency</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 3.8
Diagnostic Workup of Common Parkinsonian Syndromes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is there a history of exposure to dopamine</td>
<td>If yes, consider drug-induced parkinsonism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receptor blockers?</td>
<td>Symptoms are usually symmetric.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there history of cerebrovascular disease?</td>
<td>Consider vascular parkinsonism, especially if symptoms are symmetric.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lower-body parkinsonism is usually a presentation of vascular parkinsonism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is the patient younger than 50 years old?</td>
<td>Evaluate for Wilson’s disease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Serum ceruloplasmin, 24-hour urinary copper excretion; slit-lamp evaluation; liver biopsy if needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abnormal MRI of brain</td>
<td>Consider the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Basal ganglia or periventricular ischemic gliotic changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vascular parkinsonism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ventriculomegaly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Toxic/metabolic cause (hypoxic–anoxic injury, manganese intoxication, iron deposition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increased signal in basal ganglia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
### Table 3.8 (cont.)
Diagnostic Workup of Common Parkinsonian Syndromes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>“Normal” MRI of brain</th>
<th>Parkinson’s disease</th>
<th>Slowly progressive, levodopa-responsive, asymmetric resting tremors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple system atrophy</td>
<td>Autonomic disturbances, poor levodopa response; MRI may show atrophic pons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Progressive supranuclear palsy</td>
<td>Early falls, dysphagia, poor levodopa response, vertical gaze paresis; MRI may show small midbrain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Corticobasoganglionic degeneration</td>
<td>Asymmetric, dystonia, alien hand, poor levodopa response, dystonia; MRI/SPECT may show cortical asymmetry, especially in the temporal lobes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dementia with Lewy bodies</td>
<td>Early hallucinations, poor levodopa response, memory disturbances, fluctuations in mental status</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviation:** SPECT, single photon emission tomography.

### Table 3.9
Laboratory Clues to Type of Parkinsonism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigations</th>
<th>Findings</th>
<th>Diagnosis to Consider</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peripheral blood film</td>
<td>Acanthocytes</td>
<td>Neuroacanthocytosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creatine kinase</td>
<td>Elevated</td>
<td>Neuroacanthocytosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT of brain</td>
<td>Multifocal infarcts</td>
<td>Vascular parkinsonism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enlarged ventricles (hydrocephalus)</td>
<td>Normal-pressure hydrocephalus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI of brain</td>
<td>Multifocal infarcts</td>
<td>Vascular parkinsonism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Midbrain atrophy with “hummingbird sign”</td>
<td>Progressive supranuclear palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pontine atrophy on sagittal view “Hot cross bun sign” on axial view</td>
<td>Multiple system atrophy, cerebellar type (MSA-C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperintensity of middle cerebral peduncle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
The diagnostic workup of parkinsonian syndromes is summarized in Table 3.8.

Laboratory features can provide clues to the type of parkinsonism (Table 3.9).

The treatment of parkinsonism is discussed in Chapter 4.

REFERENCES

34. Quinn N. Multiple system atrophy—the nature of the beast. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry.* 1989; 52(special suppl):78–89.


4

PARKINSON’S DISEASE

OVERVIEW OF PARKINSON’S DISEASE

James Parkinson wrote and published “An Essay on the Shaking Palsy” in 1817. However, in India, paralysis agitans was described under the name Kam-pavata in the Ayurvedic literature as far back as 4500 bc. Mucuna pruriens (a tropical legume), which they called Atmagupta, was used to treat Kampavata. The seeds of Mucuna pruriens are a natural source of therapeutic quantities of levodopa.

- Parkinson’s disease (PD) is a neurodegenerative disease characterized by slowly progressive symptoms of resting tremor, rigidity, akinesia/bradykinesia, and postural instability.
- PD is the second most common neurodegenerative disease after Alzheimer disease.
- PD affects about 2% of the population over 60 years.
- Incidence rates of PD are 8 to 18 per 100,000 person-years. In 3% to 5% of patients with parkinsonism, the onset is before the age of 40 years. Figure 4.1 compares young-onset PD with juvenile parkinsonism.
- Age is the single most consistent risk factor. Figure 4.2 outlines factors that have been reported to increase and decrease the risk for developing PD.
- Although the majority of cases of PD are sporadic, there are known and increasingly reported genetic and familiar forms of PD (Figure 4.3; Tables 4.1 and 4.2).
- Most inherited forms of PD present at a younger age.
Mitochondrial Inheritance

- So far, data fail to demonstrate a bias toward maternal inheritance in familial PD.⁶
- There is no association of common haplogroup-defining mitochondrial DNA variants or of the 10398G variant with the risk for PD.
- However, it still remains possible that other inherited mitochondrial DNA variants, or somatic mitochondrial DNA mutations, contribute to the risk for familial PD.

PATHOLOGY

- The traditional view is that the main pathologic process in PD is the degeneration of dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra.
- Braak and colleagues have challenged this idea and introduced a six-stage pathologic process (Figure 4.4).³⁷
  - In this staging system, degeneration of dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra occurs in stage 3 (see Figure 4.4; Figure 4.5).
The mechanism responsible for neuronal degeneration is probably multifactorial and based on a combination of genetic and environmental factors (Figure 4.6).\textsuperscript{38}

---

**Figure 4.2**

Known environmental risk and protective factors for Parkinson’s disease genetics and familial forms of Parkinson’s disease.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Increased risk of PD</th>
<th>Reduced risk of PD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*Age</td>
<td>*Smoking\textsuperscript{15,17}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Pesticides e.g. rotenone\textsuperscript{7}</td>
<td>*Coffee\textsuperscript{15,17}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Herbicides, e.g. paraquat &amp; insecticides\textsuperscript{8}</td>
<td>*Vitamin E (only in some case-control studies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Heavy metals\textsuperscript{3,6,10}</td>
<td>*Moderate to vigorous exercise\textsuperscript{18}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Manganese (welding)</td>
<td>*Estrogens (controversial)\textsuperscript{19}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Iron</td>
<td>*Polyunsaturated fatty acids\textsuperscript{20,21}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Copper</td>
<td>*Ibuprofen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Lead</td>
<td>*Hyperuricemia\textsuperscript{22,24}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Amalgam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Zinc</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▪ Aluminum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Solvent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichloroethylene (TCE) [dry cleaning, degreasing agent, organic contaminant in groundwater]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetrachloroethylene / perchloroethylene (PERC) &amp; tetrachloride (CCI4) (electrician, dry cleaner)\textsuperscript{11}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*MPTP (1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine)\textsuperscript{12}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Occupation (physicians and health-care workers)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Head trauma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Living in rural areas\textsuperscript{3}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Drinking well water\textsuperscript{3}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Shy and depressed personality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Diabetes mellitus\textsuperscript{3,13,14}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
Figure 4.3
Summary of autosomal dominant and autosomal recessive Parkinson’s disease.

From Refs. 25–35.
### Table 4.1
Autoosomal Dominant Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Locus</th>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Chromosomal Location</th>
<th>Clinical Features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PARK 1</td>
<td>Alpha-synuclein</td>
<td>4q21-q23</td>
<td>• Early and late onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Parkinsonism, dementia, and visual hallucinations of variable severity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Less tremor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Faster clinical deterioration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Concomitant myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Hyperventilation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARK 3</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>2p13</td>
<td>• Late onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Dementia may be present (two of six families studied)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Typical response to dopaminergic agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Penetrance &lt; 40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARK 4</td>
<td>Alpha-synuclein</td>
<td>4q21-q23</td>
<td>• Early onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>triplication</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Rapid progression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Postural tremor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Asymmetric limb “heaviness” and rigidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Atypical features (eg, autonomic dysfunction, dementia, weight loss in early stages, myoclonus, and seizures have been described)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Late dementia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARK 5</td>
<td>UCHL1</td>
<td>4p14</td>
<td>• Late onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARK 8</td>
<td>LRRK2</td>
<td>12p11.2-q13.1</td>
<td>• Late onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Resembles typical sporadic Parkinson’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Syphilin 1</td>
<td>5q23.1-q23.3</td>
<td>• Response to levodopa good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NR4A2</td>
<td>2q22-q23</td>
<td>• Late onset without atypical features</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 4.2
Autoosomal Recessive Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Locus</th>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Chromosomal Location</th>
<th>Clinical Features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PARK 2</td>
<td>Parkin</td>
<td>6q25.2-q27</td>
<td>• Juvenile onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Slow progression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• High incidence of focal dystonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Good response to dopaminergic therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Symmetric presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Levodopa-induced dyskinesias and motor fluctuations common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Hyperreflexia may be present</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II Neurological Approach

There are three basal ganglia pathways:

- Direct pathway (cortex—striatum—GPi—thalamus—cortex)

---

### Table 4.2 (cont.)
Autosomal Recessive Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Locus</th>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Chromosomal Location</th>
<th>Clinical Features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PARK 6</td>
<td>PINK1</td>
<td>1p35-p36</td>
<td>• Early onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Slow progression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Response to levodopa good and long-lasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARK 7</td>
<td>DJ1</td>
<td>1p36</td>
<td>• Early onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Slow progression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Variable clinical severity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Sustained response to levodopa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Comorbidity showing psychiatric symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARK 9 (Kufor-Rakeb syndrome)</td>
<td></td>
<td>1p36</td>
<td>• Atypical features such as spasticity, dementia, and progressive supranuclear palsy may be present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• May produce facial and finger minimyoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Response to levodopa good</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Figure 4.4**

Stages of Parkinson’s disease–related pathology according to Braak and colleagues.

D1 receptors
- Cortical glutaminergic input to the striatal cells
- GABAergic neurons projecting to the globus pallidus internus (GPi)
- GABAergic neurons of the GPi projecting to the ventral anterior/ventrolateral nuclei of the thalamus
  - Indirect pathway (cortex—striatum—GPe—STN—GPi—thalamus—cortex)
- D2 receptors
- Cortical glutaminergic input to the striatal cells
- GABAergic neurons projecting to the globus pallidus externus (GPe)
- GABAergic neurons of the GPe projecting to the subthalamic nucleus (STN)
- STN glutaminergic projection to the GPi
- GPi to thalamus to cortex (similar to the direct pathway)
  - Hyperdirect pathway (cortex—STN)
- Cortex directly to the STN

Alteration in the direct pathway leading to PD (Figures 4.7 and 4.8)
- In normal subjects, dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra, pars compacta (SNC) act to excite inhibitory neurons in the direct pathway (see Figure 4.7).
Etiopathogenesis of Parkinson’s disease and possible neuroprotective approaches.

Figure 4.7
Normal basal ganglia pathway.

Figure 4.8
Direct pathway of the basal ganglia circuit in normal subjects and subjects with Parkinson's disease.
In PD, dopaminergic cell loss in the SNc results in reduced striatal inhibition of the GPi and substantia nigra, pars reticulata (SNr). The overactivity of the GPi and SNr results in excess inhibition of the thalamus. The final pathway would be a reduced activation of the motor cortex.

Alteration in the indirect pathway leading to PD (Figure 4.9)

- In normal subjects, dopaminergic neurons in the SNc act to inhibit excitatory neurons in the indirect pathway.
- In PD, there is dopaminergic cell loss in the SNc, resulting in increased striatal inhibition of the GPe. The reduced inhibition of the STN results in increased excitation of the GPi, which in turn results in excess inhibition of the thalamus. The final pathway would be a reduced activation of the motor cortex.

**NEUROPROTECTION TRIALS**

- Although several agents have been tested to evaluate their neuroprotective effect in PD, none has been definitively shown to slow disease progression (Table 4.3).\(^{39-62}\)
- Currently, the clinical data for neuroprotective agents for patients with early PD are conflicting and inconclusive.
- Clinical endpoints available are readily confounded by agents that also carry symptomatic effects.
### Table 4.3
Neuroprotective Trials in Parkinson’s Disease to Date

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agents</th>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Primary Outcome</th>
<th>Conclusion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Antioxidants (monoamine oxidase B inhibitors and inosine)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selegiline (deprenyl) and tocopherol</td>
<td>DATATOP</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>Need for levodopa</td>
<td>Selegiline delayed the need for levodopa therapy; however, this may be due to its symptomatic effect. There is no beneficial effect of vitamin E.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selegiline (deprenyl)</td>
<td>Tetrud and Langston</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>Need for levodopa</td>
<td>Early selegiline therapy delays the requirement for antiparkinsonian medications, possibly by slowing progression of the disease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selegiline (deprenyl)</td>
<td>SINDEPAR</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>UPDRS</td>
<td>Selegiline attenuates deterioration in UPDRS score in patients with early PD. These findings are not readily explained by the drug’s symptomatic effects and are consistent with the hypothesis that deprenyl has a neuroprotective effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selegiline</td>
<td>Swedish Selegiline</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>Need for levodopa</td>
<td>Selegiline delayed significantly the need to start levodopa in early PD. After a 2-month washout period (before the start of levodopa therapy), no significant symptomatic effect of selegiline was seen in comparison with the placebo group, supporting the concept of neuroprotective properties of the drug.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selegiline</td>
<td>Norwegian-Danish</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>UPDRS change</td>
<td>Patients treated with the combination of selegiline and levodopa developed markedly less severe parkinsonism and required lower doses of levodopa during the 5-year study period than did patients treated with levodopa and placebo.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
### Table 4.3 (cont.)
**Neuroprotective Trials in Parkinson’s Disease to Date**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agents</th>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Primary Outcome</th>
<th>Conclusion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rasagiline&lt;sup&gt;44&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>TEMPO</td>
<td>404</td>
<td>UPDRS change</td>
<td>Subjects treated with rasagiline, 2 and 1 mg/d, for 12 months showed less functional decline than subjects whose treatment was delayed for 6 months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rasagiline&lt;sup&gt;45&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>ADAGIO</td>
<td>1,176</td>
<td>UPDRS change</td>
<td>Early treatment with rasagiline at a dose of 1 mg/d provided benefits that suggested a possible disease-modifying effect, but early treatment with rasagiline 2 mg/d did not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inosine: phase 2 trial&lt;sup&gt;46&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>SURE-PD</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>Tolerability, validity (urate elevation), dosage, and symptomatic efficacy will be assessed after 12 weeks of treatment.</td>
<td>The phase 2 study showed that inosine is safe and well tolerated in PD. Plans are currently under way for a phase 3 trial, as a potential neuroprotectant in PD is warranted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coenzyme Q10&lt;sup&gt;47&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>QE2</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>UPDRS change</td>
<td>Coenzyme Q10 was safe and well tolerated at dosages of up to 1,200 mg/d. Less disability developed in subjects assigned to coenzyme Q10 than in those assigned to placebo, and the benefit was greatest in subjects receiving the highest dose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coenzyme Q10&lt;sup&gt;48&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>QE3</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>UPDRS change</td>
<td>The study was prematurely terminated. It was futile to complete the study because it was very unlikely to demonstrate a statistically significant benefit of active treatment over placebo.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*continued*
Table 4.3 (cont.)
Neuroprotective Trials in Parkinson’s Disease to Date

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agents</th>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Primary Outcome</th>
<th>Conclusion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Isradipine</td>
<td>STEADY-PD</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>Tolerability</td>
<td>The tolerability of isradipine was dose-dependent. No difference in change in UPDRS was noted among doses. A phase 3 trial is under way to assess the efficacy of 10 mg of isradipine in slowing PD progression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiexcitotoxic and antiglutaminergic agents</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amantadine⁴⁹</td>
<td>Amantadine (retrospective, unblinded study)</td>
<td>836</td>
<td>Better survival (higher 10-year expected survival, absence of dementia, type of parkinsonism=PD and low Hoehn and Yahr Scale stage 1 or 2)</td>
<td>The association of improved survival with amantadine use may stem from symptomatic benefit or may reflect a “neuroprotective” effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riluzole⁵⁰</td>
<td>Jankovic and Hunter</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>UPDRS change</td>
<td>No evidence of symptomatic effect of riluzole was observed. Riluzole was well tolerated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riluzole⁵¹</td>
<td>Riluzole</td>
<td>1,084</td>
<td>Need for symptomatic treatment</td>
<td>Riluzole did not show superiority over placebo in slowing PD progression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiapoptotic agents</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEP-1347 (potent inhibitor of kinase 3)⁵²</td>
<td>PRECEPT</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>UPDRS change</td>
<td>CEP-1347 was ineffective as a disease-modifying treatment in early PD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCH346⁵³</td>
<td></td>
<td>301</td>
<td>UPDRS change</td>
<td>TCH346 did not show any difference in time to disability requiring dopaminergic therapy or change in UPDRS or quality of life.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

continued
### Table 4.3 (cont.)
Neuroprotective Trials in Parkinson’s Disease to Date

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agents</th>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Primary Outcome</th>
<th>Conclusion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dopamine agonists and levodopa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ropinirole vs levodopa&lt;sup&gt;54&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>REAL-PET</td>
<td>186</td>
<td>Fluorodopa PET</td>
<td>Ropinirole is associated with a slower progression of PD than levodopa as assessed by &lt;sup&gt;18&lt;/sup&gt;F-dopa. PET.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pramipexole vs levodopa&lt;sup&gt;55&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>CALM-PD-CIT</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>Beta-CIT change</td>
<td>Patients initially treated with pramipexole demonstrated a loss of striatal [&lt;sup&gt;123&lt;/sup&gt;I]beta-CIT uptake vs those treated with levodopa during a 46-month period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pramipexole&lt;sup&gt;56&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>PROUD</td>
<td>535</td>
<td>UPDRS change</td>
<td>Results do not support a disease-modifying effect of pramipexole but confirm its efficacy and tolerability as monotherapy in early PD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levodopa&lt;sup&gt;57&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>ELLDOPA</td>
<td>360</td>
<td>UPDRS change</td>
<td>Levodopa in a dose response pattern significantly reduced the worsening of symptoms of PD. After the washout period, high-dose levodopa (600 mg daily) had better UPDRS scores but more adverse events of dyskinesia, nausea, headache, infection, and hypertonia and showed a greater decline in [&lt;sup&gt;123&lt;/sup&gt;I] beta-CIT uptake.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Anti-inflammatory effects and enhancement of mitochondrial function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agents</th>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Primary Outcome</th>
<th>Conclusion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minocycline and creatine&lt;sup&gt;58&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>NINDS NET-PD FS-1</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>UPDRS change</td>
<td>Both creatine and minocycline should be considered for definitive phase 3 trials to determine if they alter the long-term progression of PD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDNF&lt;sup&gt;59&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Liatermin</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>UPDRS change</td>
<td>Liatermin did not confer the predetermined level of clinical benefit to patients with PD despite increased &lt;sup&gt;18&lt;/sup&gt;F-dopa uptake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibuprofen&lt;sup&gt;60&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Harvard epide-miological study</td>
<td>291</td>
<td>Meta-analysis</td>
<td>Ibuprofen is potentially neuroprotective against PD, not shared by other NSAIDs or acetaminophen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 4.3 (cont.)

Neuroprotective Trials in Parkinson’s Disease to Date

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agents that enhance mitochondrial function and neuro-immunophilin</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Primary Outcome</th>
<th>Conclusion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coenzyme Q10 and GP-1485&lt;sup&gt;61&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>213</td>
<td>UPDRS change</td>
<td>Coenzyme Q10 and GP-1485 may warrant further study in PD, although the data are inconsistent. Additional factors (cost, availability of other agents, more recent data on placebo outcomes, other ongoing trials) should also be considered in the selection of agents for phase 3 studies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agents that increase brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) and glial cell line–derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercise (indirect evidence)&lt;sup&gt;62&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Osaka epidemiology study</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** ADAGIO, Attenuation of Disease Progression With Azilect Given Once Daily; CALM-PD, Comparison of the Agonist Pramipexole With Levodopa on Motor Complications of PD; DATA-TOP, Deprenyl and Tocopherol Antioxidative Therapy of Parkinsonism; ELLDOPA, Earlier Versus Later Levodopa Therapy in PD; NINDS, National Institute of Neurological Disease and Stroke; NET-PD FS-1, Neuroprotective Exploratory Trials in PD, Futility Study 1; PET, positron emission tomography; PRECEPT, A Randomized Double-Blind Placebo-Controlled Dose-Finding Study to Assess the Efficacy and Safety of CEP 1347 in Patients With Early PD; PROUD, Pramipexole on Underlying Disease; QE2, Coenzyme Q10 Evaluation-2; REAL-PET, Requip as Early Therapy Versus L-dopa PET; SINDEPAR, Sinemet-Deprenyl-Parlodel; STEADy PD, Safety, Tolerability, and Efficacy Assessment of Dynacirc CR for PD; SURE-PD, Safety of Urate Elevation in PD; TEMPO, TVP-1012 in Early Monotherapy for PD Outpatients; UPDRS, Unified Parkinson’s Disease Rating Scale.

---

### Diagnosis

- The diagnosis of PD remains clinical to this day (Figure 4.10). The UK Parkinson’s Disease Society Brain Bank Clinical Diagnostic Criteria have been used as a gold standard diagnostic tool in PD research (Table 4.4).<sup>63</sup>

- At present, there is no biological marker that unequivocally confirms the diagnosis of PD.
  - Imaging and other ancillary tests have been utilized (clinically or in PD research) to help confirm the diagnosis of PD (Table 4.5).
  - Recently, DaTscan has been approved by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to differentiate neurodegenerative parkinsonism (eg, PD) from nonneurodegenerative parkinsonism (eg, essential tremor,
vascular parkinsonism, drug-induced parkinsonism) (Figure 4.11). However, DaTscan is unable to differentiate PD from other Parkinson-plus syndromes (eg, progressive supranuclear palsy, multiple system atrophy, dementia with Lewy bodies).

**Figure 4.10**
Motor features of Parkinson’s disease.

**Table 4.4**
UKPDS Brain Bank Clinical Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1: Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Bradykinesia and at least one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>○ Muscular rigidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>○ 4- to 6-Hz resting tremor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>○ Postural instability not caused by primary visual, vestibular, cerebellar or proprioceptive dysfunction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2: Exclusion criteria for Parkinson’s disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• History of repeated strokes with stepwise progression of parkinsonian features</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• History of definite encephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• History of repeated head injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• MPTP exposure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Oculogyric crisis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Neuroleptic treatment at onset of symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• More than one affected relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sustained remission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Strictly unilateral features after 3 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Supranuclear gaze palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cerebellar signs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Early severe autonomic involvement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
### UKPDS Brain Bank Clinical Criteria

- Early severe dementia with disturbances of memory, language, and praxis
- Babinski sign
- Presence of cerebral tumor or communicating hydrocephalus on CT scan
- Negative response to large doses of levodopa (if malabsorption excluded)

**Step 3: Supportive criteria for Parkinson’s disease (three or more required for diagnosis of definite Parkinson’s disease)**

- Unilateral onset
- Resting tremor
- Progressive disorder
- Persistent asymmetry with side of onset affected to greater degree
- Excellent response (70%–100%) to levodopa
- Severe levodopa-induced chorea
- Levodopa response for 5 years or more
- Clinical course of 10 years or more

**Abbreviation:** UKPDS, UK Parkinson’s Disease Society Brain Bank Clinical Diagnostic Criteria.

**Source:** Adapted from Ref. 63: Gibb WR, Lees AJ. The relevance of the Lewy body to the pathogenesis of idiopathic Parkinson’s disease. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry.* 1988;51:745–752.

### Imaging and Ancillary Tests for Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Interpretation</th>
<th>Advantage</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positron emission tomography (PET) (commonly 18F-dopa used as PET marker for dopamine synthesis)</td>
<td>Reduction of 18F-dopa uptake, particularly in the putamen</td>
<td>Differentiates PD from multiple system atrophy (MSA), progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP), and other types of degenerative parkinsonism</td>
<td>Expensive and not widely available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single photon emission tomography (SPECT) ([123I]FP-CIT [DaTscan], [123I] beta-CIT, TRo-DAT commonly used as isotope-labeled dopamine transporters)</td>
<td>Reduced presynaptic dopamine activity in PD and other types of neurodegenerative parkinsonism</td>
<td>Differentiates neurodegenerative parkinsonism from other differential diagnoses (eg, essential tremor, drug-induced parkinsonism, vascular parkinsonism)</td>
<td>Unable to differentiate PD from other types of neurodegenerative parkinsonism (eg, PSP, MSA) Expensive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table 4.5 (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Interpretation</th>
<th>Advantage</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diffusion tensor imaging</td>
<td>Fractional anisotropy (FA) in substantia nigra (SN) reduced in PD</td>
<td>Indirect measure of dopaminergic degeneration within SN Cheaper than PET or SPECT and MRI more widely available Differentiates PD from atypical parkinsonism (abnormal FA in putamen) Potentially a noninvasive early biomarker of PD 100% sensitivity and specificity for distinguishing subjects with PD from healthy subjects</td>
<td>Lack of experience in interpretation Not widely performed No correlation between FA and Unified Parkinson’s Disease Rating Scale (UPDRS) scores</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proton density–weighted spin-echo (SE) and fast short T1 inversion recovery (STIR) images</td>
<td>Iron deposition in lateral substantia nigra, pars compacta (SNc)</td>
<td>Correlation with progression of motor symptoms Potential biomarker for disease progression</td>
<td>No difference in size of SN between PD and normal subjects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS)</td>
<td>Normal or reduced N-acetylaspartate (NAA) and increased lactate Significant increase in lactate/NAA ratio in PD with dementia</td>
<td>Noninvasive technique</td>
<td>Nonspecific False negatives Not able to differentiate PD from atypical parkinsonism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transcranial ultrasound</td>
<td>Hyperechogenicity from SN in PD</td>
<td>May identify early disease when combined with other noninvasive tests (eg, olfactory testing)</td>
<td>Difficult to perform and time-consuming Nonspecific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Interpretation</td>
<td>Advantage</td>
<td>Disadvantages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac sympathetic nerve imaging</td>
<td>Decreased in PD (dopamine transporter loss)</td>
<td>Sensitive</td>
<td>Nonspecific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ligand includes meta-iodobenzylguanidine [MIBG])</td>
<td>Normal in MSA and other types of neurodegenerative parkinsonism</td>
<td>Helps to differentiate PD from MSA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olfactory testing (eg, University of Pennsylvania Smell Identification Test [UPSIT])</td>
<td>Impaired olfaction correlates with functional neuroimaging abnormalities</td>
<td>Can identify early PD, even before motor symptoms of PD</td>
<td>Nonspecific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dopaminergic challenge test</td>
<td>Positive response in PD is a reduction in motor score of 20% (60 min after levodopa or 20 min after apomorphine)</td>
<td>Easy to perform Good predictor of response to treatment</td>
<td>False negatives Some patients may show response to longer-term oral therapy Difficult to determine if baseline motor score &lt; 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweat test</td>
<td>Impaired sweat axon reflex in PD and MSA</td>
<td>Studies autonomic function</td>
<td>Unable to definitively differentiate PD from MSA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axon reflex test: iontophoresis of 10% acetylcholine in five sites with 2 mA of direct current for 5 minutes; sweat output recorded for this time and for additional 5 min</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermoregulatory sweat test: environment of 50% humidity and 50°C (skin at 40°C) for 30 min or core temperature increased by more than 1.5°C; sweat output quantified</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The PD motor presentation can be divided into two phenotypes (Figure 4.12).

- Akinetic–rigid syndrome or postural instability gait dysfunction subtype (PIGD)
- Tremor-predominant subtype

Certain clinical features, such as resting tremor, asymmetry of parkinsonian motor symptoms, and good response to levodopa, strongly suggest PD rather than a Parkinson-plus syndrome (Figure 4.13).

The akinetic–rigid syndrome or PIGD subtype is more challenging to differentiate from other Parkinson-plus syndromes.

**Clinical Rating Scale for Parkinson’s Disease**

- There is currently no biomarker to assess the severity of PD.
- The severity of PD is based mainly on the clinical features.

---

**Figure 4.11**

Single photon emission computed tomographic scan of a patient with Parkinson’s disease showing decreased tracer uptake in the bilateral putamen, suggestive of loss of dopaminergic neuronal terminal density in the striatum.
The Unified Parkinson’s Disease Rating Scale (UPDRS) is the most widely used scale to assess PD severity and symptomatic motor improvement in treatment trials and in clinical practice (Table 4.6).64–67

Nonmotor Symptoms of Parkinson’s Disease

- Almost all PD patients will develop nonmotor complications (Table 4.7).
  - Always ask patients (or their caregivers) about these nonmotor symptoms!
Table 4.6
Comparison of Scales in Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scale</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Unified Parkinson’s Disease Rating Scale (UPDRS)\(^{64}\)           | • Most widely used “gold standard”                                         | • Length of scale (about 17 min required for experienced users)  
• Less emphasis on neuropsychiatric symptoms and other nonmotor symptoms |
| Movement Disorder Society–sponsored revision of Unified Parkinson’s Disease Rating Scale (MDS-UPDRS)\(^{65}\) | • Comprehensive and better instructions and scoring anchor descriptions  
• Good emphasis on neuropsychiatric symptoms and other nonmotor symptoms  
• Validated in several languages; ongoing validation in additional languages | • Length of scale  
• New and therefore not sufficiently tested in clinical trials |
| Short Parkinson’s Evaluation Scale/Scale for Outcomes in Parkinson’s Disease (SPES/SCOPA)\(^{66}\) | • Short and practical  
• High reproducibility                                                      | • Lack of assessment of nonmotor symptoms of PD  
• Not widely used                                                               |
| Hoehn and Yahr\(^{67}\)                                              | • Short and easy to administer  
• Correlates well with disease progression  
• Correlates well with pathology of PD                                          | • Emphasizes only motor component of PD  
• Lacking detail and not comprehensive                                             |

Source: Adapted from Refs. 64–67.

- If present, determine if they fluctuate, as many of these nonmotor features worsen in the “off” state. In this case, lessening/improving the wearing-off state through dopaminergic medication adjustments may also improve the nonmotor features.
- If these nonmotor features are pervasive and persist regardless of motor state, then a more targeted, symptom-specific approach and treatment are warranted.
- The nonmotor symptoms of PD decrease quality of life (often more so than the motor features of the disorder) and impose significant caregiver stress and an economic burden on society.
Some nonmotor symptoms occur very early and even predate the onset of motor symptoms (eg, anosmia, constipation, depression, REM sleep behavior disorder).

Other nonmotor symptoms, such as behavioral and cognitive dysfunction, are the major contributors of disability in advanced disease states, especially dementia and psychosis (which are typically drug-induced). However, anxiety, apathy, depression, fatigue, and urinary, speech, swallow, and sleep disturbances are also fairly common.

The dopaminergic treatment seems to be unhelpful for most of the nonmotor symptoms unless these are linked to motor fluctuations.

Table 4.8 summarize the nonmotor features of PD, along with their possible etiologies and treatment.

---

**Table 4.7**

Overview of Nonmotor Symptoms of Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Behavioral and cognitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anxiety and panic attacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dementia or mild cognitive impairment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impulse control disorders (dopamine dysregulation syndrome: punding, pathologic gambling, compulsive shopping, binge eating, hypersexuality)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hallucinations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delusions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sleep</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REM sleep behavior disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restless legs syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insomnia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep fragmentation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Autonomic dysfunction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure control (orthostatic hypotension, supine hypertension)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal problems (constipation, dysphagia, nausea, drooling of saliva, nausea, reflux, vomiting, gastroparesis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bladder dysfunction (hyperactive and disinhibited bladder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sexual dysfunction (impotence, decreased libido)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypo/hyperhidrosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fatigue</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight loss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Seborrheic dermatitis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 4.8
Nonmotor Symptoms of Parkinson’s Disease With Possible Etiology and Treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonmotor Symptoms (Prevalence)</th>
<th>Possible Etiopathophysiology</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Behavioral and cognitive symptoms</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Depression (up to 72% of patients with PD) | • Involvement of serotoninergic and noradrenergic system in the orbitofrontal–subcortical connections | • Pramipexole<sup>A</sup>  
• Selective serotonin receptor inhibitors (SSRIs) (eg, sertraline<sup>E</sup>, escitalopram, citalopram<sup>E</sup>, paroxetine<sup>E</sup>, fluoxetine<sup>E</sup>)  
• Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) (eg, nortriptyline<sup>B</sup>, desipramine<sup>B</sup>, amitriptyline<sup>E</sup>)  
• Mirtazapine (noradrenergic and serotoninergic antidepressant)  
• Bupropion (norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor)  
• Duloxetine and venlafaxine (serotonin and noradrenaline reuptake inhibitors: SNRIs)  
• Nefazodone<sup>E</sup> (serotonin antagonist and reuptake inhibitor: SARI)  
• Atomoxetine<sup>E</sup> (SNRI)  
• Cognitive behavioral therapy  
• Transcranial magnetic stimulation (rTMS)<sup>E</sup>  
• Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)<sup>E</sup> in severe depression |
| Anxiety and panic attacks (about 40% of PD patients) | • Changes in dopaminergic, noradrenergic, and serotoninergic pathways in the striatal motor system, nucleus accumbens, amygdala, locus ceruleus, and limbic structures  
• Sensory or behavior “offs” can accompany motor “offs” | • Psychotherapy  
• Benzodiazepine (eg, lorazepam, clonazepam, or alprazolam) |

*continued*
### Table 4.8 (cont.)
Nonmotor Symptoms of Parkinson’s Disease With Possible Etiology and Treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonmotor Symptoms (Prevalence)</th>
<th>Possible Etiopathophysiology</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Dementia or mild cognitive impairment (40% in cross-sectional studies, 80% in longitudinal studies) | • Alpha-synuclein, beta-amyloid plaque, Lewy body inclusions and deficits in cholinergic output of pedunculopontine nucleus (PPN)  
• More common in postural instability gait disorder (PIGD) category than tremor-dominant category, older age, greater severity and longer duration of PD, and male gender  
• Montreal Cognitive Assessment (MOCA) better than Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE) as screening tool  
• Predicts nursing home placement | • Provide environmental stability and safety  
• Manage sleep and mood disorders  
• Keep PD drugs for motor control at a minimum  
• Withdraw anticholinergics  
• Cholinesterase inhibitors (eg, rivastigmine[^A], donepezil[^E], and galantamine[^E])  
• N-methyl-d-aspartate receptor antagonist (ie, memantine[^E])  
• Only rivastigmine is FDA-approved for PD dementia in the United States |
| Apathy (38%–51% patients with PD) | • Involvement of dopaminergic pathways in the mesial frontal–anterior cingulate cortex connections  
• Risk factors include older age, male sex, higher depression scores, worsening of speech and motor skills with axial involvement, higher scores on the motor Unified Parkinson’s Disease Rating Scale (UPDRS), dementia | • Responds slightly to dopaminergic drugs |
| Impulse control disorders, dopamine dysregulation syndrome: punding (1.4%–14%), pathologic gambling (3.4%–8% of PD patients), compulsive shopping, binge eating, hypersexuality (4.3% of PD patients) | • Dopaminergic activity in the ventral and dorsal striatum, nucleus accumbens, and mesolimbic network | • Decrease PD medications, especially dopamine agonists |

[^A]: FDA-approved for PD dementia in the United States  
[^E]: FDA-approved for PD dementia in the United States
### Table 4.8 (cont.)
Nonmotor Symptoms of Parkinson’s Disease With Possible Etiology and Treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonmotor Symptoms (Prevalence)</th>
<th>Possible Etiopathophysiology</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Punding: repetitive, stereotypic, pointless motor behaviors | • Associated with dopaminergic medication, but not exclusively  
• More prevalent in male patients and patients with early onset of disease, right-sided onset of motor manifestations, past history of depression or bipolar disorder, disinhibition, irritability, and appetite disorders | • SSRI  
• Atypical antipsychotics (controversial, reports showing that quetiapine may worsen punding in patients with PD)  
• Amantadine<sup>e</sup> for pathologic gambling |
| Hallucinations (30%–40% of PD patients) | • Often visual hallucinations consisting of people or animals; occur in dim lighting; last only seconds to minutes | • Decrease or eliminate anti-PD medications in the following order:  
  Anticholinergics  
  Amantadine  
  Monoamine oxidase B (MAO-B) inhibitors  
  Dopamine agonists  
  Dopamine O-methyltransferase (COMT) inhibitors  
  Levodopa  
• Atypical antipsychotics with “milder” dopamine blocker (ie, clozapine<sup>a</sup> or quetiapine<sup>e</sup>); avoid olanzapine<sup>c</sup>  
• Mild cases may benefit from cholinesterase inhibitors or memantine |
| Delusions (8% of PD patients) | • Commonly paranoid, typically beliefs of abandonment or spousal infidelity |  |
| Psychosis (lifetime prevalence in PD 25% to nearly 50%) | • Risk factors include older age, longer duration of illness, severe motor impairment, presence of depression and RBD, significant autonomic impairment, and visual acuity |  |
| Sleep (60%–98% of PD patients) |  |  |
| REM sleep behavior disorder (25%–50% of PD patients) | • Degeneration of lower brainstem nuclei involving laterodorsal tegmentum, pedunculopontine nucleus (PPN), perilocus ceruleus, medial medulla, and ventrolateral reticulospinal tracts (Braak stages 1 and 2) | • Low-dose clonazepam  
• Melatonin |

<sup>a</sup>Clozapine. <sup>b</sup>Quetiapine. <sup>c</sup>Olanzapine. <sup>d</sup>Levodopa. <sup>e</sup>Amantadine. <sup>f</sup>Atypical antipsychotics. <sup>g</sup>Mild cases may benefit from cholinesterase inhibitors or memantine.
## Table 4.8 (cont.)
Nonmotor Symptoms of Parkinson’s Disease With Possible Etiology and Treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonmotor Symptoms (Prevalence)</th>
<th>Possible Etiopathophysiology</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Excessive daytime sleepiness (up to 50% of PD patients) | • Strongly associated with dopamine agonists  
• Risk for motor vehicle accidents | • Reduce dose of PD medications, particularly dopamine agonists  
• Reduce sedating medications, such as benzodiazepines, sedative antidepressants  
• Stimulants such as modafinil<sup>E</sup>, sodium oxybate, methylphenidate, and anti-H3 drugs  
• Patients report feeling more alert with pedunculopontine deep brain stimulation |
| Restless legs syndrome (7.9%–50% of PD patients) and periodic limb movements during sleep (30%–80% of PD patients) | • Involvement of dopaminergic pathways other than nigrostriatal dopaminergic pathways | • Iron supplementation  
• Dopamine agonist (ie, pramipexole, ropinirole, or rotigotine patch)  
• Anticonvulsants, opioids, or benzodiazepines |
| Insomnia | • Degeneration of lower brainstem nuclei involving laterodorsal tegmentum, PPN, perilocus ceruleus, medial medulla, and ventrolateral reticulospinal tracts (Braak stages 1 and 2) | • Benzodiazepines (eg, alprazolam)  
• Hypnotics (eg, eszopiclone<sup>E</sup>)  
• Melatonin<sup>E</sup>  
• Controlled-release formulation of levodopa/carbidopa<sup>E</sup> |
| Sleep fragmentation | • Most commonly caused by undertreated nocturnal parkinsonism, which is very responsive to levodopa therapy | • Benzodiazepines (eg, alprazolam, clonazepam)  
• Controlled-release formulation of levodopa/carbidopa |
| Autonomic dysfunction | | |
| Orthostatic hypotension (35%–58% of PD patients) | • Increase intake of fluids, salt, and caffeine  
• Elevation of head of bed  
• Use abdominal ring binder or compression stockings  
• Advise patient to shift position from supine to sitting or standing slowly | |

<sup>E</sup> Indicates evidence-based treatment.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonmotor Symptoms (Prevalence)</th>
<th>Possible Etiopathophysiology</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>* Medications (fludrocortisone&lt;sup&gt;E&lt;/sup&gt;, midodrine&lt;sup&gt;E&lt;/sup&gt;, pyridostigmine, droxidopa)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Constipation | • Immobility  
• Drugs (eg, anticholinergics  
• Reduced fluid and food intake  
• Parasympathetic involvement (Lewy bodies in dorsal nucleus of vagus) prolonging colonic transit | • Physical exercise  
• Stop anticholinergics  
• Adequate intake of fluid, fruits, vegetables, fiber  
• Laxatives: lactulose (10–20 g/d), polyethylene glycol (macrogol<sup>B</sup>)  
• Apomorphine and duodopa |
| Gastroparesis | | • Use of domperidone<sup>B</sup>  
• Botulinum toxin in the pyloric sphincter, electric stimulation, or surgery  
• Exercise, diet with high intake of liquid and dietary fiber, symbiotic yogurt, and medications such as macrogol |
| Urinary symptoms, such as urge incontinence (37%–70% of PD patients) | • Overactivity of the detrusor muscle attributed to loss of inhibition of D1 receptors in the micturition center in the pons | • Anticholinergic agents (eg, oxybutynin, solifenacin, tolterodine)  
• Darifenacin (selective M2–M3 muscarinic receptor) |
| Erectile dysfunction (42% of PD patients) | • Correlated with higher UPDRS, left-sided prominence of motor symptoms, lower educational level, cognitive impairment, fatigue, apathy, and low testosterone levels | • Sildenafil<sup>E</sup> or other phosphodiesterase inhibitors  
• Apomorphine |
| Sweating (45%–75% of PD patients) | • Decreased dopaminergic activity in the hypothalamus | • Use of cool, comfortable clothing |

*continued*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonmotor Symptoms (Prevalence)</th>
<th>Possible Etiopathophysiology</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Nausea                         | • More frequently related to medications | • Avoid use of metoclopramide as it potentially causes extrapyramidal side effects  
|                                |                              | • Slow upward titration of PD medications  
|                                |                              | • Add Lodosyn (pure carbidopa)  
|                                |                              | • Antiemetics without extrapyramidal side effects (eg, trimethobenzamide, ondansetron, domperidone) |
| Drooling, salorrhea, dysphagia (up to 75% of PD patients) | • Involvement of the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus and the peripheral autonomic nervous system (myenteric plexus) | • Botulinum toxin A<sup>a</sup> and B<sup>a</sup> for treatment of sialorrhea  
|                                |                              | • Anticholinergics (eg, glycopyrrolate<sup>b</sup>) for sialorrhea  
|                                |                              | • Gum chewing for drooling and dysphagia |
| Hyposmia (40% of PD patients) and rhinorrhea | • Lewy bodies and Lewy neuritis in the olfactory nucleus and tract and amygdala | • No pharmacologic treatment for anosmia |
| Fatigue (about 44% of PD patients) | • Probable causes include mood disorders, changes in neurotransmitters, hormonal imbalance (eg, testosterone deficiency), changes in expression of cytokines and other inflammatory factors, changes in life patterns, sleep disturbances, apathy, and dysautonomia | • Medications (eg, amantadine, methylphenidate<sup>e</sup>, modafinil<sup>e</sup>, duodopa, selegiline, sodium oxybate, and levodopa) |
Tables 4.9 through 4.15 summarize the levels of efficacy of described treatments for nonmotor complications of PD as follows:\(^70\)

- **Efficacious.** Evidence shows that the intervention has a positive effect on studied outcomes; supported by data from at least one high-quality (score ≥ 75\%) randomized controlled trial without conflicting level 1 data.\(^A\)

- **Likely efficacious.** Evidence suggests, but is not sufficient to show, that the intervention has a positive effect on studied outcomes; supported by data from any level 1 trial without conflicting level 1 data.\(^B\)

- **Unlikely efficacious.** Evidence suggests that the intervention does not have a positive effect on studied outcomes; supported by data from any level 1 trial without conflicting level 1 data.\(^C\)

- **Nonefficacious.** Evidence shows that the intervention does not have a positive side effect on studied outcomes; supported by data from at least one high-quality (score ≥ 75\%) randomized controlled trial without conflicting level 1 data.\(^D\)

- **Insufficient evidence.** There is not enough evidence either for or against efficacy of the intervention in the treatment of PD; all the circumstances not covered by the previous statement.\(^E\)
## Table 4.9
Evidence on Drugs Used for Depression in Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drugs</th>
<th>Efficacy</th>
<th>Safety</th>
<th>Practice implications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dopamine agonists</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pramipexole</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pergolide</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk with specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Not useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nortriptyline</td>
<td>Likely efficacious</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Possibly useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desipramine</td>
<td>Likely efficacious</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Possibly useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amitriptyline</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Selective serotonin receptor inhibitors (SSRIs)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citalopram</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sertraline</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxetine</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluoxetine</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monoamine oxidase inhibitors</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moclobemide</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (combined treatment with TCAs and SSRIs carries an unacceptable risk)</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 4.9 (cont.)
Evidence on Drugs Used for Depression in Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drugs</th>
<th>Efficacy</th>
<th>Safety</th>
<th>Practice Implications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Selegiline</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Newer antidepressants</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atomoxetine</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nefazodone</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Unacceptable risk</td>
<td>Not useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Alternative therapies</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omega-3 fatty acids</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nonpharmacologic interventions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transcranial magnetic stimulation (rTMS)</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### Table 4.10
Evidence on Drugs Used for Fatigue in Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drugs</th>
<th>Efficacy</th>
<th>Safety</th>
<th>Practice Implications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Methylphenidate</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modafinil</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Motor Fluctuations

- About 40% of patients treated with levodopa develop motor fluctuations and/or dyskinesias within 4 to 6 years of initiating therapy.71
- The pathogenesis of motor fluctuations remains unclear but appears to be associated with two major factors:72
  - Progression of PD
### Table 4.13
Evidence on Drugs Used for Psychosis in Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drugs</th>
<th>Efficacy</th>
<th>Safety</th>
<th>Practice Implications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clozapine</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Acceptable risk with specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olanzapine</td>
<td>Unlikely efficacious</td>
<td>Unacceptable risk</td>
<td>Not useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quetiapine</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Recent randomized controlled trials have shown the efficacy of pimavanserin, a serotonin (5-HT) receptor 2A antagonist, in alleviating Parkinson’s disease psychosis without worsening parkinsonism.


### Table 4.14
Evidence on Drugs Used for Autonomic Dysfunction in Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drugs</th>
<th>Efficacy</th>
<th>Safety</th>
<th>Practice Implications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Orthostatic hypotension</strong>a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fludrocortisone</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domperidone</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midodrine</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dihydroergotamine</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etilefrine hydrochloride</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indomethacin</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yohimbine</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threo-3-(3,4)-dihydroxyphenyl-L-serine</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sexual dysfunction**

| Sildenafil                        | Insufficient evidence | Insufficient evidence                | Investigational              |

**Gastrointestinal motility problems (constipation)**

| Macrogol                          | Likely efficacious     | Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring | Possibly useful              |

*continued*
### Table 4.14 (cont.)
Evidence on Drugs Used for Autonomic Dysfunction in Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drugs</th>
<th>Efficacy</th>
<th>Safety</th>
<th>Practice Implications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal motility problems (anorexia, nausea, and vomiting associated with levodopa and/or dopamine agonist treatment)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domperidone</td>
<td>Likely efficacious</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Possibly useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metoclopramide</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Unacceptable risk</td>
<td>Not useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sialorrhea</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipratropium bromide spray</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycopyrrolate</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Possibly useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botulinum toxin B</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Acceptable risk with specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botulinum toxin A</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Acceptable risk with specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Urinary frequency, urinary urgency, and/or urge incontinence</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxybutynin</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolterodine</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flavoxate</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propiverine</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prazosin</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desmopressin</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Droxidopa, a prodrug of norepinephrine and epinephrine capable of crossing the blood–brain barrier, has recently been shown in randomized controlled trials to mitigate orthostatic hypotension in primary autonomic disorders, such as Parkinson’s disease and multiple systems atrophy.*


- Molecular and functional alterations of basal ganglia structures as a consequence of the *pulsatile dopaminergic stimulation* caused by the repeated oral administration of levodopa
- Motor fluctuations are more likely to occur as the disease progresses (Figure 4.14)."
### Table 4.15
Evidence on Drugs Used for Disorders of Sleep and Wakefulness in Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drugs</th>
<th>Efficacy</th>
<th>Safety</th>
<th>Practice Implications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Insomnia</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlled-release formulation of levodopa/carbidopa</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pergolide</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk with specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Not useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eszopiclone</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melatonin 3–5 mg</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melatonin 50 mg</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Excessive daytime somnolence and sudden onset of sleep</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modafinil</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**Figure 4.14**
Changes in the clinical effect of Parkinson’s disease as the disease progresses.
The therapeutic window narrows over time and as PD advances.

Mild or early PD is characterized by a smooth or extended duration of target clinical response; low incidence of dyskinesia.

Moderate PD is generally characterized by diminished duration of target clinical response; increased incidence of dyskinesia.

Severe or advanced PD is often characterized by short duration of target clinical response; “on” time is associated with dyskinesia, either choreic, ballistic, or dystonic in presentation (Figure 4.15). In addition, this stage can be dominated by nonmotor features (eg, cognitive decline or dementia, psychosis).

TREATMENT

Levodopa remains the most effective medication for the treatment of PD.

The disadvantage of levodopa is its greater likelihood of causing motor fluctuations, especially dyskinesias.

However, it must be noted that dyskinesias, when they occur, are often less bothersome to the patient than they are to their caregivers. The majority of PD patients would typically prefer to be slightly dyskinetic than to be parkinsonian.

The other medical therapies for PD consist of dopamine agonists, monoamine oxidase B (MAO-B) inhibitors, amantadine, anticholinergic agents, and catechol O-methyltransferase (COMT) inhibitors (Figure 4.16; Table 4.16).74,75 In some countries, such as Japan, adenosine A2A antagonists are included among approved drug classes for PD.
Figure 4.17 summarizes their mechanisms of action.

None of the medications has been shown to alter the progressive course of PD.

Delaying the use of levodopa early in the course of treatment delays the development of dyskinesia and motor fluctuations (Table 4.17).\textsuperscript{76,77}

While the treatment for PD should be individualized to the patient, a general guideline/algorithm can be used based mainly on the patient’s age and severity of motor symptoms (Figure 4.18).

- Older patients are less likely to develop levodopa-induced dyskinesias and therefore are generally best initiated on levodopa, regardless of disease severity.

- Younger patients are more likely to develop levodopa-induced dyskinesias, and therefore careful consideration before dopamine agonists or other adjunctive medications are initiated may be in order if their benefits outweigh the risks.

- The superiority of levodopa over all other anti-PD oral medications, with regard to motor improvement, is clear; therefore, when functional disability is significant, it is best to use levodopa regardless of age or other factors.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication Group&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Medications</th>
<th>Available Doses</th>
<th>Side Effects</th>
<th>Indications and Precautions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Levodopa                  | Carbidopa/levodopa (Sinemet) | 10/100 mg, 25/100 mg, 50/200 mg | Nausea, vomiting, hypotension, hallucinations, somnolence, dyskinesias | • Most efficacious treatment for PD (“gold standard”)  
• Greater likelihood for development of motor complications, dyskinesias  
• Better tolerated (compared with dopamine agonists), especially in the elderly |
|                           | Carbidopa/levodopa controlled release (Sinemet CR) | 50/200 mg | Nausea, vomiting, hypotension, hallucination, somnolence, dyskinesias |
|                           | Carbidopa/levodopa/entacapone (Stalevo) | 12.5/50/200 mg, 25/100/200 mg, 37.5/150/200 mg | Nausea, vomiting, hypotension, hallucination, dyskinesias, somnolence, diarrhea, orange urine |
| Dopamine agonist (ergot)  | Bromocriptine | 2.5 mg, 5 mg | Nausea, vomiting, leg edema, somnolence, valvular fibrosis | |
| Dopamine agonists (nonergot) | Pramipexole (Mirapex) | 0.125 mg, 0.25 mg, 0.5 mg, 1 mg, 1.5 mg | Nausea, vomiting, leg edema, somnolence, impulse control disorder, weight gain | • Less efficacious than levodopa/carbidopa  
• Pramipexole has been shown to be effective in tremor (75) and has possible antidepressant effect  
• Less tolerated than levodopa (more sedation, hallucinations, edema)  
• Watch for idiosyncratic class side effects: pedal edema, impulse control disorder, “sleep attacks” (ie, suddenly falling asleep without warning), weight gain |
|                           | Ropinirole (Requip) | 0.25 mg, 0.5 mg, 1 mg, 2 mg, 3 mg, 4 mg, 5 mg | Nausea, vomiting, leg edema, somnolence, impulse control disorder, weight gain |
|                           | Piribedil (Trivastal) | 50 mg | Nausea, vomiting, leg edema, somnolence, impulse control disorder, weight gain |

<sup>a</sup> Medical therapy for Parkinson’s disease.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication Group</th>
<th>Medications</th>
<th>Available Doses</th>
<th>Side Effects</th>
<th>Indications and Precautions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Pramipexole extended release (Mirapex ER) | 0.375 mg, 0.75 mg, 1.5 mg, 2.25 mg, 3 mg, 3.75 mg, and 4.5 mg | Nausea, vomiting, leg edema, somnolence, impulse control disorder, weight gain | • Dopamine agonist with strong D1 and D2 receptor-stimulating properties  
• Lipophilic, therefore diffuses directly across blood–brain barrier, bypassing the active transport mechanism needed for levodopa absorption  
• Onset within 10 minutes of injection  
• Short half-life, lasting about 60–90 minutes  
• Useful as a rescue agent for “off” states |
| Ropinirole extended release (Requip ER) | 2 mg, 4 mg, 8 mg, 12 mg | Nausea, vomiting, leg edema, somnolence, impulse control disorder, weight gain |
| Rotigotine transdermal patch (Neupro) | 2 mg, 4 mg, 6 mg | Rash, nausea, vomiting, somnolence |
| Apomorphine (Apokyn) | 0.02 mL, 0.06 mL | Nausea, vomiting, dizziness, somnolence, skin changes |
| Monoamine oxidase B (MAO-B) inhibitors | Selegiline (Eldepryl) | 5 mg | Insomnia, hallucinations, confusion | • Indicated for monotherapy in early PD as well as adjunctive therapy with levodopa  
• Very well tolerated  
• “Debatable” neuroprotective effect  
• Reactions with tyramine-rich foods and selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) no longer significant concerns |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rasagiline (Azilect)</td>
<td>0.5 mg, 1 mg</td>
<td>Insomnia, hallucinations, confusion, possible serotonin syndrome (when mixed with serotonin and noradrenaline reuptake inhibitor [SNRI], tricyclic antidepressant [TCA])</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Catechol O-methyltransferase (COMT) inhibitors | Entacapone (Comtan) | 200 mg | Orange urine, diarrhea, dyskinesia | • Effective to treat end-of-dose wearing-off effect  
• Must be used with levodopa/carbidopa  
• Uncommonly causes diarrhea |
| Tolcapone (Tasmar) | 100 mg, 200 mg | Orange urine, nausea, vomiting, abnormal liver function |
| Anticholinergic agents | Trihexyphenidyl (benzhexol, Artane) | 1 mg, 2 mg | Dry mouth, urinary retention, blurred vision, cognitive impairment, hallucination | • Useful for tremor  
• Limited effect on other parkinsonian motor symptoms  
• Not advisable in elderly in view of side effects of cognitive impairment and psychosis |
| Benztropine (Cogentin) | 0.5 mg | Dry mouth, urinary retention, blurred vision, cognitive impairment, hallucinations |
| N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) antagonist | Amantadine | 100 mg | Dizziness, dry mouth, livedo reticularis, leg edema, hallucinations, tachyphylaxis | • Useful for dyskinesia  
• Useful for mild, early PD |

*aIstradefylline, the first adenosine A2A antagonist, is now approved in some countries as an adjunctive treatment with levodopa to improve wearing-off symptoms. 
Figure 4.17
Mode of action of dopa-decarboxylase inhibitors, catechol O-methyltransferase (COMT) inhibitors, and monoamine oxidase B (MAO-B) inhibitors.

Table 4.17
Levodopa Versus Dopamine Agonist

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Levodopa Advantages</th>
<th>Dopamine Agonist Advantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• More efficacious with better symptomatic control than dopamine agonist</td>
<td>• Less likely to cause motor fluctuations, especially dyskinesias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Easier administration</td>
<td>• Generic equivalents now available at lower cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Quicker titration</td>
<td>• Brand name formulations may be taken once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Fewer side effects (eg, somnolence, pedal edema, impulse control disorder, weight gain)</td>
<td>• Less costly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Similarly, given the superiority of levodopa in providing motor improvement and its better tolerability profile (compared with dopamine agonists), it is best to use levodopa when the exact diagnosis of the parkinsonian disorder is in question (eg, when a Parkinson-plus syndrome is a consideration).

Table 4.18 outlines the treatment options for motor fluctuations in PD, and Tables 4.19 through 4.23 summarize the levels of efficacy of described treatments for motor complications of PD according to the same criteria presented above (for nonmotor complications of PD).

Advanced therapies in PD are typically referred to as nonoral therapies and are generally reserved for patients who have significant motor fluctuations despite “optimized” pharmacologic adjustments and titrations with available oral symptomatic agents (Table 4.24). The three most commonly used advanced therapies in PD are the following:

- Deep brain stimulation surgery (see also Chapter 16).
  - Several targets are currently approved in PD: STN, GPi, and ventral intermediate nucleus (VIM) of the thalamus.
- Levodopa/carbidopa intestinal gel infusion
  - Delivery of levodopa in liquid gel form through an ambulatory pump via a percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy tube that ends in the jejunum
  - Approved in most European countries and undergoing FDA evaluation in the United States
Table 4.18  
Treatment for Motor Complications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Motor Fluctuations(^a)</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Delayed “on” response    | • Take additional doses of short-acting levodopa  
• Liquid levodopa  
• Apomorphine injection |
| Early morning akinesia   | • Controlled-release levodopa at bedtime  
• Dispersible levodopa in the early morning  
• Apomorphine injection |
| End-of-dose wearing off\(^b\) | • Increase dosage frequency  
• Add long-acting levodopa  
• Add COMT inhibitors, dopamine agonists, or MAO-B inhibitors  
• Convert to carbidopa/levodopa/entacapone (Stalevo)  
• DBS |
| Unpredictable “on–off” effects | • Liquid levodopa  
• Apomorphine injection |
| Episodes of freezing     | • Physical therapy or occupational therapy |

**Dyskinesias**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Peak-dose dyskinesia | • Reduce previous dose of levodopa  
• Discontinue COMT inhibitors and MAO-B inhibitors  
• Add amantadine  
• Avoid controlled-release levodopa  
• Add or increase dopamine agonist  
• DBS |
| “Off dystonia”    | • Increase levodopa dose  
• Botulinum toxin  
• Baclofen (79)  
• Lithium (80) |
| Diphasic dyskinesia | • Increase levodopa dose  
• DBS |

**Abbreviations:** COMT, catechol O-methyltransferase; DBS, deep brain stimulation; MAO-B, monoamine oxidase B.  

\(^a\)Recent reports of intrajejunal levodopa/carbidopa intestinal gel in a double-blinded, double-dummy randomized clinical trial and a large, long-term, multicenter, prospective, open-label study have shown improvement of up to 4 hours in wearing off, without worsening of dyskinesias.  

\(^b\)Istradefylline, the first adenosine A2A antagonist, is now approved in some countries as an adjunctive treatment with levodopa to improve wearing-off symptoms; zonisamide has also been shown to improve wearing-off states in a randomized controlled trial.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonergot dopamine agonists</th>
<th>Prevention/ Delay of Clinical Progression</th>
<th>Symptomatic Monotherapy</th>
<th>Symptomatic Adjuvant to Levodopa</th>
<th>Prevention/ Delay of Motor Complications&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Treatment of Motor Complications&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Piribedil</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pramipexole</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Efficacious (F, D)</td>
<td>Efficacious (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Clinically useful (F, D)</td>
<td>Clinically useful (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pramipexole ER</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ropinirole</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F)</td>
<td>Efficacious (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Investigational (F)</td>
<td>Clinically useful (F)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Insufficient evidence (f, D) indicates that the evidence is insufficient for firm recommendations (F) but does not preclude its use (D).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dopamine Agonists</th>
<th>Prevention/ Delay of Clinical Progression</th>
<th>Symptomatic Monotherapy</th>
<th>Symptomatic Adjuvant to Levodopa</th>
<th>Prevention/ Delay of Motor Complicationsa</th>
<th>Treatment of Motor Complicationsa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ropinirole XL</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Likely efficacious</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Safety</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Efficacious (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Possibly useful</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Investigational (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Clinically useful (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotigotine patch</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
<td>Efficacious (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Safety</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Investigational (F)</td>
<td>Clinically useful (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Investigational (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apomorphine</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Efficacious (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Safety</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Investigational (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Investigational (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ergot dopamine agonists</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromocriptine</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Likely efficacious</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Likely efficacious (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Safety</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Possibly useful</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Possibly useful (F)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a* See Table 4.19 for full details.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Efficacy</th>
<th>Safety</th>
<th>Practice implications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cabergoline</td>
<td>Insufficient</td>
<td>Acceptable risk with specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>evidence</td>
<td></td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td></td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td></td>
<td>Clinically useful (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Likely efficacious (F)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Possibly useful (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dihydroergocryptine</td>
<td>Insufficient</td>
<td>Acceptable risk with specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>evidence</td>
<td></td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td></td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insufficient</td>
<td></td>
<td>(F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lisuride</td>
<td>Insufficient</td>
<td>Acceptable risk with specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>evidence</td>
<td></td>
<td>Possibly useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Likely efficacious</td>
<td></td>
<td>Likely efficacious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td></td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insufficient</td>
<td></td>
<td>(F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pergolide</td>
<td>Unlikely</td>
<td>Acceptable risk with specialized monitoring</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>efficacious</td>
<td></td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td></td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insufficient</td>
<td></td>
<td>Likely efficacious (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>efficacy</td>
<td></td>
<td>Likely efficacious (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td></td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aD, dyskinesia; F, motor fluctuations.

Table 4.20
Evidence on Levodopa in Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Levodopa</th>
<th>Prevention/ Delay of Clinical Progression</th>
<th>Symptomatic Monotherapy</th>
<th>Symptomatic Adjuvant to Levodopa</th>
<th>Prevention/Delay of Motor Complicationsa</th>
<th>Treatment of Motor Complicationsa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Standard formulation</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Non-efficacious (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Efficacious (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Not useful (F, D)</td>
<td>Clinically useful (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Investigational (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controlled-release formulation</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Non-efficacious (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Not useful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid-onset oral formulation</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infusion formulations</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
<td>Likely efficacious (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aD, dyskinesia; f, motor fluctuations.

**Table 4.21**
Evidence on COMT Inhibitors in Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMT Inhibitors</th>
<th>Prevention/Delay of Clinical Progression</th>
<th>Symptomatic Monotherapy</th>
<th>Symptomatic Adjuvant to Levodopa</th>
<th>Prevention/Delay of Motor Complications&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Treatment of Motor Complications&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Entacapone</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Non-efficacious (F, D)</td>
<td>Efficacious (F) Insufficient evidence (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Clinically useful (for subjects with motor complications)</td>
<td>Not useful (F, D)</td>
<td>Clinically useful (F) Investigational (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolcapone</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
<td>Efficacious (F) Insufficient evidence (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk with specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Possibly useful</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
<td>Possibly useful (F) Investigational (D)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviation:** COMT, catechol O-methyltransferase.

<sup>a</sup>D, dyskinesia; F, motor fluctuations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAO-B Inhibitors</th>
<th>Prevention/Delay of Clinical Progression</th>
<th>Symptomatic Monotherapy</th>
<th>Symptomatic Adjuvant to Levodopa</th>
<th>Prevention/Delay of Motor Complications&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Treatment of Motor Complications&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Selegiline</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F)</td>
<td>Non-efficacious (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational (F)</td>
<td>Not useful (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orally disintegrating selegiline</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rasagiline</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
<td>Efficacious (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Abbreviation: MAO-B, monoamine oxidase B.*

*<sup>a</sup>D, dyskinesia; F, motor fluctuations.*

### Table 4.23
Evidence on Anticholinergics, Amantadine, Clozapine, and Zonisamide in Parkinson’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drugs</th>
<th>Prevention/Delay of Clinical Progression</th>
<th>Symptomatic Monotherapy to Levodopa</th>
<th>Symptomatic Adjunct to Levodopa</th>
<th>Prevention/Delay of Motor Complications(^a)</th>
<th>Treatment of Motor Complications(^a)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anticholinergics</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Likely efficacious</td>
<td>Likely efficacious</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amantadine</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Likely efficacious</td>
<td>Likely efficacious</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Possibly useful</td>
<td>Possibly useful</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
<td>Investigational (F) Clinically useful (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clozapine</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk with specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
<td>Investigational (F) Possibly useful (D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zonisamide</td>
<td>Efficacy</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence</td>
<td>Efficacious</td>
<td>Insufficient evidence (F, D)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Acceptable risk without specialized monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice implications</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Investigational</td>
<td>Clinically useful</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
<td>Investigational (F, D)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)D, dyskinesia; F, motor fluctuations.

**Table 4.24**

Advanced Therapies in Parkinson's Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Therapy</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| DBS surgery                | • Proven longevity of efficacy of > 10 years in patients with advanced PD  
• Several targets (STN, GPi, VIM) depending on symptomatology and patient profile  
• Generally maintenance-free once device implanted  
• Current “gold standard” against which all other advanced therapies are compared, with the most impressive improvement in motor fluctuations  
• Most effective among patients with dyskinesia and medication-resistant tremors | • Patients must be cognitively intact, emotionally stable, and physically healthy (with the fewest comorbidities)  
• Most invasive (ie, brain surgery) of the advanced therapies in PD  
• Side effects potentially irreversible  
• May “disqualify” patient from future brain surgical interventions (eg, gene therapy, stem cells) |
| Levodopa/carbidopa intestinal gel infusion | • Less invasive than DBS  
• May be considered for patients who have mild to moderate cognitive impairment  
• May still be suitable for older, less physically robust patients with PD  
• Ability to convert to levodopa monotherapy | • Patient hooked to an external pump, which can interfere less with independence  
• Pump size and weight can be a disadvantage to some patients  
• More maintenance and social support needed  
• Gastrointestinal complications can occur with varying frequency |
| Subcutaneous apomorphine infusion | • Least invasive of all advanced therapies  
• Minimal maintenance  
• Device small, patients can be relatively independent  
• May also improve depression and anxiety | • Fewest randomized clinical trials or comparison studies with other advanced therapies  
• Some maintenance and social support needed  
• Less longevity of use in comparison with other advanced therapies |

*Abbreviations:* DBS, deep brain surgery; GPi, globus pallidus internus; STN, subthalamic nucleus; VIM, ventral intermediate nucleus.

- **Subcutaneous apomorphine infusion**
  - Continuous subcutaneous apomorphine infusion (similar to an insulin pump for diabetics)
  - Approved in most European countries and about to undergo regulatory clinical trials in the United States
REFERENCES


5

DYSTONIA

“Dystonia is a neurologic syndrome characterized by involuntary, sustained, patterned, and often repetitive muscle contractions of opposing muscles causing twisting movements or abnormal postures. Partly because of its rich expression and a variable course, dystonia is frequently not recognized or misdiagnosed.”¹

The prevalence of generalized primary torsion dystonia in Rochester, Minnesota, was reported to be 3.4 per 100,000 population, and that of focal dystonia to be 30 per 100,000.²

PHENOMENOLOGY OF DYSTONIC MOVEMENTS

- The main features of dystonia include the following:
  - The movements are of relatively long duration, whereas in chorea or myoclonus, the involuntary movements are brief.
  - Both the agonist and antagonist muscles of a body part simultaneously contract to result in twisting of the affected body part.
  - The same muscle groups are generally involved, whereas in chorea, the involuntary movements are random and involve different muscle groups.

- Other features include the following:
  - Primary dystonia almost always begins by affecting a single part of the body (focal dystonia) and then gradually generalizes; most often, the spread is to contiguous body parts.
  - The younger the age at onset, the more likely it is for the dystonia to spread (eg, a childhood onset with leg involvement usually eventually leads to generalized dystonia, whereas an adult onset with cranial or cervical involvement usually remains focal).³,⁴
  - Dystonia is almost always worsened by voluntary movement. Dystonic movements may be aggravated during voluntary movement and may
be termed \textit{action dystonia}. Abnormal dystonic movements that appear only during certain actions are termed \textit{task-specific dystonia}. An example is writer’s cramp.

- As the dystonia progresses, even nonspecific voluntary action can elicit dystonia; eventually, actions in other parts of the body can induce dystonic movements of the primarily affected body part, termed \textit{overflow dystonia}.

- Dystonia is usually worsened by fatigue and stress and is suppressed by sleep, hypnosis, or relaxation.

- A unique and intriguing feature of dystonia is that the movements can be suppressed by a tactile or proprioceptive “sensory trick” (\textit{geste antagoniste}); lightly touching (and sometimes simply the act of touching) the affected body part can often reduce the muscle contractions.

- Surprisingly, pain is not very common in dystonia except in cervical dystonia, in which up to 75% of patients experienced pain in one study.\(^5\)

- Dystonia can present with tremor (dystonic tremor) or myoclonus (dystonia–myoclonus). Dystonic tremor resulting from cervical dystonia can be distinguished from essential tremor because the dystonic tremor is usually less regular or rhythmic than essential tremor and is associated with a head tilt and chin deviation.

- Rarely, children and adolescents with primary or secondary dystonia can develop a sudden and marked increase in the severity of dystonia, termed \textit{dystonic storm}.

### Classification of Dystonia

- **By distribution**
  - \textit{Focal}: affects a single body part (eg, torticollis, writer’s cramp, blepharospasm, foot dystonia, lingual dystonia, spasmodic dysphonia).
  - \textit{Segmental}: affects one or more contiguous body parts (eg, Meige syndrome).
  - \textit{Multifocal}: involves two or more noncontiguous body parts.
  - \textit{Hemidystonia}: involves half of the body; usually associated with a structural lesion (eg, tumor in the contralateral putamen).
  - \textit{Generalized}: the entire body is affected.

- **By clinical features**
  - \textit{Continual}
- Primary (or idiopathic) dystonia
  - May be inherited or sporadic.
  - Can have an early onset (younger than 26 years of age) or a late onset 26 years and older.
  - Dystonias with an early onset tend to become severe and are more likely to spread to involve multiple parts of the body.
  - Dystonias with a later onset tend to remain focal.

- Secondary dystonia
  - Secondary dystonia may be generalized, segmental, focal or multifocal, and associated with other neurologic disorders.
  - Unilateral dystonia/hemidystonia is often symptomatic and usually results from a stroke, trauma, arteriovenous malformation, or tumor.

  - Fluctuating

- Paroxysmal dyskinesias can vary from chorea-ballism to the sustained contractions of dystonia. Paroxysmal is the term most commonly used for periodic choreoathetotic and dystonic involuntary movements, while episodic is most commonly used for periodic ataxic involuntary movements. Paroxysmal dyskinesias are generally classified into four types (Table 5.1):6

  - Paroxysmal kinesigenic dyskinesia (PKD)
    - Usually lasts for seconds to minutes; precipitated by sudden movement, startle, or hyperventilation; occurs many times a day; patients may experience a sensory “aura” prior to the attack.
    - The majority of cases are primary (familial with autosomal dominant inheritance or sporadic); causes of secondary PKD include multiple sclerosis, head injury, hypoxia, hypoparathyroidism, and basal ganglia and thalamic strokes.
    - Affecting PRRT2 (proline-rich transmembrane protein, which seems to manifest in embryonic neural tissue).
    - PKD may respond to anticonvulsants such as carbamazepine, especially when the paroxysmal attacks are brief; females may respond better than males.
Table 5.1
Summary of Features of Major Causes of Paroxysmal Dyskinesias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHARACTERISTICS</th>
<th>PKD</th>
<th>PNKD</th>
<th>PED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Male-to-female ratio</td>
<td>4:1</td>
<td>3:2</td>
<td>Unclear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age at onset</td>
<td>5–15 y (even 1–20 y; limits more lenient if positive family history)</td>
<td>&lt; 5 y</td>
<td>2–20 y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inheritance</td>
<td>AD, sporadic</td>
<td>AD, sporadic</td>
<td>AD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of attacks</td>
<td>&lt; 5 min, often &lt; 1 min</td>
<td>Several minutes to hours</td>
<td>5–30 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Very frequent: 100/d–1/mo</td>
<td>Occasional: 3/d–2/y</td>
<td>1/d–1/mo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asymmetry</td>
<td>Common</td>
<td>Less common</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ability to suppress attacks</td>
<td>Able</td>
<td>Able</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Precipitating factors</td>
<td>Identifiable triggers (eg, sudden movement, startle, hyperventilation, fatigue, stress)</td>
<td>Alcohol, caffeine, exercise, excitement</td>
<td>Prolonged exercise, stress, caffeine, fatigue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associated features</td>
<td>Dystonia, chorea, epilepsy; no pain or loss of consciousness</td>
<td>Chorea, dystonia, ataxia</td>
<td>Dystonia, chorea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment</td>
<td>Phenytoin, carbamazepine, barbiturates, acetazolamide</td>
<td>Clonazepam, oxazepam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: AD, autosomal dominant; PED, paroxysmal exertional dyskinesia; PKD, paroxysmal kinesigenic dyskinesia; PNKD, paroxysmal nonkinesigenic dyskinesia.


- Paroxysmal nonkinesigenic dyskinesia (PNKD)
  - Often consists of any combination of dystonic postures, chorea, athetosis, and ballism; may be unilateral or bilateral; longer duration and smaller frequency of attacks compared with PKD.
  - Precipitated by alcohol, coffee, tea, stress, or fatigue.
  - Cases can be primary (familial with autosomal dominant inheritance or sporadic) or secondary, caused by multiple sclerosis, hypoxia, encephalitis, metabolic causes, psycho-genic, and other conditions.
DysTonia

- Not sensitive to anticonvulsants.

  - Paroxysmal exertional dyskinesia
    - Attacks are briefer than those in PNKD, lasting 5 to 30 minutes; precipitated by prolonged exercise.
    - Most familial cases exhibit autosomal dominant inheritance.
    - May respond to anticonvulsant or antimuscarinic agents.

  - Paroxysmal hypnogenic dyskinesia
    - Attacks can be brief or prolonged.
    - Several cases may be due to supplementary motor or frontal lobe seizures.

Diurnal

- Aromatic acid decarboxylase deficiency (usually in infancy): axial hypotonia, athetosis, ocular convergence spasm, oculogyric crises, limb rigidity.

- GTP (guanosine triphosphate) cyclohydrolase I deficiency (DYT5): first step in tetrahydrobiopterin synthesis, childhood onset, may be diurnal, improves with low-dose levodopa, abnormal phenylalanine loading test.

- Other causes: side effect of levodopa therapy, acute dystonic reaction to neuroleptics, gastroesophageal reflux, oculogyric crisis (sudden, transient conjugate eye deviation).

By etiology

- Primary (idiopathic) dystonia: may be familial (Table 5.2) or sporadic. In the pure dystonic syndromes, dystonia is the main and only clinical sign (except for dystonic tremor).
  - Of the DYT types, 1, 2, 4, 6, 7, 13, 17, and 21 (shaded in gray in Table 5.2) are primary dystonias.

- Dystonia-plus: “nonneurodegenerative” conditions in which signs and symptoms other than dystonia, such as parkinsonism and myoclonus, are present; these are generally not neurodegenerative disorders and are better classified as neurochemical disorders.
  - Among the DYT types, those with dystonia plus parkinsonism include types 3, 5, 12, and 16, and those with dystonia plus myoclonus include types 11 and 15.
  - Dopa-responsive dystonia
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Chromosome/Gene</th>
<th>Inheritance</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DYT1</td>
<td>9q34 (torsin A); deletion of one pair of GAG triplets</td>
<td>AD, penetrance rate 30%-40%</td>
<td>1 per 2,000 in Ashkenazi Jewish population, commercial testing available, early onset (testing &lt; 26 y/o useful), limbs affected first, pure dystonia, MRI normal</td>
<td>Ozelieus et al, 19977</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT2</td>
<td></td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Described in Spanish gypsies</td>
<td>Khan et al, 20038</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT3</td>
<td>Xq13.1 (TAF1)</td>
<td>X-linked</td>
<td>“Lubag,” male Filipinos, dystonia–parkinsonism</td>
<td>Nolte et al, 20039</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT4</td>
<td>19p13.12-13 (TUBB4A)</td>
<td></td>
<td>“Whispering dysphonia” family</td>
<td>Parker, 198510 Hersheson et al, 201311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT5</td>
<td>14q22.1 (GCH1)</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Dopa-responsive dystonia</td>
<td>Ichinose et al, 199412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT6</td>
<td>8p21-q22 (THAP1)</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Mixed type, in Mennonite/Amish populations, childhood and adult onset, site of onset in arm/cranial region &gt; leg/neck, usually remains in upper body</td>
<td>Almasy et al, 199713</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT7</td>
<td>18p</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Adult-onset familial torticollis in a northwestern German family, occasional arm involvement</td>
<td>Leube et al, 199614</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT8</td>
<td>2q33-q35 (MR1)</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Paroxysmal nonkinesigenic dyskinesia</td>
<td>Fouad et al, 199615; Fink et al, 199616</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT9</td>
<td>1p21</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Paroxysmal dyskinesia with spasticity</td>
<td>Auburger et al, 199617</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT10</td>
<td>16p11.2-q12.1</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Paroxysmal kinesigenic dyskinesia</td>
<td>Tomita et al, 199918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT11</td>
<td>7q21-q23/ epsilon-sarcoglycan (SGCE)</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Myoclonus–dystonia syndrome, alcohol-responsive</td>
<td>Zimprich et al, 200119</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
### Table 5.2 (cont.)
Genetic Classification of the Dystonias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Chromosome/Gene</th>
<th>Inheritance</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DYT12</td>
<td>19q12-13.2</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Rapid-onset dystonia–parkinsonism</td>
<td>Kramer et al, 1999&lt;sup&gt;20&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT13</td>
<td>1p36.13-p36.32</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Adult onset, familial, cranial–cervical–brachial predominant, site of onset usually neck, remains segmental</td>
<td>Valente et al, 2001&lt;sup&gt;21&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT14</td>
<td>14q14</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Dopamine-responsive dystonia</td>
<td>Grotzsch et al, 2002&lt;sup&gt;22&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT15</td>
<td>18p11</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Myoclonus–dystonia syndrome</td>
<td>Grimes et al, 2002&lt;sup&gt;23&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT16</td>
<td>2q31.2</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Dystonia–parkinsonism in early adolescence, possibly with developmental delay, particularly speech</td>
<td>Camargos et al, 2008&lt;sup&gt;24&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT17</td>
<td>20p11.2-q13.12</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Cervical dystonia in adolescence, progressing to segmental or generalized with dysphonia</td>
<td>Chouery et al, 2008&lt;sup&gt;25&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT18</td>
<td>1p35-p31.3</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Paroxysmal exercise-induced dyskinesia with or without epilepsy or hemolytic anemia</td>
<td>Suls et al, 2008&lt;sup&gt;26&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT19</td>
<td>16q13-q22.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Episodic kinesigenic dyskinesia 2, probably synonymous with DYT10</td>
<td>Valente et al, 2000&lt;sup&gt;27&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT20</td>
<td>2q31</td>
<td></td>
<td>Paroxysmal nonkinesigenic dyskinesia 2</td>
<td>Spacey et al, 2006&lt;sup&gt;28&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT21</td>
<td>2q14.3-q21.3</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Late-onset torsion dystonia</td>
<td>Norgren et al, 2011&lt;sup&gt;29&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DYT22</td>
<td>11p14.2</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Craniocervical dystonia with prominent tremor</td>
<td>Charlesworth et al, 2012&lt;sup&gt;30&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** AD, autosomal dominant; AR, autosomal recessive.

**Note:** Dystonias within areas shaded in gray are “primary dystonias.”
- GTP cyclohydrolase I deficiency (DYT5): childhood onset (younger than 16 years), females more often affected than males, may be diurnal (worse at night), improves with low-dose levodopa, adult onset with parkinsonism or focal dystonia, abnormal phenylalanine loading test
- Autosomal recessive with mutation of tyrosine hydroxylase gene
- Other biopterin deficiencies
- May be mistaken for juvenile Parkinson’s disease or childhood primary torsion dystonia (Table 5.3)

- **Dopamine agonist–responsive dystonia**: aromatic acid decarboxylase deficiency, autosomal recessive mode of inheritance.
- **Rapid-onset dystonia parkinsonism**: autosomal dominant, ATP1A3 gene mutations on chromosome 19q13, adolescent or adult onset, dystonia generalizing over a few days to weeks with rostrocaudal progression and prominent bulbar features, parkinsonism but minimal or no tremor at onset, generally stabilizing within a few weeks with slow or no progression, little or no response to levodopa or dopamine agonists.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>DRD</th>
<th>Juvenile PD</th>
<th>Childhood PTD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gender predisposition</td>
<td>Female</td>
<td>Male</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dystonia presentation</td>
<td>Dystonia throughout course, occasionally improves with sleep; starts on the foot or leg; with bradykinesia</td>
<td>Dystonia at onset, may be diurnal and improves with sleep; starts on the foot; with parkinsonism</td>
<td>Dystonia throughout course, without diurnal pattern or sleep benefit; no signs of parkinsonism or bradykinesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment response</td>
<td>Low-dose carbidopa/levodopa (Sinemet) and anticholinergic drugs</td>
<td>Higher doses of carbidopa/levodopa (Sinemet); all other anti-PD agents, including anticholinergic drugs</td>
<td>Unlikely to respond to carbidopa/levodopa (Sinemet) but responds to anticholinergic drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course</td>
<td>Plateaus</td>
<td>Progressive</td>
<td>Usually progressive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- **Myoclonus–dystonia syndrome**: dystonia (most commonly cervical dystonia and writer’s cramp) with myoclonic jerks that responds to alcohol; autosomal dominant with incomplete penetrance and prominent maternal imprinting; mutations in epsilon-sarcoglycan gene (SGCE, DYT11) on chromosome 7q21/18p11 in majority of cases but some cases mutation-negative; upper part of body affected; childhood, adolescent, or adult onset; slowly progressive and tending to plateau; may be associated with other psychiatric features, such as substance abuse, anxiety, psychosis.\(^\text{34}\)

- **Secondary dystonia**: due to environmental insult (Table 5.4).\(^\text{35}\)

- **Heredodegenerative dystonias**: due to neurodegenerative diseases, usually inherited, usually not pure dystonia (Table 5.5).

- A feature of another neurological disease (eg, tics, paroxysmal dyskinesias, Parkinson’s disease, progressive supranuclear palsy).

- **Pseudodystonia**
  - Not true dystonia, but sustained abnormal postures are present
  - Examples include stiff-person syndrome, Isaacs syndrome, Satoyoshi syndrome, chronic inflammatory myopathy,\(^\text{36}\) Sandifer syndrome, bone disease, ligamentous absence, congenital muscular torticollis (commonly associated with a sternomastoid tumor), juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, seizures

- Psychogenic dystonia is suggested by the following:
  - Abrupt onset
  - Changing characteristics over time
  - Movements that do not “fit” with known patterns
  - Accompanied by other types of movements (eg, rhythmic shaking, bizarre gait, astasia–abasia, excessive startle or slowness)
  - Associated with other features (eg, false weakness and sensory complaints, psychiatric disorders, secondary gain, pending litigation, multiple somatizations)
  - Spontaneous remission
  - Improvement with distraction
  - Paroxysmal or intermittent nature
  - Twisting facial movements (especially side-to-side movements of mouth)
### Table 5.4
Symptomatic Causes of Dystonia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Causes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perinatal cerebral injury with kernicterus</td>
<td>Athetoid cerebral palsy, delayed-onset dystonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
<td>Viral encephalitis, Encephalitis lethargica, Reye syndrome, Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, HIV infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drugs</td>
<td>Levodopa and dopamine agonists, Dopamine receptor blockers, Fenfluramine, Anticonvulsants, Flecaainide, Ergots, Some calcium channel blockers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxins</td>
<td>Manganese, Carbon monoxide, Carbon disulfide, Cyanide, Methanol, Disulfiram, 3-Nitrorpropionic acid, Wasp sting toxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic</td>
<td>Hypoparathyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain/brainstem lesions</td>
<td>Paraneoplastic brainstem encephalitis, Primary antiphospholipid syndrome, Cerebrovascular accident, ischemic injury, Central pontine myelinolysis, Multiple sclerosis, Tumors, Arteriovenous malformation, Trauma, Surgery (thalamotomy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord lesions, syringomyelia</td>
<td>Lumbar stenosis, Trauma, Electrical injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peripheral lesions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5.5
Heredodegenerative Disorders With Dystonic Manifestations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inheritance</th>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X-linked</td>
<td>Lubag (X-linked dystonia–parkinsonism) (DYT3)</td>
<td>Male Filipinos living on Panay Island; young adult onset; cranial or generalized dystonia; parkinsonism can appear at onset or develop later; progressive, disabling</td>
<td>Clinical; gene test not currently commercially available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-linked</td>
<td>Deafness–dystonia syndrome (Mohr-Tranebjaerg syndrome)</td>
<td>Early deafness, optic atrophy, and dystonia appearing later in males (X-linked transmission)</td>
<td>Clinical; no commercially available genetic testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-linked</td>
<td>Pelizaeus-Merzbacher disease</td>
<td>Deficiency in myelin-specific lipids; partial to total absence of myelination; ataxia, nystagmus, hypotonia starting in early childhood; dystonia occurs later and progresses slowly; may present with spastic paraparesis in adulthood</td>
<td>Leukodystrophy findings on MRI; genetic testing commercially available (PLP gene sequencing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-linked</td>
<td>Rett syndrome</td>
<td>X-linked dominant (therefore occurs only in girls); characteristically combines psychomotor regression, loss of purposeful use of hands, stereotypy, ataxia, and apraxia of gait with microcephaly; dystonia and oculogyric crises in &gt;50%; patients normal at birth and start exhibiting symptoms after 2 years of age</td>
<td>Clinical; genetic testing commercially available (MECP2 gene sequencing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal dominant</td>
<td>Juvenile parkinsonism</td>
<td>May present with dystonia initially (see Table 5.2)</td>
<td>Clinical and genetic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal dominant with</td>
<td>Huntington’s disease</td>
<td>Usually presents with chorea but dystonia common; usually manifests between ages of 30 and 54 but can present at any age; progressive disorder with varying degrees of cognitive and psychiatric dysfunction</td>
<td>Genetic testing, IT15 gene CAG expansion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complete penetrance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

continued
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inheritance</th>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal dominant with incomplete penetrance</td>
<td>Machado-Joseph disease (SCA3)</td>
<td>Mainly affecting families descended from ancestors who lived in the Portuguese Azore Islands (but not exclusively); dystonia in about 20%; type 1, predominantly pyramidal–extrapyramidal signs; type 2, cerebellar plus pyramidal; type 3, cerebellar plus distal amyotrophy</td>
<td>Genetic testing, CAG expansion 14q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal dominant</td>
<td>Dentatorubro-pallidoluysian atrophy</td>
<td>Degeneration of cerebellar efferent and pallidoluysian systems; dystonia not usually prominent; adult onset: ataxia, choreoathetosis, dementia; juvenile onset: presents like progressive myoclonic epilepsy</td>
<td>Genetic testing, CAG expansion 21p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Other spinocerebellar ataxias</td>
<td>Because of great phenotypic variability, complete ataxia genetic screening profile recommended</td>
<td>Genetic testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td>Wilson’s disease</td>
<td>Can also present with tremor, dystonia, parkinsonism, or any other movement disorder, usually before age 50; abnormal metabolism of copper and linked to chromosome 13; damage results in copper accumulation (see Figure 5.2)</td>
<td>Kayser-Fleischer rings, ceruloplasmin gene defects on chromosome 13, liver biopsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td>Niemann-Pick type C disease</td>
<td>Dystonic lipidosis; sea-blue histiocytosis; in type C, no specific enzymatic deficit described; sphingomyelinase activity normal in most tissues; patients with later onset present with characteristic supranuclear gaze palsy, mental decline, gait disorder, ataxia, and dystonia</td>
<td>Defective cholesterol sterification/sphingomyelinase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
### Table 5.5 (cont.)
Heredodegenerative Disorders With Dystonic Manifestations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inheritance</th>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mostly autosomal</td>
<td>Juvenile neuronal ceroid lipofuscinosis</td>
<td>Marked by storage of lipopigments; infantile, late infantile, juvenile, and adult forms; juvenile form presents without visual failure and with myoclonic epilepsy, dementia, and behavioral and extrapyramidal signs, especially facial dyskinesias</td>
<td>Pathology (rectal biopsy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recessive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td>GM1 gangliosidosis</td>
<td>Characterized by visceromegaly, cognitive decline, dysmorphism, and a cherry red spot in macular region; types 1, 2, and 3 in children; type 3 presents at 2 to 27 years of age with variable manifestations, including ataxia, dystonia, and myopathy; in adults, GM1 characterized by dystonia and early-onset parkinsonism with prolonged survival</td>
<td>Beta-D-galactosidase deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td>GM2 gangliosidosis</td>
<td>Deficiency of lysosomal hexosaminidase; more frequent among Ashkenazi Jews from eastern Europe; infantile GM2 has aggressive course with spastic tetraparesis, seizures, and blindness and with dystonia later in course; in juvenile, chronic, and adult GM2, dystonia may be presenting feature (usually legs)</td>
<td>Hexosaminidase deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td>Metachromatic leukodystrophy</td>
<td>Deficiency in cerebroside sulfatase leading to sulfatide accumulation; may present with mental decline, behavioral dysfunction, and dystonia</td>
<td>Aryl sulfatase A deficiency</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 5.5 (cont.)

Heredodegenerative Disorders With Dystonic Manifestations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inheritance</th>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X-linked</td>
<td>Lesch-Nyhan syndrome</td>
<td>May present with generalized dystonia; onset in children with mental retardation, self-mutilation, hyperuricemia</td>
<td>Hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyltransferase deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td>Homocystinuria</td>
<td>May present in children with generalized dystonia, focal deficits, ectopia lentis, skeletal deformities, and mental retardation; neuroimaging may show focal ischemic lesions, sinus thrombosis</td>
<td>Amino acid chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td>Glutaric acidemia</td>
<td>Along with cerebral palsy, one of the leading causes of dystonia in first year of life; generalized dystonia with mental retardation</td>
<td>Glutaric acid in urine, glutaryl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td>Methylmalonic aciduria</td>
<td>Generalized dystonia in children with acute encephalopathy</td>
<td>Chromatography of organic acids; methylmalonic CoA mutase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td>Ataxia-telangiectasia</td>
<td>Generalized dystonia in children with ataxia and neuropathy; cerebellar atrophy on imaging</td>
<td>Clinical; low levels of immunoglobulin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td>Neurodegeneration with brain iron accumulation; pantothenate kinase–associated neurodegeneration</td>
<td>Formerly called Hallervorden-Spatz syndrome; characterized by iron deposition in pallidum; dystonia may be associated with tics and other movement disorders</td>
<td>Pathology; imaging showing pallidal T2 hypointensity (“eye of the tiger” sign)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal dominant and X-linked</td>
<td>Neuroacanthocytosis</td>
<td>Usually starts in third decade with orobuccolingual hyperkinesia, lip smacking, vocalizations, and even orolingual action dystonia leading to lip and tongue automutilation; 50% with seizures; most with polyneuropathy, distal amyotrophy, pes cavus</td>
<td>Acanthocytes in peripheral smear; Kell antigen determination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5.5 (cont.)
Heredodegenerative Disorders With Dystonic Manifestations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inheritance</th>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mitochondrial</td>
<td>Leigh disease</td>
<td>Generalized dystonia in children with hypotonia, ataxia, optic atrophy</td>
<td>Pyruvic acid and alanine levels, mitochondrial DNA mutations, cytochrome oxidase activity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 5.1
Treatment algorithm for generalized dystonia. (This treatment algorithm is not applicable to dystonia caused by treatable metabolic disorders).

Abbreviation: DBS, Deep Brain Stimulation Surgery

Focus on the etiology. Management can be difficult. Patients do not consistently respond to one type of therapy, and multiple strategies may be needed (Figure 5.1).
Oral medications (Table 5.6)

Chemodenervation: botulinum toxin, the product of an anaerobic bacterium, *Clostridium botulinum*, is purified and injected into the affected muscles to prevent the release of acetylcholine from nerve terminals to the neuromuscular junctions, thereby preventing muscle contraction.

- Four strains are available: type A (onabotulinumtoxinA/Botox, abobotulinumtoxinA/Dysport, incobotulinumtoxinA/Xeomin) and type B (rimabotulinumtoxinB/Myobloc).

- Injection sites
  - **Blepharospasm**
    - Start with very low doses (eg, 2.5 U of type A for each injection site).
    - Inject the upper orbicularis oculi muscle as close to the eyelid margin as possible for maximum efficacy and the fewest side effects.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication</th>
<th>Typical Starting Dose (mg/d)</th>
<th>Typical Therapeutic Dose (mg/d)</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carbidopa/levodopa</td>
<td>25/100</td>
<td>Up to 800</td>
<td>To be given 3 times per day; always try levodopa first, especially if young patient, to rule out dopa-responsive dystonia, which requires only low dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trihexyphenidyl</td>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>Up to 120</td>
<td>In divided doses; if increased very slowly, young patients able to tolerate high doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benztropine</td>
<td>0.5–1</td>
<td>Up to 8</td>
<td>Watch for anticholinergic side effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baclofen</td>
<td>5–10</td>
<td>Up to 120</td>
<td>GABA agonist; do not abruptly discontinue (risk for seizures)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clonazepam</td>
<td>0.5–1</td>
<td>Up to 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetrabenazine</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Up to 75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tizanidine</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Unlike baclofen, tizanidine carries minimal risk for seizures with abrupt discontinuation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Abbreviation:* GABA, gamma-aminobutyric acid.
- Avoid the middle upper eyelid area (where the levator palpebrae lies) to prevent ptosis.
- Use a 30-gauge, 0.5-in needle.

**Cervical dystonia**
- Sternocleidomastoid muscle: responsible for anterocollis and contralateral chin deviation
- Splenius capitis: responsible for retrocollis (the most common presentation of tardive dystonia) and ipsilateral chin deviation
- Trapezius: responsible for ipsilateral shoulder elevation
- Levator scapulae: responsible for ipsilateral shoulder elevation
- Scalene complex: responsible for ipsilateral head tilt
- Submentalis: responsible for anterocollis

○ Usual doses (Table 5.7)
- Inco-, ona-, and abobotulinumtoxinA come in various units/vials of powdered forms to be diluted with preservative-free normal saline.
- RimabotulinumtoxinB comes in premixed 2,500-/5,000-/10,000-U vials.
- In cervical dystonia, for which all four toxins are approved, the typical starting doses of each toxin are as follows:
  - OnabotulinumtoxinA (Botox): 120 to 240 U
  - IncobotulinumtoxinA (Xeomin): 120 to 240 U
  - AbobotulinumtoxinA (Dysport): 500 U
  - RimabotulinumtoxinB (Myobloc): 2,500 to 10,000 U

○ Botulinum toxin doses may need to be increased or decreased depending on certain factors (Table 5.8):
  - Treatment of Wilson’s disease (Figure 5.2)
    - Low-copper diet, with avoidance of foods having a high copper content (ie, >0.2 mg): shellfish, liver, pork, duck, lamb, avocados, dried beans, dried fruits, raisins, dates, prunes, bran, mushrooms, wheat germ, chocolate, and nuts.
    - Consider agents that deplete copper: penicillamine (1–2 g/d) with pyridoxine (50 mg/d), trientine (500 mg 2 times daily), tetrathiomolybdate (80–120 mg daily in 3 to 4 divided doses), and zinc (50 mg/d without food).
  - Dystonic emergencies
Table 5.7
Typical Doses of Botulinum Toxin Type A (Botox) and Type B (Myobloc)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Presentation</th>
<th>Muscle</th>
<th>Average Starting Dose (Botox)</th>
<th>Average Dose (Botox)</th>
<th>Starting Dose Range (Myobloc)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blepharospasm</strong></td>
<td>Orbicularis oculi</td>
<td>2.5–5 U per site</td>
<td>5–10 U per site</td>
<td>250–1,000 U per side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Procerus</td>
<td>2.5–5 U per site</td>
<td>2.5–10 U per site</td>
<td>250–500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hemifacial spasm</strong></td>
<td>Orbicularis oris</td>
<td>2.5 U per site</td>
<td>2.5–5 U per site</td>
<td>125–750 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Levator anguli oris</td>
<td>2.5–10 U</td>
<td>2.5–10 U</td>
<td>125–250 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Depressor anguli oris</td>
<td>2.5–10 U</td>
<td>2.5–10 U</td>
<td>125–250 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mentalis</td>
<td>2.5–5 U</td>
<td>2.5–10 U</td>
<td>125–250 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Platysma</td>
<td>2.5–5 U</td>
<td>2.5–15 U</td>
<td>500–2,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zygomaticus</td>
<td>2.5–5 U</td>
<td>2.5–10 U</td>
<td>125–500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jaw-closing dystonia</strong></td>
<td>Masseter</td>
<td>40 U per side</td>
<td>20–60 U per side</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U per side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Temporalis</td>
<td>20 U per side</td>
<td>20–40 U per side</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U per side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jaw-opening dystonia</strong></td>
<td>Pterygoids</td>
<td>5–20 U</td>
<td>5–20 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U per side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Digastric</td>
<td>5–15 U</td>
<td>5–15 U</td>
<td>250–750 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cervical dystonia</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Anterocollis</td>
<td>Sternocleidomastoid</td>
<td>40 U</td>
<td>40–70 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Retrocollis</td>
<td>Splenius capitis</td>
<td>60 U</td>
<td>50–150 U</td>
<td>1,000–5,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trapezius</td>
<td>60 U</td>
<td>50–150 U</td>
<td>1,000–5,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Torticollis (chin deviation)</td>
<td>Ipsilateral splenius capitis</td>
<td>60 U</td>
<td>50–150 U</td>
<td>1,000–5,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contralateral sternocleidomastoid</td>
<td>40 U</td>
<td>40–70 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Laterocollis (head tilt)</td>
<td>Scalenese</td>
<td>30 U</td>
<td>15–50 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Shoulder elevation</td>
<td>Levator scapulae</td>
<td>80 U</td>
<td>25–100 U</td>
<td>1,000–4,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trapezius</td>
<td>60 U</td>
<td>50–150 U</td>
<td>1,000–5,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shoulder abduction</strong></td>
<td>Deltoid</td>
<td>50 U</td>
<td>50–150 U</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

continued
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Presentation</th>
<th>Muscle</th>
<th>Average Starting Dose (Botox)</th>
<th>Average Dose (Botox)</th>
<th>Starting Dose Range (Myobloc)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shoulder adduction</td>
<td>Pectoralis complex</td>
<td>100 U</td>
<td>75–150 U</td>
<td>2,500–5,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latissimus dorsi</td>
<td>100 U</td>
<td>50–150 U</td>
<td>2,500–5,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elbow extension</td>
<td>Triceps</td>
<td>50 U</td>
<td>25–100 U</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elbow flexion</td>
<td>Biceps</td>
<td>100 U</td>
<td>50–150 U</td>
<td>2,500–5,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brachialis</td>
<td>60 U</td>
<td>40–100 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brachioradialis</td>
<td>60 U</td>
<td>40–100 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wrist flexion</td>
<td>Flexor carpi radialisb</td>
<td>50 U</td>
<td>25–100 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flexor carpi ulnarisb</td>
<td>40 U</td>
<td>20–70 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wrist extension</td>
<td>Extensor carpi radialis</td>
<td>20 U</td>
<td>25–100 U</td>
<td>500–1,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Extensor carpi ulnarisb</td>
<td>20 U</td>
<td>20–40 U</td>
<td>500–1,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wrist pronation</td>
<td>Pronator quadratusb</td>
<td>25 U</td>
<td>10–50 U</td>
<td>1,000–2,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pronator teresb</td>
<td>40 U</td>
<td>25–75 U</td>
<td>1,000–2,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wrist supination</td>
<td>Supinator</td>
<td>20 U</td>
<td>15–45 U</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finger flexion</td>
<td>Flexor digitorum profundusb</td>
<td>20 U</td>
<td>20–40 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flexor digitorum superficialsb</td>
<td>20 U</td>
<td>20–40 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fisting</td>
<td>Flexor carpi radialisb</td>
<td>50 U</td>
<td>25–100 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flexor carpi ulnarisb</td>
<td>40 U</td>
<td>20–70 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Extensor carpi ulnaris</td>
<td>20 U</td>
<td>10–30 U</td>
<td>500–1,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Extensor carpi radialis</td>
<td>20 U</td>
<td>15–40 U</td>
<td>500–1,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flexor digitorum profundusb</td>
<td>20 U</td>
<td>20–40 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flexor digitorum superficialsb</td>
<td>20 U</td>
<td>20–40 U</td>
<td>1,000–3,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flexor pollicis longusb</td>
<td>20 U</td>
<td>10–30 U</td>
<td>1,000–2,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Opponens pollicisb</td>
<td>5 U</td>
<td>2.5–10 U</td>
<td>500–1,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finger extension</td>
<td>Extensor indicis</td>
<td>5 U</td>
<td>2.5–10 U</td>
<td>500–1,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thumb extension</td>
<td>Extensor pollicis longus</td>
<td>5 U</td>
<td>2.5–10 U</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thumb in palm</td>
<td>Flexor pollicis longusb</td>
<td>20 U</td>
<td>10–30 U</td>
<td>1,000–2,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Opponens pollicisb</td>
<td>5 U</td>
<td>2.5–10 U</td>
<td>500–1,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adductor pollicisb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>500–2,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>Muscle</td>
<td>Average Starting Dose (Botox)</td>
<td>Average Dose (Botox)</td>
<td>Starting Dose Range (Myobloc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thumb protrusion</td>
<td>Extensor pollicis longus</td>
<td>5 U</td>
<td>2.5–10 U</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abductor pollicis longus</td>
<td>5 U</td>
<td>5–15 U</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little finger abduction</td>
<td>Abductor digitii minimi</td>
<td>5 U</td>
<td>2.5–10 U</td>
<td>125–250 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hip flexion</td>
<td>Iliopsoas</td>
<td>150 U</td>
<td>50–200 U</td>
<td>3,000–7,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rectus femoris</td>
<td>100 U</td>
<td>75–200 U</td>
<td>2,500–5,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hip adduction</td>
<td>Adductor magnus/longus/brevis</td>
<td>200 U</td>
<td>75–300 U</td>
<td>5,000–10,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knee flexion</td>
<td>Semimembranosus</td>
<td>100 U</td>
<td>50–200 U</td>
<td>2,500–7,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Semitendinosus</td>
<td>100 U</td>
<td>50–200 U</td>
<td>2,500–7,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Biceps femoris</td>
<td>100 U</td>
<td>50–200 U</td>
<td>2,500–7,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gastrocnemius</td>
<td>150 U</td>
<td>50–200 U</td>
<td>3,000–7,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knee extension</td>
<td>Rectus femoris</td>
<td>100 U</td>
<td>75–200 U</td>
<td>3,000–7,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vastus lateralis</td>
<td>100 U</td>
<td>50–200 U</td>
<td>3,000–7,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vastus medialis</td>
<td>100 U</td>
<td>50–200 U</td>
<td>3,000–7,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plantar flexion</td>
<td>Gastrocnemius</td>
<td>100 U</td>
<td>50–200 U</td>
<td>3,000–7,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(equinus)</td>
<td>Soleus</td>
<td>100 U</td>
<td>50–200 U</td>
<td>2,500–5,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot inversion</td>
<td>Tibialis posterior</td>
<td>75 U</td>
<td>50–150 U</td>
<td>3,000–7,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot dorsiflexion</td>
<td>Tibialis anterior</td>
<td>75 U</td>
<td>50–150 U</td>
<td>2,500–5,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toe flexion</td>
<td>Flexor digitorum longus</td>
<td>75 U</td>
<td>50–100 U</td>
<td>2,500–5,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flexor digitorum brevis</td>
<td>25 U</td>
<td>20–40 U</td>
<td>2,500–5,000 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flexor hallucis longus</td>
<td>50 U</td>
<td>25–75 U</td>
<td>1,500–3,500 U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Striatal toe</td>
<td>Extensor hallucis longus</td>
<td>50 U</td>
<td>20–100 U</td>
<td>2,000–4,000 U</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aHemifacial spasm* is not considered a form of dystonia, even though it can cause blepharospasm and facial spasms. It is consistently unilateral, defined as a neurological disorder manifested by involuntary, recurrent twitches of the eyelids; the perinasal and perioral muscles; and the zygomaticus, platysma, and other muscles of only one side of the face. It is usually due to a compression or irritation of the facial nerve by an aberrant artery or abnormal vasculature around the brainstem. Although microvascular decompression of the facial nerve has a high success rate, it also has risks, such as permanent facial paralysis, stroke, and deafness, so that botulinum toxin injection is the treatment of choice.

bStart with lower doses if injecting these muscles for upper limb dystonia; doses provided are recommended for upper limb spasticity.
### Table 5.8
Dose Modifiers to Consider for the Injection of Botulinum Toxin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Factor</th>
<th>Starting Dose: Low End of the Range</th>
<th>Starting Dose: High End of the Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Patient weight</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient age</td>
<td>Elderly</td>
<td>Young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscle bulk</td>
<td>Very small</td>
<td>Very large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of regions injected</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Few</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severity of disease/dystonic spasms</td>
<td>Mild</td>
<td>Severe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concern for weakness</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Results of previous therapy</td>
<td>Too much weakness</td>
<td>Inadequate denervation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Likely duration of therapy</td>
<td>Chronic</td>
<td>Acute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Wilson’s disease

**Autosomal recessive; consider & test for any**

**Presentation**
- Hepatic symptoms are the most frequent presentation (hepatosplenomegaly, elevated liver function, hepatitis)
- 40–50% may present neurologically
- Tremor is the most common; asymmetric, resting, postural or kinetic
- Dysarthria, drooling, fixed grimace-smile (mimic sardonicus)
- Corebellar dysfunction and gait abnormalities
- Behavioral / psychiatric abnormalities

**Diagnostic test**
- Slit-lamp showing Kayser-Fleischer rings due to the deposition of copper in the Descemet’s membrane
- Serum ceruloplasmin
- High 24-hour urine copper (collected in copper free jugs)
- Hepatic copper content via liver biopsy (> 250 μg/g dry tissue)
- Serum copper levels are of little value

**Treatment**
- Avoid foods high in copper such as shellfish, liver, nuts, chocolate
- Inhibition of intestinal copper absorption:
  a) Potassium
  b) Zinc
  c) Tetraethio
- Chelation therapy:
  a) Penicillamine
  b) Trientine
  c) British antilewisite (EAL)
- Liver transplantation

**Figure 5.2**
The presentation, diagnosis, and treatment of Wilson’s disease.
Status dystonicus (“dystonic storm,” “dystonic crisis”) is a rare, potentially life-threatening neurological emergency that can complicate the course of an otherwise slowly progressive or static dystonic condition.

- Differentiate from neuroleptic malignant syndrome.
- Manage aggressively in an intensive care setting because metabolic disturbances (hyperpyrexia, renal failure from rhabdomyolysis, dehydration), respiratory failure, and aspiration pneumonia from muscle spasms that interfere with bulbar function are common etiologies of morbidity and mortality.
- Consider the “Marsden cocktail”—a combination of tetrabenazine (dopamine-depleting drug), haloperidol, or pimozide (D2 receptor antagonist) and trihexyphenidyl (anticholinergic agent).
- If needed, intravenous sedation and ventilation, with or without paralytic agents, can be administered.

Neuroleptic malignant syndrome occurs with the addition of a neuroleptic drug.

- A similar presentation is seen with the abrupt withdrawal of levodopa and other dopamine replacement therapy in Parkinson’s disease (eg, the old practice of “levodopa holiday”).
- The clinical presentation may be slow in onset, with fever, muscle stiffness, fluctuating consciousness, and autonomic instability.
- The creatine phosphokinase level is often elevated because of muscle injury (and can be used to monitor the disease course).
- Other differential diagnoses include serotonin syndrome, dystonic storm, anticholinergic poisoning, and malignant hyperthermia.
- First, and most importantly, stop the neuroleptic drug or reinstitute levodopa!

- Supportive care includes lowering the body temperature, administering intravenous fluids, preventing deep vein thrombosis, and monitoring blood pressure and electrolytes.
- Consider bromocriptine (2.5 mg 3 times daily), dantrolene (1–10 mg/kg intravenously, followed by maintenance at 600 mg/d), benzodiazepines.

Surgical therapies

- Peripheral surgical procedures
  - Rhizotomy
  - Ramisectomy
● Myotomy
● Intrathecal baclofen

○ Central nervous system ablative procedures (please see Chapter 16)
  ● Pallidotomy
  ● Thalamotomy

○ Deep brain stimulation (please see Chapter 16)
  ● Globus pallidus internus (GPi) stimulation
  ● Ventrolateral thalamic stimulation

■ Other therapies
  ○ Limb immobilization, focal splinting
  ○ Support groups
  ○ Physical therapy (gait, transfers, strengthening, stretching)
  ○ Occupational therapy (assistive devices to regain some independence)

REFERENCES

DEFINITIONS

- Phenomenology: chorea, athetosis, and ballism generally represent a continuum of involuntary, hyperkinetic movement disorders.

- **Chorea** consists of involuntary, continuous, abrupt, rapid, brief, unsustained, irregular movements that flow randomly from one body part to another.

- **Ballism** is a form of chorea characterized by forceful, flinging, high-amplitude, coarse movements; ballism and chorea are often interrelated and may occur in the same patient.

- **Athetosis** is a slow form of chorea and consists of writhing movements resembling dystonia. However, unlike in dystonia, the movements are not sustained, patterned, or painful.

- Other related disorders that can be confused with chorea, athetosis, or ballism are the following:
  - **Akathisia**: a feeling of inner restlessness and anxiety associated with an inability to sit or stand still.
  - **Restless legs syndrome**: a symptom complex of discomfort or unusual sensation in the legs (or arms) that is characteristically relieved by movement of the affected limb(s).

CHOREA

- Clinical features
  - Patients can partially/temporarily volitionally suppress chorea.
  - **Parakinesia** is the act of “camouflaging” some of the choreiform movements by incorporating them into semipurposeful activities.
Motor impersistence is the inability to maintain voluntary contraction, manifested on examination with “milkmaid grip” (impersistence of grasp) and inability to maintain tongue protrusion.

The examiner must differentiate chorea from pseudochaoreoathetosis (chorea or athetosis secondary to a defect of proprioception).

Chorea may be a manifestation of a primary neurologic disorder (eg, Huntington’s disease) or may be secondary to a systemic, toxic, or metabolic disorder.

Differential diagnosis: see Figure 6.1

Inherited forms of chorea
- **Huntington’s disease** (HD) is an autosomal dominant neurodegenerative disorder (each child of an affected parent has a 50% chance of developing the disease) caused by an abnormal expansion of the *IT15* gene on chromosome 4, which encodes the protein huntington. This protein is ubiquitously expressed in persons with Huntington’s disease, but its function is still poorly understood. 

- Most people develop HD between 30 and 54 years of age, but HD can manifest in individuals as young as 4 years or as old as 80 years of age.

- CAG repeats: normal, 10 to 35; indeterminate, 36 to 39; definite, 40 or more.

- There is a triad of motor, cognitive, and psychiatric symptoms.

- Motor symptoms: impairment related to involuntary (chorea) and voluntary movements, reduced manual dexterity, dysarthria, dysphagia, gait instability, and falls are common; parkinsonism and dystonia can be seen in patients with an earlier onset of disease.
  - In the treatment of chorea, nondrug interventions should be considered first as patients are often not bothered by mild chorea and exhibit no functional impairment related to choreiform movements.
  - Pharmacologic treatment for chorea may worsen other aspects of movement, cognition, or mood.
  - Chorea may diminish over time, so that the need for treatment is reduced.

- Cognitive symptoms: initially characterized by loss of speed and flexibility of thinking (executive dysfunction); later, dysfunction becomes more global.

- Psychiatric symptoms: depression (most common), irritability, agitation, impulsivity, mania, obsessive–compulsive disorder, anxiety, apathy, and social withdrawal can all emerge in the same patient.
  - Ask about substance abuse.
  - Always ask about suicidality, particularly given that impulsivity is common.

- Diagnosis: based on the clinical presentation, family history, and genetic testing (genetic counseling required for asymptomatic individuals with a family history before genetic testing).
  - Always disclose the results of genetic testing in person and with a relative, caregiver, or friend of the patient present.
- Prenatal testing (as early as 8–10 weeks) is possible.
- Nonpharmacologic approaches are important in addressing functional difficulties and behavioral dysfunction in HD (Table 6.1).
  - Huntington-like syndromes (Table 6.2)\(^3\)–\(^{10}\)
  - Inherited “paroxysmal” disorders that can include choreiform movement (see Table 6.3 for clinical overview)\(^{11}\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 6.1</th>
<th>Helpful Tips for Managing Functional and Behavioral Problems in Patients With Huntington’s Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Problem</strong></td>
<td><strong>Solution</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysphagia</td>
<td>The patient should eat slowly and without distractions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Foods should be of appropriate size and texture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eating may need to be supervised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All caregivers should know the Heimlich maneuver.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication</td>
<td>Allow the patient enough time to answer questions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Offer cues and prompts to get the patient started.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Break down tasks or instructions into small steps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use visual cues to demonstrate what you are saying.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alphabet boards, yes–no cards, and other devices can be used for patients in more advanced stages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive dysfunction</td>
<td>Rely on routines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Make lists that help organize tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prompt each activity with external cues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Offer limited choices instead of open-ended questions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use short sentences with one or two pieces of information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impulsivity</td>
<td>A predictable daily schedule can reduce confusion, fear, and outbursts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It is possible that a behavior is a response to something else that needs your attention (eg, pain).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Let the patient know that yelling is not the best way to get your attention.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hurtful and embarrassing statements are generally not intentional. Be sensitive to the patient’s efforts to apologize or show remorse afterward.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do not badger the person after the fact.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
### Table 6.1 (cont.)
Helpful Tips for Managing Functional and Behavioral Problems in Patients With Huntington’s Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Irritability and outbursts</td>
<td>Try to keep the environment as calm as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Speak in a low, soft voice. Keep your hand gestures quiet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Avoid confrontations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Redirect the patient away from the source of anger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Respond diplomatically, acknowledging the patient’s irritability as a symptom of frustration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


- **Sporadic forms of chorea**
  - *Essential chorea* is adult-onset, nonprogressive chorea in a patient without a family history or other symptoms suggestive of HD and without evidence of striatal atrophy. “Senile chorea” is essential chorea with onset after age 60 without dementia or psychiatric disturbance.
  - *Infectious chorea* has been described as an acute choreiform manifestation of bacterial meningitis, encephalitis, tuberculous meningitis, aseptic meningitis, HIV encephalitis, or toxoplasmosis.
  - *Postinfectious/autoimmune chorea*
    - **Sydenham disease** (St. Vitus’ dance, the eponym sometimes used by patients) is related to infection with group A streptococci, and the chorea may be delayed for 6 months or longer. The distribution is often asymmetric. The chorea can be accompanied by arthritis, carditis, irritability, emotional lability, obsessive–compulsive disorder, or anxiety. Serologic testing reveals elevated titers of anti-streptolysin O (ASO).
    - **Systemic lupus erythematosus** is associated with anti-phospholipid syndrome (characterized by migraine, chorea, and venous and/or arterial thrombosis). The patient tests positive for anti-phospholipid antibodies and anti-cardiolipin antibodies. Other features are spontaneous abortions, arthralgias, Raynaud phenomenon, digital infarctions, transient ischemic attacks, and cardiovascular accidents.
    - **Chorea gravidarum** is often associated with a recurrence of systemic lupus erythematosus or with a prior history of Sydenham chorea but can also be associated with other metabolic or systemic disturbances.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>MOI</th>
<th>Chr</th>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Triplet Repeat</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Huntington’s disease–</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>20p</td>
<td>HDL1</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td>Similar to HD-like 2 but seizures can occur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like 1&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huntington’s disease–</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>16q23</td>
<td>HDL2</td>
<td>CTG/CAG</td>
<td>Junctophilin 3</td>
<td>Onset in the fourth decade; chorea, dystonia, parkinsonism, dysarthria,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like 2&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hyperreflexia, gait abnormality, psychiatric symptoms, weight loss,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dementia; acanthocytosis common; predominantly African Americans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huntington’s disease–</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>4p15.3</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Begins at 3 to 4 years of age; chorea, ataxia, gait disorder, spasticity,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>seizures, mutism, dementia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroacanthocytosis&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>AR, some AD or sporadic</td>
<td>9q21-22</td>
<td>CHAC</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Chorein</td>
<td>After HD, most common hereditary chorea; begins third to fourth decade;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lip and tongue biting, orolingual dystonia, motor and phonic tics,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>generalized chorea, parkinsonism, vertical ophthalmoparesis, seizures,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cognitive and personality changes, dysphagia, dysarthria, amyotrophy,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>areflexia, axonal neuropathy, elevated creatine phosphokinase and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>acanthocytes on peripheral smear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McLeod syndrome&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>X-linked recessive</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>XK</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>XK</td>
<td>Form of neuroacanthocytosis; depression, bipolar and personality disorders,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>chorea, vocalizations, seizures, hemolysis, liver disease, high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>creatine kinase; usually no lip biting or dysphagia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition</td>
<td>Inheritance</td>
<td>Chromosome</td>
<td>Gene</td>
<td>Repeat Expansion</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benign hereditary chorea</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>14q13.1-21.1</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Nonprogressive chorea with childhood onset; slight motor delay, ataxia; may be self-limiting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA2</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>12q23-24.1</td>
<td>SCA2</td>
<td>CAG</td>
<td>Ataxin 2; commercially available gene testing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA3</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>14q32.1</td>
<td>SCA3</td>
<td>CAG</td>
<td>Ataxin 3; Machado-Joseph disease; Azorean descent; parkinsonism, dystonia, chorea, neuropathy, ataxia; commercially available testing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA17</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>6q27</td>
<td>SCA17</td>
<td>CAG</td>
<td>TATA-binding protein; commercially available gene testing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRPLA</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>CAG</td>
<td>JNK</td>
<td>Japan &gt; Europe, Africa, southern United States (Haw River syndrome); starts in fourth decade; combination of choreoathetosis, dystonia, tremor, parkinsonism, dementia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurodegeneration with brain iron accumulation (NBIA) type 1 (formerly Hallervorden-Spatz disease)</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>20p112.3-13</td>
<td>PANK2</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Pantothenate kinase; Childhood onset, progressive rigidity, dystonia, choreoathetosis, spasticity, optic nerve atrophy, dementia, acanthocytosis; “eye of the tiger” MRI abnormality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson’s disease</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>13q14.3</td>
<td>ATB7B</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Cu ATPase; May present with tremor, parkinsonism, dystonia, chorea, usually before age 50. Please see also Chapters 2 and 5.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** AD, autosomal dominant; AR, autosomal recessive; Chr, chromosome; DRPLA, dentatorubropallidoluysian atrophy; HD, Huntington’s disease; JNK, c-Jun N-terminal kinase; MOI, mode of inheritance; SCA, spinocerebellar ataxia.
Post-pump chorea is a sequela of cardiac surgery (for congenital heart disease) in children that is associated with a prolonged time on the pump, deep hypothermia, and circulatory arrest. It may respond to dopamine receptor blockers.

Polycythemia vera is more common in men, but chorea is seen more often in women in association with facial erythrosis or splenomegaly. The onset is usually after 50 years, and the chorea is often bilateral and symmetric. Treatment is reduction of hyperviscosity and administration of antidopaminergic drugs.

Vascular chorea is described in congophilic angiopathy and other stroke disorders.

Paraneoplastic chorea is mostly associated with anti-CRMP-5 or anti-CV2 antibodies (commercially testing available).
**Table 6.4**
Drugs Reported to Cause Tardive Syndromes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amoxapine (tricyclic antidepressant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinnarizine (calcium channel blocker)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorpromazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorprothixene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clebopride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clozapine (?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Droperidol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flunarizine (calcium channel blocker)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluphenazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loxapine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesoridazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metoclopramide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molindone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olanzapine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pimozide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prochlorperazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quetiapine (?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remoxipride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risperidone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulpiride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thioridazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiothixene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiapride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trifluoperazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triflupromazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veralipride</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Drug-induced chorea**
  - Most often occurs acutely in association with dopaminergic/antidopaminergic drugs and anticonvulsants.
  - Tardive chorea is stereotypic oral–buccal–lingual dyskinesia after chronic exposure to dopamine receptor blockers (Table 6.4).

- **Metabolic etiologies:** often asymmetric chorea
  - Hypo- and hypercalcemia
  - Hypo- and hyperglycemia
  - Hyperthyroidism
  - Hypo- and hypernatremia
  - Hypomagnesemia
- Hypo- and hyperparathyroidism
- Liver disease (acquired hepatocerebral degeneration)

- Multiple sclerosis: Although rarely, any movement disorder can be associated with multiple sclerosis. Chorea and/or tremor may be the most common movement disorder presentation. Ballism has also been reported.

- Workup: see Figure 6.2.

- Treatment (Table 6.5)\textsuperscript{13,14}
  
  - The first step is always to identify the underlying etiology and correct it if possible (eg, metabolic cause).
  
  - Dopamine receptor blockers (eg, typical and atypical antipsychotic agents) or dopamine-depleting agents (eg, tetrabenazine or reserpine) can be used if the chorea is disrupting quality of life.\textsuperscript{15}

![Figure 6.2](image)

**Chorea workup**

- **If inherited etiology suspected, consider:**
  - Gene testing for Huntington’s disease, spinocerebellar ataxia, dentatopallidolysian atrophy
  - Peripheral smear, electroencephalogram, creatine phosphokinase levels (neuromyopathy)
  - MRI Brain (‘eye of the tiger’ sign; NBIA-1)
  - Serum ceruloplasmin, 24-hour urine copper, slit-lamp examination (Wilson’s disease)
  - EMG, muscle biopsy (mitochondrial disorder)

- **If sporadic etiology suspected, consider:**
  - Neonatal history (eg, CP); drug history / toxicology screen (acute and tardive chorea)
  - ASO titer (Sydenham’s chorea)
  - CBC with platelets (polycythemia vera)
  - Autoimmune/Antiphospholipid panel (APA syndrome)
  - TFT’s, complete chemistries (metabolic etiologies)
  - MRI who contrast (structural etiologies)
  - Consider: paraneoplastic panel, HIV testing

*Figure 6.2*

Initial workup for a patient presenting with chorea.
# Table 6.5
Medications Used to Suppress Chorea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Medication</th>
<th>Starting Dose</th>
<th>Maximum Dose</th>
<th>Adverse Events</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dopamine receptor blockers</td>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
<td>0.5–1 mg/d</td>
<td>6–8 mg/d</td>
<td>Sedation, parkinsonism, dystonia, akathisia, hypotension, constipation, dry mouth, weight gain, confusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fluphenazine</td>
<td>0.5–1 mg/d</td>
<td>6–8 mg/d</td>
<td>Same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Risperidone</td>
<td>0.5–1 mg/d</td>
<td>6 mg/d</td>
<td>Same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thiothixene</td>
<td>1–2 mg/d</td>
<td>6 mg/d</td>
<td>Same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thioridazine</td>
<td>10 mg/d</td>
<td>100 mg/d</td>
<td>Same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clozapine</td>
<td>12.5 mg/d</td>
<td>600 mg/d</td>
<td>Parkinsonism avoided but rare agranulocytosis; weekly monitoring of white cell count required for first 6 months, then every 2 weeks thereafter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Quetiapine</td>
<td>25 mg/d</td>
<td>800 mg/d</td>
<td>Less parkinsonism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benzodiazepines</td>
<td>Clonazepam</td>
<td>0.5 mg/d</td>
<td>4 mg/d</td>
<td>Sedation, ataxia, apathy, withdrawal seizures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diazepam</td>
<td>1.25 mg/d</td>
<td>20 mg/d</td>
<td>Same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMDA receptor antagonist</td>
<td>Amantadine</td>
<td>100 mg/d</td>
<td>400 mg/d</td>
<td>Hallucinations, confusion, leg swelling, livedo reticularis, anticholinergic effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dopamine-depleting agents</td>
<td>Reserpine</td>
<td>0.1 mg/d</td>
<td>3 mg/d</td>
<td>Hypotension, sedation, parkinsonism, depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tetrabenazine</td>
<td>2.5 mg/d</td>
<td>100 mg/d</td>
<td>Hypotension (less), parkinsonism, depression</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Abbreviation: NMDA, N-methyl-d-aspartate.*
○ Benzodiazepines, valproic acid, amantadine, levetiracetam, and riluzole have also been reported to mitigate chorea.

○ Anticoagulation, immunosuppressants, and plasmapheresis have been used with variable success in autoimmune choreas; consider steroids.

○ Consider stereotactic surgery for severe and disabling cases of chorea or ballism (see Chapter 16 for details).¹⁶

○ Tardive dyskinesia

  • The severity of the tardive syndrome and the absolute need for neuroleptic therapy often dictate the treatment approach for this group of disorders.

  • Continuing to use drugs known to cause tardive phenomena is not the best approach, and increasing the dose is often a temporary solution at best.

  • Because tardive dyskinesia (TD) remits in a majority of patients if they are kept off dopamine receptor blockers, it is best to avoid any antipsychotic drug. When this is not possible, as is often the case, clozapine is best but can be logistically difficult to use (requirement for frequent white blood cell counts).

  • To suppress mild TD, low doses of a benzodiazepine or vitamin E, in addition to a switch to clozapine or quetiapine, may be helpful.

  • For moderate to severe TD, dopamine-depleting drugs, such as tetrabenazine, may be the most effective agents.

  • Only as a last resort, to treat persistent, disabling, and treatment-resistant TD, should neuroleptics be resumed in the absence of active psychosis.

**BALLISM**

Damage to the subthalamic nucleus and the pallidal–subthalamic pathways is posited to play a critical role; other structures have been implicated/described (thalamus).

- **Etiology**

  ○ When caused by a hemorrhagic or ischemic stroke, ballism is often preceded by hemiparesis.

  ○ It is also described in anterior parietal stroke.

  ○ Less common causes are abscess, arteriovenous malformation, cerebral trauma, hyperosmotic hyperglycemia, multiple sclerosis, tumor, basal ganglia strokes or calcification, encephalitis, vasculitis.
Prognosis and treatment
- The prognosis for spontaneous remission is often good.
- Dopamine receptor blockers are most frequently used to treat movements when they are functionally impairing.
- Dopamine-depleting agents may be considered.
- Valproic acid and clonazepam have been reported to mitigate ballism.
- For violent, treatment-refractory ballism, ventrolateral thalamotomy has been described.

ATHETOSIS
Chorea often evolves into athetosis and vice versa, and they can coexist (choreoathetosis).
- Most often accompanies cerebral palsy; can be seen in errors of metabolism, including acidurias, lipidoses, and Lesch-Nyhan syndrome.
- Treatment: usually does not respond to therapy; try levodopa first (to rule out dopa-responsive dystonia, particularly when the patient is less than 40 years old and onset predominantly in lower extremity), then anticholinergic drugs (similar to treatment algorithm for dystonia).

AKATHISIA AND RESTLESS LEGS SYNDROME
- Akathisia is characterized by a feeling of inner restlessness and anxiety that is associated with an inability to sit or stand still.
  - Patients subjectively describe feeling fidgety and nervous, which is often objectively manifested by complex stereotyped movements.
  - Subjectively, the most common complaint is the inability to keep the legs still, but patients can also describe a vague inner tension, emotional unease, or anxiety.
  - Objectively, patients are seen rocking from foot to foot, walking in place, shifting weight while sitting, and occasionally grunting, moaning, and/or rocking the trunk.
  - Depending on the timing of its appearance, akathisia may be subclassified as acute or chronic.
    - Chronic akathisia is further subdivided into akathisia occurring early in the course of neuroleptic therapy but persisting (acute persistent akathisia) and akathisia associated with long-term therapy (tardive akathisia).
It is often difficult to distinguish between these two subtypes because of imprecise information about the onset of akathisia relative to the initiation of neuroleptic treatment.

- Tardive akathisia and tardive dystonia are the most distressing and disabling of the tardive syndromes. Therefore, the offending dopamine receptor blocker should be stopped if possible.
- Anticholinergic drugs are often ineffective. Unlike in acute akathisia, beta-blockers do not work in tardive akathisia.
- Reports on opiates are conflicting.
- Dopamine-depleting agents may be considered.
- Electroconvulsive therapy may be effective for intractable, functionally impairing akathisia.

Restless legs syndrome (RLS) is a common sensorimotor disorder characterized by discomfort or unusual sensation in the legs (or arms) that is characteristically relieved by movement of the affected limb(s).

- Recent studies suggest a prevalence between 3% and 15% in the general population. The prevalence is higher in women and increases with age.
- The updated standardized clinical criteria for the diagnosis of RLS by the International Restless Legs Syndrome Study Group\(^\text{17}\) are as follows:
  - Desire to move the limbs (with or without paresthesia), and the arms may be involved.
  - Urge to move or the unpleasant sensation improves with activity, and symptoms are worse with rest or inactivity.
  - The urge to move or the unpleasant sensations are partially or totally relieved with movement.
  - The symptoms have a circadian variation, occurring most often in the evening or at night when the patient lies down.
- There are two distinct types of RLS: primary (idiopathic) and secondary.
  - The majority of individuals with primary RLS have a positive family history; primary RLS has a high concordance in monozygotic twins; an autosomal dominant mode of inheritance has been proposed.
  - Secondary RLS is often associated with iron deficiency anemia, pregnancy, end-stage renal disease, or medications such as antidepressants and dopamine blockers.
- Possible mechanisms of pathophysiology in primary RLS include abnormal iron metabolism and functional alterations in central dopaminergic neurotransmitter systems.
Nonpharmacologic treatment of RLS includes improved sleep hygiene, avoidance of alcohol and caffeine, and moderate exercise daily.

- The treatment of secondary RLS includes discontinuing the offending medications and correcting the iron deficiency, in addition to initiating medication.\textsuperscript{18}

- Dopaminergic medications have the greatest efficacy in RLS.

- All medications used to treat RLS can cause augmentation (ie, the occurrence of more severe symptoms that develop earlier in the day), rebound (ie, recurrence of symptoms in the early morning hours), and/or tolerance. Dopamine agonists are less likely to cause augmentation, but tolerance may develop rapidly.

- Gabapentin is second-line therapy for those unable to tolerate dopaminergic agents.

- Opioids or clonidine may be tried as third-line therapy, and benzodiazepines may provide relief.

### Painful legs and moving toes (PLMT)

- The motor component of this syndrome is usually confined to the toes but may involve proximal parts of the legs as well.

- Movements are continuous and stereotyped. Flexion–extension or adduction–abduction of the toes is characteristic.

- PLMT often disappears with sleep and is relieved by rest and hot or cold water.

- Sensory symptoms range from mild to excruciatingly painful.

- There is no subjective desire or urge to move, distinguishing this syndrome from akathisia and RLS.

- PLMT may be associated with peripheral neuropathy or radiculopathy.

### REFERENCES


Myoclonus

Description

- Sudden, brief, shocklike, involuntary movements result from brief contractions (or lapse in contractions) of a muscle or group of muscles.\(^1\)
- When the movement results from a contraction of muscles, it is also termed positive myoclonus.
- The movement is called negative myoclonus when it results from a transient loss of muscle contraction.
- Friedreich first described myoclonus as a separate entity in a case report in 1881, but it was in 1883 that Lowenfeld used the term myoclonus for the first time.
- In 1903, Lundborg proposed a classification scheme for myoclonus: symptomatic, essential, and familial.
- Lindenmulder described the first family with essential myoclonus and drew attention to its occurrence in nondegenerative conditions without metabolic derangements or epilepsy.\(^2\)

Phenomenology and Differential Diagnosis

- Although myoclonus is quite distinctive in its presentation with “sudden shocklike movements,” it may sometimes still be confused with other movement disorders, such as tics, chorea, dystonia, and tremor. It then becomes important to make sure that the phenomenology is consistent with myoclonus (Table 7.1).

Clinical Approach

- There is no single best way to approach a patient with myoclonus.
- Here is a suggested sequence to follow (Figures 7.1–7.3).
### Table 7.1
Clinical Presentation of Myoclonus Compared With Other Hyperkinetic Movement Disorders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tics</th>
<th>Myoclonus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not interfere with motor acts</td>
<td>May interfere with motor acts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can be voluntarily suppressed</td>
<td>Cannot be suppressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preceded by an internal urge and followed by relief</td>
<td>No urge or relief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Often disappear during sleep</td>
<td>May continue in sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereotyped and repetitive</td>
<td>May be random or localized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slower than myoclonus</td>
<td>Faster than tics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chorea</th>
<th>Myoclonus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Not stimulus-sensitive</td>
<td>May be stimulus-sensitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movements in constant flow, randomly distributed over body and in time</td>
<td>No sequential movement of body parts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With motor impersistence (fly catcher tongue, milkmaid grip)</td>
<td>No motor impersistence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow or impaired Luria three-step test</td>
<td>Normal Luria test (unless associated with encephalopathy/dementia)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dystonia</th>
<th>Myoclonus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prolonged muscle spasms with twisting and posturing</td>
<td>Sudden brief contraction of muscles that may move a joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May have sensory trick</td>
<td>No sensory trick</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Postural/action tremor</th>
<th>Myoclonus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rhythmic</td>
<td>May be rhythmic or arrhythmic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency usually slower</td>
<td>Usually faster</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fasciculations</th>
<th>Myoclonus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Usually do not move a joint</td>
<td>May or may not move a joint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Classification

- Myoclonus may be classified in several ways: according to distribution, clinical presentation, pathophysiology, or etiology (Table 7.2).
- Identifying myoclonus by its distribution and/or type may assist in localizing the pathology (Table 7.3A, B).
After determining the distribution of myoclonus, look for clues to possible underlying pathology (Table 7.4A–C).

**SPECIFIC ETIOLOGIES OF MYOCLONUS**

- Myoclonus with ataxia and epilepsy
- Drug-induced myoclonus
  - Myoclonus secondary to underlying conditions accounts for 72% of cases (Figure 7.4).³
  - A detailed drug history with identification of all current and recent medications is imperative. Drug-induced myoclonus is especially common in hospitalized patients (Table 7.5).⁴
Figure 7.2
Specific questions to ask during the historical assessment of a patient with myoclonus.
Figure 7.3
Things to look for when examining a patient with myoclonus.

Table 7.2
Methods of Classifying Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distribution</th>
<th>Clinical Presentation</th>
<th>Pathophysiology</th>
<th>Etiology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Focal</td>
<td>Spontaneous</td>
<td>Cortical</td>
<td>Physiologic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segmental</td>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Focal</td>
<td>Essential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axial</td>
<td>Reflex</td>
<td>Multifocal</td>
<td>Epileptic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifocal</td>
<td>Rhythmic</td>
<td>Generalized</td>
<td>Focal damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized</td>
<td>Irregular</td>
<td>Epilepsia partialis continua (EPC)</td>
<td>Symptomatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td>Storage diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Basal ganglia degeneration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cerebellar degeneration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dementias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Viral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>encephalopathies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Metabolic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>encephalopathies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Toxic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>encephalopathies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hypoxia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 7.3A
Clinical Description of Myoclonus According to Distribution Suggesting Location of Pathology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distribution</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Location of Pathology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Focal/Segmental</td>
<td>Confined to a particular region of the body</td>
<td>Peripheral nerve, root, plexus, spinal cord, brainstem, or cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axial</td>
<td>Flexion of neck, trunk, and hips; abduction of arms</td>
<td>Brainstem or spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifocal</td>
<td>Different parts of the body, not necessarily at the same time</td>
<td>Sensory motor cortex or brainstem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generalized</td>
<td>Whole body affected in a single jerk</td>
<td>Sensory motor cortex or brainstem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Table 7.3B
Clinical Characteristics of Myoclonus and Their Importance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Myoclonus</th>
<th>Clinical Description</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spontaneous</td>
<td>• May be unpredictable or occur at specific times</td>
<td>• Early morning myoclonus in juvenile myoclonic epilepsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• May be focal, multifocal, or generalized</td>
<td>• Hypnic jerks when falling asleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Palatal myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>• During active muscle contraction, posture, and movement</td>
<td>• Lance Adams syndrome (posthypoxic myoclonus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Is the most debilitating myoclonus, interferes with gross voluntary movements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• May be multifocal or generalized &gt; focal/segmented</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflex</td>
<td>• May be focal or generalized, proximal &gt; distal muscles and flexors &gt; active than extensors</td>
<td>• Brainstem reflex reticular myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• May look like a tremor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Stimulus may be somesthetic, visual, or auditory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Somesthetic: tap the face (mentalis zone) for generalized reflex myoclonus, tendon reflex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
### Table 7.3B (cont.)
#### Clinical Characteristics of Myoclonus and Their Importance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Myoclonus</th>
<th>Clinical Description</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rhythmic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Focal or segmental</td>
<td>• Spinal myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Always spontaneous</td>
<td>• Palatal myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Usually slow (1–4 Hz)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Persists in sleep (ask bed partner)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Usually due to focal lesion of spinal cord or brainstem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Always during action/posture</td>
<td>• Asterixis in hepatic encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Sudden, transient loss of muscle tone in an actively contracting muscle</td>
<td>• “Bouncy legs” in Lance Adams syndrome causing falls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 7.4A
#### Possible Etiologies of Focal Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location of Pathology</th>
<th>Type of Myoclonus</th>
<th>Clinical Characteristics</th>
<th>Examples of Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Peripheral nerve, plexus, or root | Spinal segmental myoclonus | • Usually arrhythmic  
• Not stimulus-sensitive | Trauma, tumors, radiation |
| Spinal cord           |                   | • In muscles innervated by adjacent spinal segments  
• Rhythmic (0.5–3 Hz)  
• Persists in sleep  
• Usually not stimulus-sensitive | Multiple sclerosis, inflammatory myelitis, trauma, tumor, vascular lesion |

*continued*
### Table 7.4A (cont.)
Possible Etiologies of Focal Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location of Pathology</th>
<th>Type of Myoclonus</th>
<th>Clinical Characteristics</th>
<th>Examples of Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Brainstem             | Essential palatal myoclonus | • Ear click (tensor veli palatini opens eustachian tube and pulls roof of soft palate)  
• Stops during sleep  
• No hypertrophic olivary degeneration (HOD) | Usually younger patients |
|                       | Symptomatic palatal myoclonus | • No click (levator veli palatini pulls back of soft palate)  
• May have pendular vertical nystagmus and even facial, intercostal, and diaphragmatic contractions with palatal myoclonus  
• Continues in sleep  
• Ipsilateral cerebellar dysfunction and contralateral HoD | Encephalitis, stroke, trauma, tumor, degenerative disease |
| Cortex                | Epilepsia partialis continua (EPC) | • Usually rhythmic | Stroke, subarachnoid hemorrhage, trauma, tumor, encephalitis, hepatic encephalopathy |

### Table 7.4B
Possible Etiologies of Axial Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location of Pathology</th>
<th>Type of Myoclonus</th>
<th>Clinical Characteristics</th>
<th>Examples of Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Brainstem (brainstem reticular myoclonus) | Reticular reflex | • Generalized axial myoclonic jerks  
• Stimulus sensitivity greatest over limbs  
• Spontaneous jerks common | • Hypoxia/anoxia  
• Metabolic syndromes like uremia, drugs  
• Brainstem encephalitis:  
• Multiple sclerosis, viral infection, sarcoidosis, paraneoplastic syndrome |
### Table 7.4B (cont.)
Possible Etiologies of Axial Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location of Pathology</th>
<th>Type of Myoclonus</th>
<th>Clinical Characteristics</th>
<th>Examples of Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Hyperekplexia (exaggerated startle) | blink, facial contortion, neck and trunk flexion, arm abduction and flexion  
• Fall to the ground with possible injury  
• Does not habituate  
• Spontaneous jerks not prominent | Inherited (autosomal dominant)  
• Local pathology  
• Jumping Frenchmen of Maine syndrome  
• Hysterical jumps | |
| Spinal cord | Propriospinal myoclonus | Truncal flexion most prominent movement  
• Spontaneous or stimulus-induced  
• Worse in supine position and sleep-wake transition  
• Nonrhythmic  
• Midthoracic generator with slow spread up and down the cord | Idiopathic, trauma, psychogenic | |

### Table 7.4C
Possible Etiologies of Multifocal and Generalized Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location of Pathology</th>
<th>Type of Myoclonus</th>
<th>Clinical Characteristics</th>
<th>Examples of Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Sensorimotor cortex  
  • Usually distal, presents more as flexion than as extension movements  
  • Typically stimulus-sensitive | Epileptic myoclonus | Brief myoclonic, atonic, or tonic seizures  
• May be positive or negative myoclonus | Infantile spasms  
• Lennox-Gastaut syndrome  
• Cryptogenic and juvenile myoclonic epilepsy | |
| Progressive myoclonic epilepsy | Severe myoclonus (spontaneous, action- and stimulus-sensitive) | Lafora body disease (EPM2)  
• Neuronal ceroid lipofuscinosis (Batten disease) | |
## Table 7.4C (cont.)
Possible Etiologies of Multifocal and Generalized Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location of Pathology</th>
<th>Type of Myoclonus</th>
<th>Clinical Characteristics</th>
<th>Examples of Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Severe generalized tonic-clonic seizures</td>
<td>• Progressive neurological decline (dementia and ataxia)</td>
<td>• Unverricht-Lundborg disease (EPM1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Mitochondrial encephalopathies (myoclonic epilepsy with ragged red fibers)</td>
<td>• Sialidosis (cherry red spot myoclonus syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• AMRF syndrome</td>
<td>• In an adult, consider DRPLA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive myoclonic ataxia</td>
<td>Like progressive myoclonic epilepsy but</td>
<td>• Dementia mild/absent</td>
<td>• All of the above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Ramsay Hunt syndrome)</td>
<td>seizures mild/absent</td>
<td>• Myoclonus and ataxia are the major problems</td>
<td>• Spino cerebellar degenerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Rare causes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>o Celiac disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>o Whipple disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>o DRPLA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>o Gaucher disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>o Neuroaxonal dystrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>o Biotin-responsive encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-anoxic myoclonus</td>
<td>Spontaneous, action-induced, stimulus-</td>
<td>• Myoclonus periodic at long intervals</td>
<td>• Anesthetic accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Lance Adams syndrome)</td>
<td>sensitive on recovery from coma</td>
<td>• “Hung up” jerk</td>
<td>• Cardiac arrest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Respiratory failure in asthma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brainstem</td>
<td>Opsoclonus: continuous, arrhythmic,</td>
<td>• Opsoclonus: palate, pharynx, larynx, diaphragm, trunk, and limbs</td>
<td>• Acute encephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>large saccades in multiple directions</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Post-infectious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Myoclonus: palate, pharynx, larynx,</td>
<td></td>
<td>• SSPE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>diaphragm, trunk, and limbs</td>
<td></td>
<td>• CJD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Children (6–18 y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>o Neuroblastoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>o Autoimmune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Adults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>o Paraneoplastic (breast CA, large-cell lung CA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brainstem encephalitis</td>
<td>Subacute onset of features</td>
<td>• Ataxia, dysarthria, diplopia, nystagmus, ophthalmoplegia, opsoclonus, deafness, and</td>
<td>• Infectious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>myoclonus</td>
<td>• Para-infectious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Paraneoplastic (cancers of the ovary and lung)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 7.4C (cont.)
Possible Etiologies of Multifocal and Generalized Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location of Pathology</th>
<th>Type of Myoclonus</th>
<th>Clinical Characteristics</th>
<th>Examples of Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Various causes</td>
<td>Myoclonus with dementia</td>
<td>• CBD: stimulus-sensitive with short latency</td>
<td>• CJD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• AD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• HE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• CBD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifocal myoclonus</td>
<td>Multifocal myoclonus without dementia</td>
<td>• Nonprogressive course</td>
<td>• Essential myoclonus (autosomal dominant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or epilepsy</td>
<td>• Multifocal myoclonus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• No cognitive deficits, seizures, or ataxia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• EEG normal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** AD, Alzheimer disease; AMRF, action myoclonus-renal failure; CA, carcinoma; CBD, corticobasal degeneration; CJD, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease; DRPLA, dentatorubropallidoluysian atrophy; EEG, electroencephalography; EPM, epilepsy, progressive myoclonic; HE, hepatic encephalopathy; SSPE, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis.

- Inherited disorders presenting with myoclonus (Table 7.6A–C)\(^5\)
- Essential myoclonus
  - Essential myoclonus can be hereditary or sporadic (Figure 7.5).
- Opsoclonus-myoclonus-ataxia syndrome (Table 7.7)\(^3,6–11\)
- Palatal myoclonus (Figure 7.6)
- Myoclonus in neurodegenerative extrapyramidal disorders (Figure 7.7)
- Physiologic myoclonus
  - This occurs as the body’s physiologic response to certain external or internal triggers in otherwise healthy individuals and includes hiccups (singultus), hypnic jerks that are abundant in the facial and distal limb muscles, and physiologic startle.
  - These symptoms do not usually need to be treated.
- Orthostatic myoclonus (OM)
  - A relatively recent observation of myoclonus that occurs on standing\(^12,13\) and in subjects who may or may not have neurodegenerative conditions like Parkinson’s disease (PD). It may be even more common than orthostatic tremor.\(^14\)
  - The most frequent symptom was unexplained unsteadiness in a series of patients referred for gait imbalance and tested. OM was diagnosed in 17.2% of the patients.\(^14\)
  - The most frequent comorbid neurological condition was parkinsonism.\(^14\)
Asterixis (negative myoclonus)

- First described in 1949 by Adams and Foley in hepatic encephalopathy as rhythmic movements of the fingers and occasionally of the arms, legs, and face at 3 to 5 Hz on active maintenance of posture. The term \textit{asterixis} was coined by the same investigators in 1953 when they identified that this movement follows pauses of 200 to 500 msec. The term \textit{negative myoclonus} was coined by Shahani and Young in 1976.
### Table 7.5
Drugs and Toxins Associated With Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psychiatric medications</td>
<td>Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs)</td>
<td>Encephalopathy with myoclonus; EEG changes may be confused with those of Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monoamine oxidase Inhibitors (MAOIs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lithium</td>
<td>Multifocal cortical action myoclonus with normal EEG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Long-term exposure to neuroleptics</td>
<td>Tardive myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anesthetics</td>
<td>Fentanyl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Propofol</td>
<td>Transient cortical reflex myoclonus; treatment unnecessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-infectious agents</td>
<td>Mefloquine</td>
<td>Multifocal myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gatifloxacin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiepileptic drugs</td>
<td>Lamotrigine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gabapentin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac medications</td>
<td>Calcium channel blockers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carvedilol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narcotics</td>
<td>Morphine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrast media</td>
<td>Intravenous iodinated contrast</td>
<td>Spinal myoclonus may indicate underlying spinal cord lesion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug withdrawal</td>
<td>Benzodiazepines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Propranolol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other neurological medications</td>
<td>Levodopa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amantadine</td>
<td>Cortical myoclonus with EEG changes in one patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxins</td>
<td>Bismuth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dichlorodiphenyl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dichloroethane (DDT)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heavy metals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glue sniffing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gasoline sniffing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Toxic cooking oil in Spain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Abbreviation: EEG, electroencephalography.*
### Table 7.6A
Causes of Myoclonus With Autosomal Dominant Inheritance and Key Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Inheritance and Chromosome</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Age at Onset</th>
<th>Major Clinical Features</th>
<th>Helpful Investigations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Essential myoclonus</td>
<td>• Autosomal dominant, variable penetrance • 7q.18</td>
<td>Epsilon-sarcoglycan</td>
<td>Typically &lt; 20 y</td>
<td>• Myoclonus in arms and axial musculature &lt;br&gt;• Worse with action &lt;br&gt;• Marked improvement with alcohol &lt;br&gt;• Benign course &lt;br&gt;• May have dystonia (myoclonus dystonia)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperekplexia</td>
<td>• Autosomal dominant</td>
<td>Inhibitory glycine receptor, glycine transporter 2</td>
<td>Infancy to adulthood</td>
<td>• Patients jump in response to sound and fall to the ground, injuring themselves &lt;br&gt;• No loss of consciousness</td>
<td>• Classic history with family members &lt;br&gt;• Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRPLA</td>
<td>• Autosomal dominant • 12</td>
<td>Atrophin 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Spino cerebellar ataxia &lt;br&gt;• Myoclonus, presumed cortical (uncommon, but causes PMA picture when present) &lt;br&gt;• Epilepsy, chorea, ataxia, parkinsonism, psychosis, and dementia</td>
<td>• History and examination &lt;br&gt;• Genetic testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial nocturnal faciomandibular myoclonus</td>
<td>Autosomal dominant</td>
<td>Recurrent tongue biting during sleep</td>
<td>Typical history</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Only in NREM sleep</td>
<td>Polysomnography</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>May be associated with bruxism and PLMS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No seizures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Familial adult myoclonic epilepsy (FAME)/cortical tremor/benign autosomal dominant familial myoclonic epilepsy (BADFME)</th>
<th>Autosomal dominant</th>
<th>Adult-onset tremor before seizures</th>
<th>Clinical (adult-onset myoclonus, then epilepsy)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8q(5)</td>
<td>Action myoclonus (may worsen with age)</td>
<td>Family history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2p</td>
<td>Generalized seizures</td>
<td>Electrophysiology (cortical reflex myoclonus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5p</td>
<td>Good response to antiepileptic drugs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Clinical anticipation in some families</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Abbreviations: DRPLA, dentatorubropallidoluysian atrophy; PLMS, periodic limb movements of sleep; PMA, progressive myoclonic ataxia.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Inheritance and Chromosome</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Age at Onset</th>
<th>Major Clinical Features</th>
<th>Helpful Investigations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sialidoses I, II</td>
<td>Autosomal recessive 6p</td>
<td>Lysosomal sialidase</td>
<td>8–30 y</td>
<td>• Cherry red spot on retina</td>
<td>• Alpha-N-acetyl neuraminidase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GM2 gangliosidosis</td>
<td>Autosomal recessive 5q</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Dysmorphic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lafora body disease</td>
<td>Autosomal recessive 6q NHLRC1 (EPM2B)</td>
<td>Tyrosine phosphatase (PTP) Laforin (EPM2A)</td>
<td>11–18 y</td>
<td>• Childhood onset: behavioral change, dementia, occipital seizures, and myoclonus</td>
<td>• EEG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Late onset: benign</td>
<td>• Lafora bodies (skin, liver, and brain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unverricht-Lundborg</td>
<td>Autosomal recessive 21q</td>
<td>Cystatin-B</td>
<td>6–15 y</td>
<td>• Myoclonus: severe</td>
<td>• Clinical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Dementia: absent/mild</td>
<td>• EEG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMRF syndrome</td>
<td>Autosomal recessive SCARB2/LIMP2 gene mutation</td>
<td></td>
<td>17–26 y</td>
<td>• Starts with tremor, then action myoclonus; infrequent generalized seizures and cerebellar signs</td>
<td>• History</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Possible CMP and PNP</td>
<td>• Proteinuria and renal failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Invariably progresses to renal failure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Ceroid lipofuscinosis (Batten disease) | Autosomal recessive | Late infantile, 2–4 y | • Severe seizures with rapid regression and macular degeneration  
• Dead by 6–10 y | • EEG, ERG, VER, EM of skin, muscle, rectum, or brain |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1p | Palmitoyl protein thioesterase | Juvenile, 4–10 y | • Visual failure from macular degeneration  
• Seizures, dementia  
• Dead by 15–25 y |  |
| 11p | Tripeptidyl peptidase 1 | Adult | • Behavioral changes and dementia |  |
| 13q | CLN5 gene | | |  |
| 16p | CLN3 gene | | |  |

**Abbreviations:** CMP, cardiomyopathy; EEG, electroencephalography; EM, electron microscopy; EPM, epilepsy, progressive myoclonic; ERG, electroretinography; PNP, peripheral neuropathy; VER, visual evoked responses.
Table 7.6C
Causes of Myoclonus With Autosomal Recessive Inheritance and Key Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Inheritance and Chromosome</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Age at Onset</th>
<th>Major Clinical Features</th>
<th>Helpful Investigations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Myoclonic epilepsy with ragged red fibers (MERRF)</td>
<td>Mitochondrial DNA</td>
<td>Mitochondrial DNA</td>
<td>5–42 y</td>
<td>Short stature Deafness</td>
<td>Blood and cerebrospinal fluid lactate Muscle biopsy (ragged red fibers) DNA test</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Essential Myoclonus
- Myoclonus most prominent or only clinical finding
- Usually mild disability from myoclonus
- Myoclonus usually very responsive to alcohol (may cause addiction)
- Progression is slow or absent
- Cognition is normal
- Consistent with a normal lifespan

Figure 7.5
Sporadic versus hereditary essential myoclonus.

- Negative myoclonus may be classified according to its origin (cortical or subcortical), as epileptic or nonepileptic, or according to the presence or absence of rhythmicity (Figure 7.8).\textsuperscript{18–20}
Table 7.7
Opsoclonus-Myoclonus-Ataxia Syndrome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposed diagnostic criteria (at least three of four)</th>
<th>Opsoclonus</th>
<th>Myoclonus</th>
<th>Ataxia</th>
<th>Behavioral changes</th>
<th>Age factor</th>
<th>Associations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Opsoclonus**                                      | • Spontaneous, conjugate, involuntary, multidirectional, chaotic eye movements  
• Persist in fixation, smooth pursuit, and convergence  
• Persist in sleep and eye closure  
• Large amplitude and high frequency (10–15 Hz): visual blurring and oscillopsia  
• Differentiate from nystagmus (a saccade takes eye away from target, not slow movement) and ocular flutter (back-to-back saccades confined to horizontal plane while multidirectional in opsoclonus)  
• May be absent or delayed in atypical cases | • Multifocal  
• Stimulus-sensitive, provoked by action  
• Exacerbated by crying, excitement, and stress  
• May have polyminimyoclonus  
• May persist in sleep | • May be severe enough to impair sitting and ambulation  
• Ataxia may be markedly asymmetric in atypical cases | • Irritability and sleep disturbances  
• Particularly prominent in children | **Children** | • Usually start with ataxia, followed by irritability  
• 40%–50% of all cases related to underlying neuroblastoma | **Idiopathic** | • Majority of patients with OMA syndrome seronegative for all known antineuronal antibodies  
• Usually presents in 30s and 40s |
| **Adults**                                           | • 20% of cases paraneoplastic (70% of these from lung and breast cancer) | **Paraneoplastic** | • Presents at 6–36 months in children, 60s in adults  
• Neuroblastoma (40%–50% of children with OMA syndrome have a neuroblastoma, but only 2%–4% of patients with a neuroblastoma develop OMA) | **continued**
### Table 7.7 (cont.)
**Opsoclonus-Myoclonus-Ataxia Syndrome**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parainfectious</th>
<th>Miscellaneous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- HIV</td>
<td>- Celiac disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Post-streptococcal group A</td>
<td>- Allogeneic bone marrow transplant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- <em>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</em></td>
<td>- Hyperosmolar coma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- West Nile virus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Lyme disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Varicella-zoster virus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathogenesis</th>
<th>Varieties of autoantibodies detected so far</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- No common antineuronal antibody detected</td>
<td>- Small-cell lung cancer: anti-Hu (ANNA-1), anti-amphiphysin antibody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Most patients do not have autoantibodies</td>
<td>- Breast cancer: anti-Ri (ANNA-2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- May have cellular immune mechanisms</td>
<td>- Neuroblastoma: anti-Hu, alpha-enolase, IgG class antibody, antibody to neuroblastoma cells and cerebellar granular neurons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- May have a genetic predisposition</td>
<td>- Celiac disease: anti-gliadin antibody of IgA subtype, anti-endomysial antibody, and anti-CV2 antibody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(15.8% of parents of OMS patients reported autoimmune disorders compared with 2% of controls)</td>
<td>- Post-streptococcal OMA syndrome: antineuroleukin antibody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Cerebellar or brainstem encephalitis: anti-Yo, anti-Ma2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Investigation Adults: rule out cancer first</th>
<th>Investigation Adults: rule out cancer first</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Careful breast and neurological examination</td>
<td>- CT of chest, abdomen, and pelvis with contrast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- CT of chest, abdomen, and pelvis with contrast</td>
<td>- Mammography in female patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- If all above tests negative, consider onconeural antibodies (eg, anti-Hu)</td>
<td>- If all above tests negative, consider onconeural antibodies (eg, anti-Hu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Consider whole-body FDG-PET if high risk for tumor</td>
<td>- Consider whole-body FDG-PET if high risk for tumor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

continued
Although metabolic derangements and toxins may be the most common causes of asterixis, negative myoclonus may be unilateral in structural diseases affecting the central nervous system (CNS) at levels that include thalamus, parietal lobe, internal capsule, and even the midbrain. A symmetric negative myoclonus does not rule out the presence of a structural lesion on one side (Figure 7.9).
Silent period locked averaging (SPLA) in electromyography (EMG), introduced by Ugawa et al.\textsuperscript{22} and further described by Shibasaki and Hallet\textsuperscript{23}, classifies the silent period into three types.

- **Type 1:** Abrupt cessation and return of background EMG activity without any positive EMG burst at the start. Duration of silent period is between 100 and 200 msec.
- **Type 2:** Same duration as type 1, but preceded by a brief but variable positive EMG burst. This may be multifocal.
- **Type 3:** These are shorter in duration and follow typical positive myoclonus.

**DIAGNOSTIC WORKUP**

- Although an underlying cause is usually discernible from a detailed history and physical examination in most cases, some patients require further investigations ranging from blood work to imaging and electrophysiologic studies. Several investigations need to be considered in the evaluation of a patient with myoclonus (Figure 7.10 and Table 7.8).
- Electrophysiologic analysis of myoclonus
Figure 7.7
Myoclonus in neurodegenerative conditions like Parkinson’s disease (PD), multiple systems atrophy (MSA), dementia with Lewy bodies (DLB), corticobasal degeneration (CBD), progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP), Huntington’s disease, and Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD).
Figure 7.8
Classification of negative myoclonus based on origin and rhythmicity.
Figure 7.9
Causes of negative myoclonus.
**Figure 7.10**
Basic investigations to order when evaluating patients with myoclonus.

**Table 7.8**
Investigations to Consider in a Patient With Myoclonus and a Positive Family History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern of Inheritance</th>
<th>Suspected Condition</th>
<th>Initial Investigations</th>
<th>Confirmatory/ Investigational Tests</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal dominant</td>
<td>Essential myoclonus</td>
<td>EEG, EMG polygraphy</td>
<td>ES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRPLA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PCR for CAG triplet repeat expansion for DRPLA gene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial nocturnal faciomandibular myoclonus</td>
<td>EEG, EMG showing bursts of activity originating in the masseter muscle and spreading to the orbicularis oris and orbicularis oculi muscles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 7.8 (cont.)
Investigations to Consider in a Patient With Myoclonus and a Positive Family History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern of Inheritance</th>
<th>Suspected Condition</th>
<th>Initial Investigations</th>
<th>Confirmatory/Investigational Tests</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Familial adult myoclonic epilepsy</td>
<td>EEG, EMG polygraphy showing cortical reflex myoclonus and cortical origin of tremor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td>Sialidoses I, II</td>
<td>EMG: myoclonus induced by action or sound High urinary levels of oligosaccharides</td>
<td>Alpha-N-acetyl neuraminidase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lafora body disease</td>
<td>EEG: occipital spike-wave discharges, seizures at high-frequency photostimulation Skin biopsy: periodic acid-Schiff–positive Lafora bodies in sweat glands</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unverricht-Lundborg disease</td>
<td>EEG MRI of brain: vermian cerebellar atrophy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action myoclonus-renal failure (AMRF) syndrome</td>
<td>Proteinuria and renal failure</td>
<td>SCARB2/LIMP2 gene mutation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceroid lipofuscinosis (Batten disease)</td>
<td>EEG</td>
<td>ERG; VER; EM of skin, muscle, rectum, or brain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitochondrial</td>
<td>Myoclonic epilepsy with ragged red fibers (MERRF)</td>
<td>Blood and cerebrospinal fluid lactate Muscle biopsy (ragged red fibers)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: DRPLA, dentatorubropallidoluysian atrophy; EEG, electroencephalography; EM, electron microscopy; EMG, electromyography; ERG, electroretinography; PCR, polymerase chain reaction; VER, visual evoked responses.
Electrophysiologic studies are useful not only in confirming a diagnosis of myoclonus but also in understanding the underlying physiology and thus the possible cause (Table 7.9).²⁵

- EMG is a direct measure of alpha motor neuron activity. It provides information about the central nervous system activity that generates the movement.
  - It is mainly used for timing information and can be collected from surface electrodes.
  - Myoclonus can be *regular, irregular, or periodic*.
    - Fast and irregular myoclonus may appear clinically as rhythmic.
  - Antagonist muscle relation can be described as *synchronous* or *asynchronous*.
    - Cortical myoclonus produces synchronous activation of the agonist and antagonist muscles of an affected limb.
  - EMG burst duration can also be noted (Table 7.10)

The sequence of activation of different muscles also plays an important role in identifying the source of myoclonus (Table 7.11).²⁵

### Table 7.9
Different Studies Employed Along With Their Utility in Diagnosing and Classifying Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>Information Obtained</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EMG</td>
<td>Diagnosis and classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEG, EMG polygraphy</td>
<td>Relationship to cortical activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jerk locked back averaging of EEG and EMG</td>
<td>Detection of myoclonus-related cortical activity and its temporal and spatial relationship to myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corticomuscular coherence</td>
<td>Relationship of rhythmic oscillations between sensorimotor cortex and muscle discharge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evoked potentials or magnetic fields</td>
<td>Cortical sensitivity to various stimuli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paired stimulation evoked potentials and loop reflex</td>
<td>Recovery functions of cortical response and reflex myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jerk locked evoked potentials</td>
<td>Cortical excitability change following spontaneous myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transcranial magnetic stimulation</td>
<td>Excitability of motor cortex</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Abbreviations: EEG, electroencephalography; EMG, electromyography.*

Table 7.10
Electromyographic Burst Duration as a Guide to the Source of Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EMG Burst Duration</th>
<th>Implication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 50 msec</td>
<td>Almost exclusively epileptic myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50–100 msec</td>
<td>Essential myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100–150 msec</td>
<td>Nonepileptic, possibly psychogenic myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150–300 msec</td>
<td>Fragments of another movement disorder, such as dystonia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7.11
Sequence of Activation of Muscles as a Clue to the Source of Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Myoclonus</th>
<th>Sequence of Activation of Different Muscle Groups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Epileptic myoclonus</td>
<td>• Rostrocaudal activation starting from upper cranial nerves and descending along neuraxis with conduction velocity consistent with pyramidal tract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Synchronous activation of distal antagonist muscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reticular reflex myoclonus</td>
<td>• Activation initiating in the sternocleidomastoid then progressing both rostrally and caudally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonepileptic myoclonus</td>
<td>• Proximal muscles involved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


- Table 7.12 provides a summary of the electrophysiologic findings in the different types of myoclonus.

**TREATMENT**

- General guidelines
  - Focus first on reversible causes: treatment of metabolic encephalopathy, removal of the offending drug in case of toxicity, excision of an excitable lesion, psychotherapy for psychogenic myoclonus.
  - Nonetheless, most causes of myoclonus are not reversible and will need symptomatic therapy. A physiologic classification of the myoclonus may assist in optimal treatment.
  - In most instances, multiple trials of drugs in high doses are needed to achieve significant symptomatic benefit.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Myoclonus</th>
<th>EEG</th>
<th>EMG Burst</th>
<th>Jerk Locked Back Averaging of EEG</th>
<th>SEPs</th>
<th>C-Reflex</th>
<th>Surface EMG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cortical</td>
<td>Biphasic discharge in central electrodes</td>
<td>Bursts typically &lt; 75 msec</td>
<td>Biphasic spike at central electrodes Initial positive part of EEG precedes myoclonic EMG discharge</td>
<td>Enlarged</td>
<td>Variable; long C-reflex in cortical reflex myoclonus</td>
<td>Rostrocaudal activation from cranial nerve musculature descending along neuraxis with conduction velocity of pyramidal tract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subcortical</td>
<td>Generalized spike and wave</td>
<td>Bursts &lt; 100 msec</td>
<td>Time-locked correlate typical</td>
<td>May be enlarged</td>
<td>Some have C-reflex at rest</td>
<td>Cranial nerve muscles activated from nerve XI nucleus up the brainstem, limb, and axial muscles activated in descending order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segmental</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Bursts typically &gt; 100 msec</td>
<td>No association</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Very short latency incompatible with supraspinal origin</td>
<td>Propriospinal; first muscles usually in thoracic segment, then spread up and down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peripheral</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Variable duration, irregular discharges</td>
<td>No association</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Localized to single nerve distribution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psychogenic</td>
<td>Bereitschafts potentials prior to EMG bursts</td>
<td>Burst typically &lt; 150 msec</td>
<td>Prepotential before EMG burst</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Variable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: EEG, electroencephalography; EMG, electromyography; SEP, sensory evoked potential.
## Table 7.13
Treatment of Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Myoclonus</th>
<th>First-Line Treatment</th>
<th>Adjuncts</th>
<th>Drugs to Avoid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cortical</td>
<td>Sodium valproate</td>
<td>Piracetam</td>
<td>Phenytoin, Carbamazepine, Lamotrigine, Vigabatrin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Most effective</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Doses up to 1.2 g/d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• May cause hepatotoxicity, nausea, hair loss, and tremor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clonazepam</td>
<td>Levetiracetam</td>
<td>Very potent, 1–3 g/d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Up to 15 mg/d</td>
<td></td>
<td>Abrupt withdrawal may precipitate worsening and seizures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Tolerance may develop</td>
<td></td>
<td>May be combined with valproate and clonazepam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• May cause ataxia and drowsiness (avoided with gradual upward titration)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Abrupt withdrawal may precipitate worsening and seizures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Primidone</td>
<td></td>
<td>Is a metabolite of phenobarbital, Use with caution in elderly as can cause sedation, depression, May be useful as add-on, Target dose of 500–750 mg/g, Contraindicated in porphyria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zonisamide</td>
<td></td>
<td>Helped in some cases of progressive myoclonic epilepsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of Myoclonus</td>
<td>First-Line Treatment</td>
<td>Adjuncts</td>
<td>Drugs to Avoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Subcortical      | Clonazepam           | • Useful in hyperekplexia  
• Partially effective in reticular reflex myoclonus and myoclonus dystonia | Deep brain stimulation (especially in myoclonus dystonia syndrome) | • Bilateral pallidal or thalamic deep brain stimulation may help in severe myoclonus dystonia |
|                  | Levetiracetam        | • Distal upper limb more responsive than proximal lower limb myoclonus | | |
| Spinal           | Clonazepam           | • Effective in both types of spinal myoclonus  
• Doses up to 6 mg may be needed in segmental type | Levetiracetam | • Reported to be helpful in spinal segmental myoclonus |
| Segmental        | Botulinum toxin      | | | |
| Peripheral       | Botulinum toxin      | | Carbamazepine  
Surgery to remove pressure from cranial nerve VII in hemifacial spasms | |
| Psychogenic jerks| Psychotherapy  
Physical therapy | | | |

*Source: Adapted from Refs. 24–31.*
Additionally, a single agent is seldom enough, nor is a single agent effective in all types of myoclonus. Table 7.13 provides an outline of the specific subtypes of myoclonus and the approach to their treatment.26–33

REFERENCES

A
taxia is characterized by “unsteadiness” or “clumsiness,” which can result from lesions at multiple levels of the neuraxis. Ataxic disorders affect primarily movement, coordination, gait, and balance, and cognition as well. Ataxia is a multifactorial syndrome with a wide etiology involving cortical, cerebellar, thalamic, spinal, and somatosensory pathways.

**PATHOPHYSIOLOGY**

- **Role of the cortex**
  - Frontal lobe lesions can give rise to what is known as *frontal ataxia*. Frontal ataxia can result in truncal imbalance, gait hesitation, wide-based gait, falls, and disability. Frontal lobe ataxia can also arise from disturbance of frontopontocerebellar tract (Arnold bundle).

- **Role of the cerebellum**
  - The cerebellum modulates functions that are generated in other areas of the brain. As a motor modulator, the cerebellum has two functions:
    - It balances contractile forces of muscles during motor activity.
    - It organizes complex motor actions.
  - Different regions of the cerebellum have different functions. Table 8.1 delineates the functions of the various cerebellar divisions.
  - **Anatomical/functional correlations**: A few brief key anatomical facts are useful in understanding the clinical findings of cerebellar dysfunction (Table 8.2).
  - **Clinical manifestations of cerebellar dysfunction**: Table 8.3 outlines how cerebellar dysfunction parallels cerebellar phylogenetic organization.
### Table 8.1
**Functional Divisions of the Cerebellum**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phylogenetic Origin</th>
<th>Anatomical Location</th>
<th>Function Modulated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Archicerebellum</td>
<td>Midline, Flocculonodular lobe</td>
<td>Vestibular function, Eye movements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paleocerebellum</td>
<td>Midline, Vermis (anterior lobe), Pyramis, Uvula, Paraflocculus</td>
<td>Muscle tone, Axial control, Stance, Gait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neocerebellum</td>
<td>Midline/hemispheres, Middle vermis, Cerebellar hemispheres</td>
<td>Movement initiation, planning, Fine motor programs, Possibly cognition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 8.2
**Key Functional and Anatomical Facts of Cerebellar Dysfunction**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remember</th>
<th>Because</th>
<th>Implications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>The cerebellum is located in close proximity to vital brain structures.</td>
<td>• A swelling of the cerebellum or a cerebellar mass can cause hydrocephalus. &lt;br&gt;• A swelling of the cerebellum or a cerebellar mass can displace other brain structures, causing herniation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anatomy</td>
<td>The hemispheres coordinate the arms and legs. The midline coordinates the trunk (balance).</td>
<td>• Lesions in the hemispheres result in limb ataxia. &lt;br&gt;• Lesions in the midline result in gait and balance problems, truncal titubation, and a wide-based gait.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decussation</td>
<td>The cerebellum features a double decussation.</td>
<td>• Lesions of the left cerebellum affect the left side. &lt;br&gt;• Lesions of the right cerebellum affect the right side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>The cerebellum is a motor modulator.</td>
<td>• Ataxia and gait problems can result not only from lesions of the cerebellum but also from lesions of the input and output pathways. &lt;br&gt;• Spinal sensory afferents (routed mainly through the medulla) &lt;br&gt;• Cortical motor afferents (routed through the pons) &lt;br&gt;• Thalamic output pathways (routed through the midbrain)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Role of the thalamus

- Ventrolateral thalamic lesions can result in contralateral ataxia, dysmetria, rebound, and overshoot phenomena. Most lesions are vascular in nature. These entities can be differentiated from ataxic hemiparesis syndrome, in which hemiparesis persists.\(^4\)

Role of the spinal cord

- Dorsal column lesions and large-fiber sensorimotor neuropathy can produce somatosensory ataxia. Vitamin B\(_{12}\) deficiency and spinal degenerative diseases like Friedreich ataxia can give rise to ataxic gait.\(^5,6\)
- Strokes affecting the anterior columns of the spinal cord can also give rise to ataxia, in addition to weakness, by affecting the vestibulospinal, reticulospinal, and ventral spinocerebellar tracts.

**ETIOLOGY OF ATAXIA**

The etiology of ataxia is multifactorial. The cause of primary ataxia can be a genetic disorder. The causes of secondary ataxia include an extensive list of diseases, such as neurodegenerative, infectious, vascular, traumatic, autoimmune, neoplastic, paraneoplastic, toxic, and demyelinating disorders.

**Genetic Causes of Ataxia**

No aspects of ataxia are more complex than its genetic etiologies.

- **Autosomal dominant cerebellar ataxias**

  - Episodic ataxia is a rare genetic entity with autosomal dominant inheritance. Two distinct presentations have been identified, and genetic tests are available.
In *episodic ataxia 1* (EA1), episodes of ataxia, with gait imbalance and slurring of speech, occur spontaneously or can be precipitated by sudden movement, excitement, or exercise. The attacks generally last from seconds to several minutes and may recur many times per day.

In *episodic ataxia 2* (EA2), the ataxia lasts hours to days, with interictal abnormalities of eye movement. Exertion and stress commonly precipitate the episodes. EA2 notably is due to a genetic defect in a calcium channel (*CACNA1A*), and different genetic defects of this channel can cause genetically transmitted familial hemiplegic migraine.⁷

- A CAG repeat in this gene causes a progressive ataxia (spinocerebellar ataxia [SCA]6), and there are overlaps in symptomatology.⁸,⁹
- Patients may have migrainous episodes as well as ataxia, and some patients with the SCA6 mutation may present with episodic ataxia.

**Acetazolamide may be helpful in the treatment of episodic ataxia.**

Potential identifiable causes of ataxia in individuals who have a history suggestive of a dominant pedigree have proliferated.

- There are currently 24 identified causes of autosomal dominant ataxia, including seven syndromes caused by CAG repeats encoding a polyglutamine protein domain (SCA1, SCA2, SCA3, SCA6, SCA7, SCA17, and dentatorubropallidoluysian atrophy [DRPLA]). Another five syndromes have other identified genetic causes.¹⁰ The search for the genetic locus and gene product in the remaining 12 are still ongoing. Currently, genetic testing is available for several of these disorders through a variety of sources.

- Worldwide, approximately 65% of identified families with an autosomal dominant ataxia have SCA1, SCA2, SCA3, SCA6, SCA7, or SCA8. The frequency of individual ataxic syndromes varies from one country to another.¹¹–¹⁷

- SCA3 is the most common form of autosomal dominant cerebellar ataxia, accounting for roughly 21% of identified families (see also Chapter 5). SCA3 is especially common in Brazil, Germany, and China.

- SCA1 is more prevalent in Italy and South Africa.

- DRPLA, a disease with protean manifestations that can present with ataxia, is an uncommon cause of ataxia worldwide.
However, it is more prevalent in Japan and in some areas of the southeastern United States (see also Chapters 5 and 7).

- In approximately 30% of families with ataxia and autosomal dominant inheritance, the genetic cause is unknown.

○ In patients with an onset of ataxia and a family history, autosomal dominant ataxias should be considered. Table 8.4 lists the major known autosomal dominant disorders and their genetic causes. A full discussion of the causes of autosomal dominant ataxia is beyond the scope of this review; however, a few important points are relevant:

- Some forms of autosomal dominant ataxia cause a “purely ataxic syndrome,” whereas in others, spasticity, neuropathy, cognitive changes, dystonia, and parkinsonism may be associated features. The identification of features not part of a purely motor ataxia may be helpful in diagnosing a specific disorder.

- The genetic testing of unaffected relatives of individuals with a proven autosomal dominant SCA is a complex issue, and in many cases a genetic counselor should be involved before testing is undertaken.

- Autosomal dominant ataxias that are due to trinucleotide repeats, such as CAG repeats, have the characteristic of anticipation, in which later generations may exhibit expansion of the repeat and an earlier onset of the disease. The offspring of male carriers are more likely to have a repeat expansion than are the offspring of female carriers.

- A special comment is necessary with respect to SCA8. Although most cases of SCA8 appear to be associated with a CTG expansion, CTG expansions in the same region have been shown to occur in some healthy controls. The results of genetic testing in this disorder should therefore be interpreted with particular caution.

- Autosomal recessive cerebellar ataxias

  ○ Identifiable autosomal recessive causes of ataxia are more common in children, including a host of metabolic abnormalities such as juvenile forms of GM2 gangliosidoses, sulfatide lipidoses, and other syndromes involving the deposition of abnormal metabolic intermediates.¹⁸

  ○ *Friedreich ataxia* can occur in children and in young adults, and it has occasionally been described in older individuals.

  ○ *Hereditary ataxia with vitamin E deficiency* is recessive and can present with symptoms very similar to those found in Friedreich ataxia.¹⁹,²⁰
### Table 8.4
Autosomal Dominant Cerebellar Ataxias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Gene Product Identified?</th>
<th>Available Test?</th>
<th>Clinical Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCA1</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Ataxia, spasticity, executive dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA2</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Ataxia, hyporeflexia, dementia, rare parkinsonism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA3</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Ataxia, spasticity, dystonia, parkinsonism, restless legs syndrome, dementia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ataxia, spasticity, axonal sensory neuropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA5</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Typically early-onset ataxia with normal life expectancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA6</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Ataxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA7</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Ataxia, pigmentary retinopathy, spasticity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA8</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Ataxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA10</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Ataxia, epilepsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA11</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Ataxia, normal life expectancy, occasional spasticity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA12</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Ataxia, spasticity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Often early-onset (childhood) ataxia (but may occur later) with slow progression and normal life expectancy; mental retardation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA14</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Slowly progressive ataxia with normal life expectancy; myoclonus if childhood onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ataxia, occasional spasticity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ataxia, normal life expectancy, head tremor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA17</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Ataxia, parkinsonism, dystonia, chorea, psychosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ataxia, axonal neuropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ataxia, dementia, hyporeflexia or hyperreflexia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ataxia, dementia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ataxia, sensory neuropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA26</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA27 (FGF14)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ataxia, psychiatric abnormalities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRPLA</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Ataxia, myoclonus, epilepsy, chorea, psychosis, dementia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** DRPLA, dentatorubropallidoluysian atrophy; FGF, fibroblast growth factor; SCA, spinal cerebellar ataxia.
Abetalipoproteinemia is a recessive cause of vitamin E deficiency, and depending on the severity of the deficit and the related vitamin E deficiency, it may occur in children or adults.

Table 8.5 lists some of the more frequently seen causes of recessive cerebellar ataxia, as well as the clinical findings.

### X-linked ataxias

- **X-linked ataxia with sideroblastic anemia** can present in childhood with slowly progressive ataxia and sideroblastic anemia. The gene has been identified, but commercial testing is not available.

- **Fragile X–associated tremor/ataxia syndrome (FXTAS)** is a neurodegenerative disease with predominant ataxia related to the *FMR1* gene. It presents in children.\(^\text{21}\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Gene Product Identified?</th>
<th>Available Test?</th>
<th>Clinical Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Friedreich ataxia</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Classically, juvenile ataxia with a proprioceptive neuropathy, but a wide variety of presentations described</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereditary ataxia with vitamin E deficiency</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Ataxia with proprioceptive neuropathy, low vitamin E level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abetalipoproteinemia</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Ataxia with proprioceptive neuropathy, low vitamin E level, abnormal serum lipoproteins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia with oculomotor apraxia 1 (AOA1)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Slowly progressive childhood-onset ataxia with ocular apraxia, axonal neuropathy, and areflexia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia–telangiectasia</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Ataxia, chorea, dystonia, oculomotor apraxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive spastic ataxia of Charlevoix-Saguenay</td>
<td>Yes (sacsin)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Early-onset ataxia, spasticity, and amyotrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxia with axonal neuropathy (SCAN)</td>
<td>Yes (TDP1)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Ataxia, axonal neuropathy, hypercholesterolemia, intellectual impairment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Mitochondrial ataxias

- Ataxia is usually present in disorders associated with mutations in mitochondrial DNA.

- Genomic mitochondrial defects can result in mitochondrial diseases such as maternally inherited Leigh syndrome (MILS), Kearns-Sayre syndrome, and mitochondrial encephalopathy, lactic acidosis, and strokelike episodes (MELAS), which can cause ataxia.22

- Mitochondrial dysfunction is also increasingly being recognized in recessive forms of cerebellar ataxias.23,24

Causes of Secondary Ataxia

Table 8.6 lists common causes of secondary ataxia.

- Some relevant points regarding the causes of secondary ataxia:

  - Vascular lesions, infections (including abscesses), and structural lesions should always be considered in the diagnosis of ataxia, and an imaging study is often warranted.

  - In an acute setting, strokes and cerebellar masses can be a neurological emergency, and neurosurgical intervention may be required.

  - Multiple sclerosis, acute demyelinating encephalomyelitis, and the Miller Fisher variant of Guillain-Barré syndrome can all present acutely with ataxia, and all of these should be considered in the diagnosis of acute ataxia. A lumbar puncture is frequently helpful in the diagnosis of autoimmune causes of ataxia.

  - Paraneoplastic ataxia should be evaluated in patients with a subacute to chronic onset of ataxia. Antibodies that are most likely to be elevated in autoimmune cerebellar ataxia include anti-GQ1b (in Guillain-Barré syndrome),25 anti-Hu, anti-CV2, and anti-CRMP-5.26 Paraneoplastic ataxia is most closely associated with small-cell cancer of the lung, but other primary tumors that may be associated include thymoma and, rarely, uterine sarcoma. In the case of paraneoplastic syndromes, in addition to an evaluation of paraneoplastic antibodies in the serum, a lumbar puncture may reveal evidence of paraneoplastic antibodies in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF).

  - Imaging of the chest and neck with contrast-enhanced CT is indicated if a paraneoplastic syndrome is suspected.

  - Case reports in the literature suggest that vitamin B₁₂ may occasionally present with chronic ataxia, often related to a loss of proprioception.27–29
### Table 8.6
Common Causes of Secondary Ataxia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Etiology</th>
<th>Investigation</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vascular</td>
<td>Stroke (ischemic and hemorrhagic) Arteriovenous malformation (AVM)</td>
<td>CT, MRI</td>
<td>Medical and surgical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autoimmune</td>
<td>Multiple sclerosis Acute demyelinating encephalomyelitis Miller Fisher variant of Guillain-Barré syndrome</td>
<td>MRI, LP, serum antibodies</td>
<td>Steroids, immunomodulators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxic</td>
<td>Drugs Antiepileptics Neuroleptics Lithium</td>
<td>Serum drug levels</td>
<td>Reduction of drug dosing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy metals</td>
<td>Thallium Lead</td>
<td>Serum and urine levels</td>
<td>Chelation, hemodialysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infectious</td>
<td>Bacterial cerebellar abscess Acute cerebellitis Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (CJD)</td>
<td>MRI, LP</td>
<td>Antibiotics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic</td>
<td>Vitamin B₁₂ deficiency Alcoholic cerebellar degeneration</td>
<td>Vitamin levels</td>
<td>Replacement therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neoplastic</td>
<td>Primary neoplasm Astrocytoma Medulloblastoma Meningioma</td>
<td>CT, MRI</td>
<td>Chemotherapy and surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metastatic neoplasm Lung Breast Renal</td>
<td>MRI, CT of chest, abdomen, and pelvis</td>
<td>Chemotherapy and surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paraneoplastic Anti-Hu Anti-CV2 Anti-CRMP-5</td>
<td>Serum antibodies</td>
<td>Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG), plasmapheresis, treatment of primary tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurodegenerative</td>
<td>Multiple system atrophy Progressive supranuclear palsy</td>
<td>CT, MRI</td>
<td>Symptomatic therapy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Abbreviation: LP, lumbar puncture*
○ Vitamin E and vitamin B$_{12}$ levels should be checked in all individuals with a new onset of ataxia, as deficiency of these vitamins is a potentially correctable cause of progressive ataxia.

Sporadic Ataxia

Unexplained chronic progressive ataxia in adult patients without a family history is less likely to be genetic (although still possible!).$^{30}$

- In patients with chronic adult-onset ataxia, a cause of the ataxia may not be found.

- In a recent German study of 112 patients with chronic progressive ataxia (inclusion criteria were onset after the age of 20 years, progressive course, no identified symptomatic cause, including no evidence of a paraneoplastic process, and no evidence of a family history of ataxia), 58% still had no diagnosis after an extensive workup.
  ○ In 29% of the cases, patients met the criteria for multiple system atrophy (MSA).
  ○ Genetic testing revealed an autosomal dominant or recessive ataxia in 13% (SCA1, SCA2, SCA6, or adult-onset Friedreich ataxia was identified during genetic screening in these individuals).
  ○ In the 58% of patients in whom a diagnosis could not be made, the ataxia tended to have a slower rate of progression than MSA.

CLINICAL EXAMINATION OF THE PATIENT WITH ATAXIA

Table 8.7 outlines simple bedside clinical examination techniques for patients with suspected cerebellar dysfunction. Depending on the severity of the deficit and localization of the lesion, some deficits will be evident on examination, while others may be subtle or not present.

DIAGNOSIS OF ATAXIC SYNDROMES

The diagnosis of ataxic syndromes is becoming increasingly challenging. A complete history and physical examination, neuroimaging, and an extensive laboratory evaluation are required. In many cases, the etiology of ataxia remains uncertain despite a complete workup.

- Many chronic cerebellar ataxias are genetically determined, and a family history should be obtained. Many genetic ataxic syndromes can feature “anticipation,” in which the age of onset is progressively lower in successive generations (a family history may be lacking in some individuals). In some cases, the presentation of a similar syndrome in a sibling despite unaffected
### Table 8.7
Examination of the Patient Suspected to Have Cerebellar Dysfunction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Domain</th>
<th>Examination Technique</th>
<th>Finding With Cerebellar Dysfunction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eye movements</td>
<td>Observation</td>
<td>Macular square-wave jerks (sudden, spontaneous, unplanned deviations of the eye with corrective saccades back to original position)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                 | Have patient fix gaze on an object off midline (eg, examiner’s finger). Command: “Look at my finger here on the right ... now on the left.” | Fixation instability  
• Involuntary saccades away from object  
• Corrective saccades back to object  
Nystagmus (fixation in lateral or vertical gaze)  
• Fixation interrupted by slow, rolling movements, often toward a neutral position, interrupted by rapid corrective saccades |
| Saccade between two objects (eg, examiner’s finger and nose) | Dysmetric saccades  
• Saccade may overshoot or undershoot target, with a correction |
| Smooth pursuit of an object through space | Eyes should move smoothly; saccadic fragmentation of smooth pursuit common in healthy elderly but can also be sign of cerebellar disease |
| Caveats         | • Vestibular dysfunction may cause nystagmus.  
• Slight lateral nystagmus is common in healthy adults.  
• Saccadic pursuit may occur in healthy elderly.  
• Slowed saccades, inability to generate saccades, and ophthalmoplegia may occur but generally indicate additional brainstem involvement. |
| Tremor          | Finger-to-nose testing and finger chasing, holding hands in horizontal posture | • Usually low-frequency but high-amplitude intention and postural tremor |
Table 8.7 (cont.)
Examination of the Patient Suspected to Have Cerebellar Dysfunction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Domain</th>
<th>Examination Technique</th>
<th>Finding With Cerebellar Dysfunction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Limb coordination</td>
<td>Finger-to-nose testing</td>
<td>• Past pointing (missing examiner’s finger)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Finger chasing: examiner moves his/her finger and has the patient try to keep his/her finger behind examiner’s finger (mirroring)</td>
<td>• Excessive corrections • Rebound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tapping heel to knee</td>
<td>• Abnormal speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Running heel from knee to shin</td>
<td>• Poor precision • Excessive corrections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rapid alternating tapping (rapidly tapping palmar and dorsal aspect of hand on thigh)</td>
<td>• Slowed movements with impaired precision • “Painting the leg” rather than tapping the leg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stance/gait</td>
<td>Observation of casual gait</td>
<td>• Unsteady, wide-based gait • Difficulty with sudden stops or changes in direction • Variable step length • Patients often visually focus on ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tandem gait</td>
<td>More pronounced deficits, “steps to the side” to catch balance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stance with eyes closed</td>
<td>“Positive Romberg”: abnormal sensory input or reception in the cerebellum • Patients unable to maintain balance with eyes closed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscle tone</td>
<td>Evaluation of tone at wrist, elbow, knee, and ankle</td>
<td>Decreased resistance to passive movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speech evaluation</td>
<td>Prepared text may be helpful (eg, “The Rainbow Passage”)</td>
<td>• Altered articulation of words • Abnormal fluency • Slowed speech • “Scanning dysarthria”: words broken into syllables</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

parents may be an important clue. Patients should be asked about consanguinity (eg, are your parents related in any way?) because this can sometimes point to the possibility of a recessively inherited disorder, such as Friedreich ataxia.

- Ataxia may occur sporadically in disorders such as MSA, a syndrome that can also present with autonomic instability and parkinsonism. In younger
patients, nutritional abnormalities (some genetically related), such as primary vitamin E deficiency, as well as abnormalities in serum lipoproteins leading to fat malabsorption, can cause ataxia, as can mitochondrial disease. In older patients, autoimmune syndromes including paraneoplastic syndromes can result in ataxia. Celiac disease, an autoimmune disease with anti-gliadin antibodies, may result in ataxia. Furthermore, ataxia can be associated with multiple sclerosis as either an acute or a chronic feature of the disease.

With the proliferation of potential diagnoses associated with ataxia, clinicians should develop a careful and standardized approach to the diagnosis (Figures 8.1 and 8.2). The time course of the ataxia is an important diagnostic feature, as acute ataxic syndromes frequently are related to acute infectious or to vascular, structural, or metabolic lesions, whereas chronic ataxias are more apt to be related to genetic syndromes or slowly growing mass lesions. Possible flow charts for the evaluation of ataxic syndromes in children and adults are presented next. In some cases, certain genetic syndromes may be more common in a local population or the family history may provide guidance, and appropriate modification of these templates may be necessary.

MANAGEMENT

Acute cerebellar ataxia should be considered a neurological emergency until certain diagnoses have been excluded. Key facts to consider in the management of acute ataxia are the following:

- In children, metabolic abnormalities can be caused by inborn errors of metabolism, and rapid treatment may be required to prevent permanent brain injury. Acute intoxications in children and adults can be fatal if not treated.
- Vascular and structural cerebellar lesions, such as strokes, hemorrhages, and neoplasms, can result in swelling that causes herniation or obstruction of CSF flow with hydrocephalus, and neurosurgical intervention may be required.
- The Miller Fisher variant of Guillain-Barré syndrome can present with ataxia and dysarthria and cause deficits in upper airway function that can impair respiration.
- In children, physical abuse should always be considered as a potential etiology for trauma.

For patients with chronic ataxia, a complete family history should be obtained. An autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance may be helpful in narrowing the differential diagnosis. There is currently no universal treatment for ataxia.
FIGURE 8.1
Diagnostic flowchart for the child or adolescent with ataxia.
In some cases (paraneoplastic ataxia or ataxia due to an autoimmune disease, structural abnormality, nutritional deficiency, or metabolic abnormality), identification of the underlying cause of ataxia may also identify a treatment modality.

In many cases, treatment is supportive and includes physical therapy, occupational therapy, and speech therapy for patients with dysarthria.
and dysphagia. A baseline speech and swallowing evaluation by a speech pathologist should be performed in most cases, even if there is no overt swallowing deficit.

- In the case of the genetically linked ataxias, genetic counseling is an important part of management, and testing of unaffected family members should be performed only with much care after full information has been provided to family members.

- Several agents have been inconsistently reported to mitigate ataxia amantadine, l-5-hydroxytryptophan, ondansetron, physostigmine, branched-chain amino acid therapy, gabapentin, piracetam, buspirone, and varenicline.

- Baclofen may reduce associated leg spasticity. GABAergic agents such as clonazepam, beta-blockers, and primidone, may reduce associated cerebellar tremors.

- Surgical ablation or deep brain stimulation surgery of the ventral intermediate nucleus (VIM) of the thalamus may be effective in reducing cerebellar tremor; however, these procedures often do not significantly lessen ataxia, although a few cases with benefit have been reported (eg, SCAs).

Ataxia is a complex entity that can be the presenting feature of many different neurological disorders.

- The evaluation and management of ataxia should focus first on excluding symptomatic causes.

- Genetic testing should be considered after reversible causes have been excluded.

- Ataxia with an acute onset should be considered a neurological and potentially a neurosurgical emergency until structural, vascular, and toxic causes of acute ataxia have been ruled out.

- In children, reversible causes include a host of metabolic lesions that should be considered, and referral to a pediatric neurologist may be appropriate if initial evaluations are not fruitful.

- In adults, vitamin E and occasionally vitamin B₁₂ deficiency are rarely a cause of chronic progressive ataxia and should not be overlooked in the diagnostic workup.

- After a careful symptomatic workup, testing for genetic causes of ataxia should be considered.

- In patients with an identified genetic cause, unaffected family members should be tested with caution, and the participation of a genetic counselor is often helpful.

- After symptomatic causes have been corrected, management is typically supportive but may include physical, occupational, and speech therapy.
REFERENCES


A tic is an involuntary movement or vocalization that is usually of sudden onset, brief, repetitive, and stereotyped, but nonrhythmic. Tics frequently imitate normal behavior, often occurring during normal activity and without alteration of consciousness. A tic is usually associated with a premonitory “buildup” sensation or feeling of discomfort that is often localized to the affected area. Usually, the individual experiences a sensation of relief once the tic has occurred. Unlike most movement disorders, tics can persist during sleep.

Tics can be classified as motor or vocal. Motor tics are associated with movements, whereas vocal tics are associated with sounds. Sometimes, the distinction between a motor tic and a vocal tic may be difficult because the noise may result from a muscle contraction.

Tics can also be categorized as simple or complex, depending on the manifestation (Table 9.1).

Simple motor tics involve only a few muscles, usually restricted to a specific body part. They can be clonic (abrupt in onset and rapid), tonic (isometric contraction of the involved body part), or dystonic (sustained abnormal posture). Examples of simple motor tics include the following:

- Eye blinking
- Shoulder shrugging
- Facial grimacing
- Neck stretching
- Mouth movements
- Jaw clenching

Simple vocal tics consist of sounds that do not form words, such as these:

- Throat clearing
- Grunting
Table 9.1
Simple Versus Complex Tics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple motor tics</td>
<td>Only one body region involved, only a few muscles used</td>
<td>Eye blinking, shoulder shrugging, facial grimacing, neck stretching, spitting, hair combing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple vocal tics</td>
<td>Sounds that do not form words</td>
<td>Throat clearing, grunting, coughing, sniffing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex motor tics</td>
<td>Multiple body regions involved</td>
<td>Jumping, kicking, squatting, abnormal body posturing, echopraxia, copropraxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex vocal tics</td>
<td>Pronunciation of words or sentences, repetition of other people’s words</td>
<td>Coprolalia, palilalia, formed words, echolalia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Coughing
- Sniffing
- Blowing
- Squeaking

Complex motor tics consist of movements involving multiple muscle groups and have a deliberate character, frequently resembling normal movements or gestures. They usually last longer than simple tics. Examples of complex motor tics include these:

- Jumping
- Kicking
- Squatting
- Holding the body in an atypical position
- Imitating other people’s gestures (echopraxia)
- Vulgar or obscene gesturing (copropraxia)

Complex vocal tics consist of pronounced words or sentences. Examples include the following:

- Repetition of other people’s words (echolalia)
- Repetition of a last word or parts of a word (palilalia)
- Verbalizing profanities (coprolalia)
CHARACTERISTICS OF TICS

- Tics are commonly associated with a premonitory sensation or feeling of discomfort that is usually relieved by performing a specific activity.
- Tics can be suppressed, but suppression usually requires concentration on the part of the affected individual and results in a buildup of an uncomfortable sensation that is relieved when the tic occurs.
- Typically, tics do not disrupt volitional movement, unlike other abnormal movements, such as those of chorea and myoclonus, which may share some of the features of tics.
- There can also be tic blocking, during which there is a sudden stoppage of movement.
- The severity of tics usually waxes and wanes, and the affected individual experiences episodes of repeated tics alternating with tic-free periods that may last from minutes to hours.\(^2\)
- Involvement in activities that require a great deal of attention or concentration usually diminishes the frequency of tics, whereas tics tend to occur more often during periods of stress or fatigue.
- The classification of tic disorders is based on the type(s) of tics and duration of symptoms. The Tourette Syndrome Classification Study Group classification of idiopathic tic disorders appears in Table 9.2.\(^3\)
- However, there are many behavioral/psychiatric manifestations of Tourette syndrome (TS), and these are often more disabling than tics.
  - Two behavioral features commonly associated with TS are attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) and obsessive–compulsive disorder (OCD).
  - The incidence of ADHD in TS ranges from 50% to 75%, and ADHD is the most commonly reported comorbidity. OCD may be seen in 30% to 60% of patients with TS.
  - The symptoms of ADHD begin approximately 2.5 years before the onset of TS, whereas OCD generally appears after the onset of tics.\(^4\)
  - Other symptoms seen in TS are listed in Table 9.3.

EPIDEMIOLOGY, PATHOGENESIS, AND PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

- Tics usually begin during childhood. The average age at the onset of symptoms ranges from 5.6 to 6.4 years. On average, tics become most severe at the age of 10 years and then decrease in frequency to the point that by age 18, half of patients who have had tics are free of them.\(^5\) The incidence of TS
**Table 9.2**
Classification of Idiopathic Tic Disorders

| Tourette Syndrome | • Multiple motor AND one or more vocal tics at some time but not required to be concurrent.  
• Tics occur over more than 1 year, multiple times a day, nearly daily or intermittently.  
• Location, frequency, complexity, and severity of tics fluctuate over time.  
• Onset before age 21.  
• Symptoms cannot be attributed to other conditions. |
| Chronic Multiple Motor Tic or Phonic Tic Disorder | • Multiple motor OR vocal tics present at some time.  
• Tics occur over more than 1 year, multiple times a day, nearly daily or intermittently.  
• Location, frequency, complexity, and severity of tics fluctuate over time.  
• Onset before age 21.  
• Symptoms cannot be attributed to other conditions. |
| Chronic Single Tic Disorder | • Same as chronic multiple motor tic or phonic tic disorder except single vocal OR motor tic. |
| Transient Tic Disorder | • Single or multiple motor and/or vocal tics.  
• Tics occur over at least 2 weeks but for less than 12 consecutive months.  
• Daily or nearly daily tics.  
• No history of Tourette syndrome or chronic tic disorder.  
• Onset before age 21.  
• Diagnosis can be made only in retrospect. |


**Table 9.3**
Other Symptoms Associated With Tourette Syndrome

| Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder | Short temper |
| Obsessive–compulsive disorder | Oppositional defiant behavior |
| Confrontation | Mania |
| Violence | Agoraphobia |
| Anger | Simple phobia |
| Depression | Social phobia |
| Personality disorder | Problems with discipline |
| Inattention | Disinhibition |
| Poor impulse control | Self-injurious behavior |
is higher in males, with a male-to-female ratio of 4.3:1. Tics rarely begin in adulthood, and when they do, they are most frequently recurrences of tics that occurred during childhood. Underlying causes must be strongly considered in adult-onset tics.

- The prevalence of tic disorders shows a dramatic variation that is probably a result of the studied populations along with the diagnostic criteria and methodology used in different studies.

- For all tic disorders, the prevalence may be as high as 4.2%. The prevalence of transient tic disorder has been reported to range from 4% to 24%, and the prevalence of TS is 3%.

- The exact origin of tics and TS is unknown, but it has been hypothesized that the corticostriatothalamocortical circuitry is involved, particularly the caudate nucleus.

- Abnormalities in several neurotransmitter systems, particularly dopamine, have been linked to the etiology of the syndrome.

- Despite contradictory findings in functional MRI studies, other modalities have detected metabolic derangement in the orbitofrontal cortex, dorsolateral prefrontal cortex, supplementary motor areas, cingulate gyrus, sensorimotor cortex, and basal ganglia, consistent with the idea that TS is both a motor and a behavioral disorder.

- Immunologic mechanisms have been proposed and are controversial. Some reports link TS, ADHD, and OCD to previous infection with group A beta-hemolytic streptococci.

- The occurrence of TS in family clusters suggests that TS has a genetic/familial basis (53% pairwise concordance observed for TS in monozygotic twins, in contrast to 8% observed for dizygotic twins).

- Multiple investigators have suggested a mutation with autosomal dominant inheritance and reduced penetrance, and numerous candidate genes have been proposed. However, to date there have been no significant linkage findings.

**EVALUATION**

- The diagnosis of tics and TS is a clinical one. Many other movements can resemble tics, and these are listed in Table 9.4.

- No blood work or imaging studies will confirm the diagnosis.

- Once the diagnosis is suspected, the patient should be screened for behavioral symptoms, and treatment should be initiated if necessary.

- Review the patient’s current medications because some may induce tics, including antidepressant medications and anticonvulsive agents.
If a neurological abnormality is found on examination, further workup should be undertaken to evaluate for causes of secondary tics (Table 9.5).

### Table 9.4
Differential Diagnosis of Tics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Movement/Behavior</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Akathisia</td>
<td>Sensation of excessive restlessness resulting in constant movement of affected body parts, with relief obtained by moving</td>
<td>Leg movements, leg rubbing, walking, face rubbing, inability to sit still</td>
<td>Associated with exposure to dopamine receptor blockers (tardive akathisia), no diurnal fluctuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compulsive behavior</td>
<td>Repetitive and ritualistic movements that usually are a response to psychological need</td>
<td>Hand washing, repetitive cleaning, organizing in a particular manner</td>
<td>Seen in normal individuals or those with developmental delay. Obsessive thoughts may also be present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mannerism</td>
<td>Particular voluntary movement, usually associated with a gesture or other particular movements</td>
<td>Rubbing hair after removing hat, extending little finger when holding a cup; movements may have a purpose</td>
<td>Nonpathologic action that can often be a distinguishing feature of an individual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myoclonus</td>
<td>Sudden, brief, involuntary muscle jerk</td>
<td>May involve any body part, nonsuppressible</td>
<td>Myoclonus can resemble simple motor tics but is nonsuppressible and often random</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punding</td>
<td>Stereotypical motor behaviors characterized by an intense fascination with repetitive handling and examination of mechanical objects</td>
<td>Picking at oneself, taking watches and radios apart, sorting and arranging common objects (eg, lining up pebbles, rocks, or other small objects)</td>
<td>Originally described in amphetamine users, now often reported in patients with Parkinson’s disease as a dopaminergic-induced complication May be socially disruptive, responds to medication readjustment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
### Table 9.4 (cont.)
**Differential Diagnosis of Tics**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Movement/Behavior</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Restless legs syndrome</td>
<td>Uncomfortable sensation, usually in lower extremities, occurring or worsening in the afternoon or evening and relieved by movement</td>
<td>Various symptoms described by patients (eg, cramp, spasm, numbness, tingling, crawling sensation)</td>
<td>The circadian nature suggests the diagnosis. Improvement with dopamine agonist or narcotics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seizure</td>
<td>Involuntary movement that may or may not be associated with alteration of consciousness</td>
<td>Action varies depending on body region affected, electroencephalogram helpful for diagnosis</td>
<td>Nonsuppressible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereotypy</td>
<td>Repetitive, purposeless movements</td>
<td>Rocking, shuddering, clapping, flapping, facial movements</td>
<td>Seen in normal children, also autism, developmental delay, and pervasive developmental disorder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 9.5**
**Causes of Secondary Tics**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Precipitants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carbon monoxide intoxication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drugs: stimulants, anticonvulsants, anticholinergics, antidepressants, cocaine, neuroleptics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genetic, chromosomal, developmental disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huntington’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infections: encephalitis, neurosyphilis, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroacanthocytosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schizophrenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stroke</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TREATMENT (FIGURE 9.1)

- Most patients with mild symptoms will benefit from education regarding the diagnosis and what to expect from the condition.
- Parents as well as teachers should be instructed to create a suitable environment for the affected individual, and it should be explained to them this is not a volitional behavior.
- Giving the child the opportunity to “release” the tics by providing him or her with a scheduled break may be all that is needed. The same may be effective for adults in the work environment.
- Pharmacologic treatment for tics may not be needed unless they cause severe interference with school, work, or social development. Often education, counseling, and behavior modification/therapy are sufficient.

If medical therapy is necessary, the following should be considered:

- The focus of medical therapy should be on decreasing the impairment created by the tics rather than on attempting to suppress them completely.

---

**Figure 9.1**
Approach to the management of the patient with tics.
- Therapy should be instituted with the potential side effects taken into consideration.
- The most bothersome symptoms should be targeted first.
- Therapy should be started at low doses and titrated to the lowest effective dose.
- Medications require adequate trials.

### Table 9.6
Medications Commonly Used for the Treatment of Tics in Tourette Syndrome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic Name</th>
<th>Dosing (mg/d)</th>
<th>Adverse Effects</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Risperidone</td>
<td>0.25–6 mg 1 or 2 times daily</td>
<td>TD, dizziness, sedation, akathisia, EPS</td>
<td>Begin with 0.25 mg at bedtime, increase every 3 days by 0.25 mg to benefit or side effects, risk for EPS &gt;6 mg/d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
<td>0.5–5 mg 2 or 3 times daily (adults) 0.05–0.075 mg/kg 2 or 3 times daily (children)</td>
<td>Sedation, TD, EPS, NMS, galactorrhea, akathisia</td>
<td>Monitor for EPS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olanzapine</td>
<td>2.5–20 mg daily</td>
<td>Weight gain, EPS, sedation, diabetes mellitus, NMS, TD</td>
<td>Monitor for EPS and glucose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pimozide</td>
<td>1–10 mg/d</td>
<td>EKG changes, weight gain, EPS, sedation, TD</td>
<td>Check EKG at baseline, then periodically (prolongation of QT interval).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quetiapine</td>
<td>25–800 mg/d</td>
<td>Weight gain, dizziness, drowsiness, hypotension, EPS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluphenazine</td>
<td>1–10 mg/d</td>
<td>Sedation, TD, EPS, NMS, galactorrhea, akathisia</td>
<td>Better tolerated than haloperidol in some reports.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dopamine receptor blockers are the mainstay of treatment for tics and TS (Table 9.6).

- Side effects include sedation, parkinsonism, and risk for tardive dyskinesia. Some can cause QT prolongation, so electrocardiographic monitoring is necessary.

- These are the only medications for TS approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA).

- Haloperidol and pimozide are probably the most widely used medications and provide benefit in to up to 80% of patients.

- Fluphenazine has also been reported to be beneficial for tics, among others, in patients who cannot tolerate haloperidol.

Atypical antipsychotics have been reported to be beneficial and may be associated with a lower incidence of side effects in comparison with the typical antipsychotics.

- Aripiprazole, risperidone, and ziprasidone have been reported to decrease the severity and frequency of tics in multiple reports.

Tetrabenazine, a monoamine-depleting and dopamine receptor-blocking drug, is now available in the United States. It is currently FDA-approved.

### Table 9.6 (cont.)
Medications Commonly Used for the Treatment of Tics in Tourette Syndrome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic Name</th>
<th>Dosing (mg/d)</th>
<th>Adverse Effects</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clonidine</td>
<td>0.05–0.6 mg 1 or 2 times daily</td>
<td>Sedation, hypotension, rebound hypertension with discontinuation, confusion</td>
<td>Start with low dose, monitor for hypotension, avoid abrupt withdrawal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetrabenazine</td>
<td>Start at 2.5 mg/d</td>
<td>Depression, suicidality, parkinsonism, somnolence, NMS, orthostatic hypotension</td>
<td>Available only through specialty pharmacy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clonazepam or other benzodiazepines</td>
<td>Depending on the benzodiazepine</td>
<td>Sedation, tolerance, cognitive impairment</td>
<td>Should not be used as first-line treatment; start with a low dose if possible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Abbreviations: EKG, electrocardiogram; EPS, extrapyramidal syndrome; NMS, neuroleptic malignant syndrome; TD, tardive dyskinesia.*
only for Huntington’s disease, so treatment of tics would be an off-label use.

- Its efficacy for reducing tics has been demonstrated in multiple studies, without the same risks for tardive dyskinesia.

- Benzodiazepines, in particular clonazepam, can be helpful and there is no risk for tardive dyskinesia.

- Other treatments reported to be beneficial in reducing the frequency of tics in patients with TS include the following:
  - Nicotine
  - Mecamylamine, a nicotinic acetylcholine antagonist
  - Tetrahydrocannabinol
  - Baclofen
  - Botulinum toxin treatment of the muscles involved in the tics
  - Clonidine and guanfacine
  - Ondansetron

- Reports of improvement after deep brain stimulation (DBS) in patients with medically refractory TS have been published, although there does not seem to be consensus on the best target for electrode placement. Although still in the experimental phase, DBS may be a viable option for patients with medically refractory TS. It now has received a Humanitarian Device Exemption from the FDA.

- Particular attention should be paid to the associated behavioral features because they may become the most disabling aspect of the disease. Treatment for depression, anxiety, and OCD with a selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) or clomipramine may be required and may be all that is needed. ADHD should be treated accordingly.

REFERENCES

10

SLEEP-RELATED MOVEMENT DISORDERS

Although most movement disorders typically disappear during sleep, some persist, and some even occur almost exclusively while the patient is asleep or falling asleep. Movement disorders that occur during sleep should be distinguished from mimickers (Figure 10.1).\textsuperscript{1,2}

MOVEMENT DISORDERS THAT OCCUR ONLY DURING SLEEP/FALLING ASLEEP AND DISAPPEAR DURING WAKEFULNESS

REM Sleep Behavioral Disorder (RSBD)

- Sleep with rapid eye movements (REM sleep) is the stage of sleep in which dreaming occurs. It is associated with ocular movements and atonia of the other somatic muscles.
- In RSBD, muscle atonia is absent, thereby enabling the patient to unwarily “act out his or her dreams.”
- The patient can wake up and injure himself or herself or, more commonly, a bed partner.
- Polysomnography (PSG) showing excessive chin muscle tone and limb jerking during REM sleep is needed for a definitive diagnosis.\textsuperscript{3}
- RSBD may precede by several years a synucleinopathy (eg, Parkinson’s disease, dementia with Lewy bodies, or multiple systems atrophy), and its presence in a middle-aged man implies a 52.4\% risk for the development of Parkinson’s disease or dementia at 12 years.\textsuperscript{4}
- Medications commonly associated with RSBD are selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, monoamine oxidase inhibitors, and tricyclic antidepressants.\textsuperscript{5}
Treatment may not be necessary if symptoms are mild or intermittent, but it will be needed if the behavior is violent and dangerous for either the patient or the bed partner.
Clonazepam is the first-line medication, with doses from 0.5 to 3 mg taken every evening most often used. One evening dose of 3 to 12 mg of melatonin or 0.5 to 1.25 mg of pramipexole can also be tried.\(^6\)

**Restless Legs Syndrome (RLS)**

- RLS is now considered the most frequent movement disorder.\(^2\)
- It is characterized by a deep, ill-defined sensation of discomfort or dysesthesia in the legs that arises during prolonged rest or when the patient is drowsy and trying to fall asleep (Table 10.1).\(^7\) Wayne Hening coined the acronym URGE as a convenient reminder of the key features of RLS (Table 10.2).\(^8\)

### Table 10.1
**Essential Diagnostic Criteria for Restless Legs Syndrome**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>An urge to move the legs, usually accompanied or caused by uncomfortable and unpleasant sensations in the legs. (Sometimes the arms or other body parts are involved in addition to the legs.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>The urge to move or unpleasant sensations begin or worsen during periods of rest or inactivity such as lying or sitting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>The urge to move or unpleasant sensations are partially or totally relieved by movement, such as walking or stretching, at least as long as the activity continues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>The urge to move or unpleasant sensations are worse in the evening or night than during the day or only occur in the evening or night. (When symptoms are very severe, the worsening at night may not be noticeable but must have been previously present.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### Table 10.2
**The URGE Acronym for Restless Legs Syndrome**

- U: Urge to move the legs, usually associated with unpleasant leg sensations.
- R: Rest induces symptoms.
- G: Getting active (physically and mentally) brings relief.
- E: Evening and night make symptoms worse.
The discomfort is often described as crawling, creeping, pulling, itching, drawing, or stretching, among others. True pain is rare.

Supportive clinical features of RLS include a family history and a good initial response to low doses of levodopa or a dopamine receptor agonist.

The physical examination is generally normal and does not contribute to the diagnosis, except for comorbid conditions or causes of secondary RLS.

RLS is generally a condition of middle to old age, but at least one-third of patients experience their first symptoms before the age of 20. If the patient is older than 50 years at symptom onset, the symptoms often develop abruptly and severely, whereas if the patient is younger than 50 years, the onset is often more insidious. Symptoms usually worsen with age.

The prevalence of RLS among the first-degree relatives of people with RLS is 3 to 5 times greater than the prevalence in people without RLS. An autosomal dominant genetic transmission is suspected, but no single causal gene has been identified.

Periodic limb movements in sleep (PLMS) occur in 85% of patients with RLS. The clinical spectrum may also include myoclonic jerks, more sustained dystonic movements, or stereotypic movements that occur while the patient is awake.

RLS can be divided into primary and secondary forms.

- Primary RLS is idiopathic and frequently familial, and it starts at a younger age.
- Secondary, or symptomatic, RLS is associated with iron deficiency anemia, pregnancy, or end-stage renal disease, and also with chronic myelopathies, peripheral neuropathies, gastric surgery, chronic lung disease, and some drugs (Figure 10.2).

The diagnosis of RLS is clinical. PSG is not necessary. The differences between RLS and akathisia are listed in Table 10.3. RLS must also be distinguished from the syndrome of painful legs and moving toes (see below).

The treatment of secondary RLS requires addressing its cause (stopping the offending medication, correcting iron deficiency, treating uremia, etc).

Dopamine agonists are the first-line pharmacotherapy. They are associated with less risk for augmentation (defined as an increase in the severity of symptoms, a shift in the time when symptoms start to earlier in the day, a shorter latency to the start of symptoms during rest, and sometimes the spread of symptoms to other body parts) than levodopa, which is also effective.

Gabapentin and gabapentin enacarbil are second-line therapy and can be especially beneficial in cases of painful RLS.
A recent study found pregabalin to be beneficial with less risk of augmentation than pramipexole.\textsuperscript{11}

Opiates and benzodiazepines can be used as third-line therapy.

The off-label use of an antiepileptic drug, such as topiramate, can be considered in cases of refractory RLS, especially if it is painful.\textsuperscript{12}

Iron infusion must be reserved for severe cases unresponsive to other therapies and associated with low plasma levels of ferritin. A high-dose intravenous infusion of iron dextran (1,000 mg) or iron sucrose (5 infusions of 200 mg each over 3 weeks) can be used, the former being more effective but carrying a higher risk for anaphylactic shock. Patients receiving ferritin should
be monitored closely during therapy to avoid hemochromatosis. Oral iron does not seem to be effective except to correct an iron deficiency anemia.\(^7\)

**Periodic Limb Movements of Sleep (PLMS) (Table 10.4)**

- PLMS can affect one or both legs.
- Movements are brief (1–2 seconds).
  - Dorsiflexion of big toe and foot.
  - Flexion of hip and knee also possible. The movement then resembles a flexion reflex.
  - Occurs every 20 seconds, for minutes or hours.
- Can wake up bed partner and may cause a sleep disturbance in the patient, who then experiences excessive daytime drowsiness.
- The diagnosis is confirmed by PSG. PLMS usually occurs during stages I and II of sleep and decreases in stages III and IV. Unusual in REM sleep.
- Occasionally seen in an awake, drowsy patient.\(^2\)
- Although PLMS can be seen alone, RLS occurs in 30% of cases of PLMS.

### Table 10.3
Restless Legs Syndrome Versus Akathisia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Restless Legs Syndrome</th>
<th>Akathisia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>See Tables 10.1 and 10.2.</td>
<td>Inner restlessness, fidgetiness with jittery feeling, or generalized restlessness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occurs as a side effect of neuroleptics</td>
<td>Less common</td>
<td>More common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disease course</td>
<td>Chronic and progressive</td>
<td>Can be acute, chronic, or tardive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character of restlessness</td>
<td>Tossing, turning in bed, floor pacing, leg stretching, leg flexion, foot rubbing, need to get up and walk</td>
<td>Swaying and rocking movements, crossing and uncrossing the legs, shifting body positions, inability to sit still; resembles mild chorea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule</td>
<td>Mostly in the evening or at night</td>
<td>Mostly during the day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worsening factor</td>
<td>Inactivity or rest.</td>
<td>Anxiety or stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alleviating factor</td>
<td>Moving the legs, walking</td>
<td>Moving around, walking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the condition is isolated, patients are usually asymptomatic and do not require treatment. If needed, the treatment is the same as for RLS (see above).

Hypnogenic Paroxysmal Dystonia or Dyskinesia

- Occurs as a paroxysm during sleep and last only a few minutes.
- Hypnogenic dystonia can be complex and is characterized by sustained contractions, similar to those occurring in torsion dystonia.
- Patients who have hypnogenic paroxysmal dyskinesia can present with bilateral tonic posturing and gross proximal limb movements.
- The movements may or may not awaken the patient.
- Longer (2–50 minutes) attacks occur in a minority of individuals with paroxysmal hypnogenic dyskinesia and do not respond to medication.
- Antiepileptic drugs seem to be effective treatment.
- Multiple studies, including video electroencephalography (EEG), have demonstrated that most of these short- and long-acting events, historically described as “movement disorders,” were in fact frontal lobe seizures.²

### Table 10.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Periodic Movements of Sleep</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brief (lasting 1–2 seconds) jerks in one or both legs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Occur in runs (every 20 seconds) for minutes to hours</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Initial jerk followed by tonic spasm</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dorsiflexion of big toe and foot (or flexion of whole leg)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Occurs during light sleep (stages I and II)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Occasionally seen in an awake, drowsy patient</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Usually asymptomatic, may wake sleeping partner or, less often, the patient</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prevalence increases with age: younger than 30 years, rare; 30 to 50 years, 5%; older than 50 years, 29%</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### Movement Disorders Occurring During Wakefulness But Frequently Persisting During Sleep

#### Painful Legs and Moving Toes

- The toes of one foot or both feet are in continual flexion–extension with abduction–adduction, associated with a continuous deep pain in the ipsilateral leg.
Movements are stereotyped, sinusoidal, and athetoid, with a frequency of 1 to 2 Hz. They may occasionally involve more proximal parts of the legs.\textsuperscript{13}

There is a sensory component described as deeply aching, burning, throbbing, crushing, or tearing. It may occasionally be mild or even absent.

The leg pain is much more troublesome to the patient than are the constant movements and usually precedes them.

Usually, adults are affected.

Unlike in RLS, there is no urge to move, and movement does not relieve the symptoms.

On examination, there is frequent hyperpathia or allodynia of the painful region.

In the vast majority of the cases, the condition is secondary to a lesion in the lumbar roots or peripheral nerves, including neuropathy, root compression, herpes zoster, and cauda equina lesions, as well as minor trauma to the legs.

An analogous disorder, “painful arms and moving fingers,” has also been described and appears to be secondary to brachial plexus and cervical root lesions.\textsuperscript{14}

Pain is the major source of disability and is very hard to treat. Antiepileptic drugs, such as carbamazepine and gabapentin,\textsuperscript{15} can be tried as well as amitriptyline, nerve or epidural blocks, epidural cord stimulation, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) units, and guanethidine infusions. Botulinum toxin injections can mitigate both movement and pain in some patients.\textsuperscript{2}

### Myoclonus

- Myoclonic jerks are sudden, brief, shocklike involuntary movements caused by muscular contractions (positive myoclonus) or inhibitions (negative myoclonus).

- Myoclonic jerks are usually irregular (arrhythmic) but can be rhythmic, such as in palatal myoclonus or ocular myoclonus, with a rate of approximately 2 Hz.

- Rhythmic myoclonus is typically due to a structural lesion of the brainstem or spinal cord (and is therefore also called segmental myoclonus), but not all cases of segmental myoclonus are rhythmic.

- Myoclonus is detailed in Chapter 7. Here, we discuss only the types of myoclonus that usually persist during sleep.

### Spinal Myoclonus

- Spinal myoclonus is secondary to lesions of the spinal cord and/or peripheral nerves.
- Causes include peripheral nerve tumors, trauma, or radiation and spinal cord trauma, tumors, vascular lesions, multiple sclerosis, and myelitis.
- Spinal myoclonus is rhythmic (0.5–3 Hz) and confined to muscles innervated by a few spinal segments. It persists during sleep.
- It is usually not stimulus-sensitive.
- Clonazepam is the most effective treatment.²

SECONDARY PALATAL MYOCLONUS

- Palatal myoclonus (also known as palatal tremor) consists of rhythmic palatal movements at about 1.5 to 3 Hz.¹⁶
- There are two forms: essential palatal myoclonus and symptomatic (secondary) palatal myoclonus (Figure 10.3).

Figure 10.3
Essential versus symptomatic palatal myoclonus.
Essential palatal myoclonus

- There is no evident cause.
- It affects only the palate.
- The only symptom is ear clicking secondary to contraction of the tensor veli palatini muscle, which elevates the roof of the soft palate and opens the eustachian tube.
- The ear clicking does not persist during sleep.
- Patients are younger.
- Treatment is with clonazepam, anticholinergics, carbamazepine, or botulinum injection in the tensor veli palatini muscle. Sumatriptan may help.\textsuperscript{2}

Secondary palatal myoclonus

- Secondary to a brainstem lesion such as stroke, encephalitis, multiple sclerosis, tumor, trauma, or degenerative disease.
- The brainstem lesion results in denervation and hypertrophy of the inferior olive, which can be seen on brain MRI.
- There usually is no ear clicking. The palatal movements are secondary to contractions of the levator veli palatini, which lifts and pulls back the soft palate.
- Secondary palatal myoclonus is frequently not limited to the palate; the eyes, face, tongue, and larynx, and even the head, trunk, intercostal muscles, and diaphragm, can also be involved, depending on the underlying lesion.
- The movements usually are synchronous, bilateral, and symmetric, occurring between 100 and 150 times per minute.
- These movements persist during sleep.
- Patients are older.
- Treatment is with clonazepam, anticholinergics, carbamazepine, or botulinum injection in the levator veli palatini muscle. Sumatriptan does not help.\textsuperscript{2}

Ocular myoclonus

- Rhythmic vertical oscillations occur at a rate of 2 Hz.
- Ocular myoclonus is due to a lesion in the dentato-olivary pathway.
- It can be associated with secondary palatal myoclonus and is treated similarly.
Oculofaciomasticatory Myorhythmia

- Myorhythmia
  - Myorhythmia is a movement that is slow in frequency (<3 Hz), prolonged, rhythmic, or repetitive, without the sharp square-wave appearance of a myoclonic jerk.\(^2\)
  - It is slower than most tremors (parkinsonian, essential, cerebellar).
- Most frequent are *oculofaciomasticatory* myorhythmias.
  - They are typically seen in Whipple disease.
  - Slow-moving, repetitive, synchronous, and rhythmic contractions occur in ocular, facial, masticatory, and other muscles.\(^{17}\)
  - *Ocular myorhythmia*: continuous, 1-Hz, horizontal, pendular, vergence oscillations of the eyes, usually of small amplitude, without divergence beyond the primary position. Divergence and convergence occur at the same speed. There is no pupillary miosis during these movements.
  - Movements in the face, jaw, and skeletal muscles occur at about the same frequency but may be somewhat quicker and more like rhythmic myoclonus.\(^2\)
  - Vertical supranuclear ophthalmoplegia is frequently present.
  - Central nervous system Whipple disease is treated with antibiotics, typically 2 g of ceftriaxone given intravenously daily for 2 weeks followed by oral trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole for 1 to 2 years. There is no clear symptomatic treatment for myorhythmia.

Myokymia

- Myokymia is characterized by fine, persistent quivering or wavelike rippling of muscles (“live flesh”).
- On electromyography (EMG), groups of motor unit discharges, especially doublets and triplets, occur at a regular rhythm.
- Myokymia is most commonly seen in facial muscles. Most facial myokymias are due to pontine lesions, particularly multiple sclerosis and less often pontine glioma.\(^2\)
  - When due to multiple sclerosis, the myokymia tends to abate after weeks or months.
  - When due to a pontine glioma, it may persist indefinitely and can be associated with facial contracture.
There is no well-defined symptomatic treatment for myokymia.

Myokymia is also a feature of neuromyotonia (see below).

Neuromyotonia and Isaacs Syndrome

**Neuromyotonia**

- Syndrome of failure of muscle relaxation with myokymia and fasciculations.
- Originates in the peripheral nerve (not the muscle).
- High-frequency discharges (150–300 Hz) on EMG.
- Clinically manifests as continuous muscle activity causing stiffness and cramps.
- The best known neuromyotonic disorder is Isaacs syndrome.

**Isaacs syndrome**

- Isaacs syndrome has multiple other names: “continuous muscle fiber activity,” “myokymia with impaired muscle relaxation,” “pseudomyotonia and myokymia.”
- Gradual onset of the following:
  - Muscle stiffness at rest
  - Continuous twitching (fasciculation) or rippling (myokymia) of muscles
  - Cramps following voluntary contractions due to delay in muscle relaxation (pseudomyotonia); no percussion myotonia
- Pain is rare, but muscle aching is common.
- Muscle contraction is predominantly distal, but proximal and cranial muscles can be affected. Involvement can be focal and mimic focal dystonia.
- **On EMG, the hallmark is the presence of continuous motor unit activity that persists during sleep.** Fasciculations, myokymia, and neuromyotonia are present. Prolonged high-frequency after-discharges following nerve stimulation, voluntary contraction, or muscle percussion are characteristic. Nerve conduction study (NCS) can shows signs of associated peripheral neuropathy.
- The serum creatine phosphokinase (CPK) is increased.
- The condition may be inherited or sporadic. It can be isolated or associated with many types of inherited, inflammatory, or metabolic peripheral neuropathies.
Isaacs syndrome can also be paraneoplastic. A search for a remote neoplasm is required.

- Sporadic cases appear to be autoimmune in nature, most frequently associated with voltage-gated potassium ion channels (VGKCs).\textsuperscript{19,20}
- Symptomatic treatment is with carbamazepine and phenytoin.\textsuperscript{2} Focal neuromyotonia can be treated with injection of botulinum toxin.\textsuperscript{21} Plasmapheresis or intravenous immunoglobulin may be effective when the disorder is autoimmune.\textsuperscript{22,23}
- Neuromyotonia without malignancy or peripheral neuropathy may be relatively benign.

**Dystonia**

- Involuntary phasic or tonic muscle contractions lead to an irregular tremor or abnormal posture.
- Dystonia is discussed in Chapter 5.
- Although dystonia usually resolves with sleep, it may persist during sleep in severe cases.

**Tics**

- Involuntary, repetitive, nonrhythmic movement or vocalization preceded by an urge to perform the action and followed by a feeling of relief.
- Tics are discussed in Chapter 9.
- Although tics usually resolve with sleep, they may persist during sleep in severe cases.

**REFERENCES**


III

Psychiatric Approach to Movement Disorders
THE PSYCHIATRIC ASSESSMENT

INTRODUCTION

- Psychiatric disorders are frequently encountered in patients with movement disorders and often mask or exacerbate neurological complaints.
- Conducting a psychiatric interview can be a daunting task for many physicians, who are accustomed to a more “hands-on” approach to the patient examination.
- It is critical for every physician working with these patients to have the basic skills required to assess psychiatric symptoms in order to screen for and measure the severity of emotional distress.
- The longitudinal monitoring of psychiatric problems will assist in the treatment of the underlying neurological condition.

THE PSYCHIATRIC INTERVIEW

- The first step in any interview is to establish rapport and develop therapeutic alliance with the patient. This is achieved by a number of fundamental interventions:
  - Establish a comfortable environment with minimal distractions.
  - Display a receptive posture and face the patient.
  - Maintain eye contact.
  - Remain calm and avoid reaction.
  - Acknowledge and normalize (if appropriate) the patient’s concerns.
- In most cases, it is helpful to begin the visit by first discussing the “medical” or neurological concerns. These are typically easier for patients to discuss before more sensitive emotional or behavioral topics are approached.
The transition from gathering a “medical” history to obtaining a psychiatric history should be undertaken carefully and with empathy in order to allow the patient to experience the interviewer’s genuine interest. An abrupt or hasty “review of symptoms” of psychiatric disorders will yield only superficial data. Several ways to make this transition include the following:

- “It seems as if you have been struggling for some time with (medical condition); how does that make you feel?”
- “How did you cope when you discovered you had (medical condition)?”
- “Your quality of life seems to have been affected by the diagnosis of (medical condition). Can you tell me more about that?”
- “It is normal for people with (medical condition) to experience (psychological symptom). Have you experienced anything like this?”

External factors, such as a family history of psychosocial burden, play an influential role in the development of psychiatric conditions.

Table 11.1 lists sample questions that may be asked during a psychiatric assessment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 11.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sample Questions to Ask in the Psychiatric Assessment of a Patient With Parkinson’s Disease</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When was the onset of Parkinson’s disease (PD) symptoms? How was PD diagnosed?
- What type of motor symptoms developed, and how quickly did they progress?
- Which PD medications have been tried to date?
- Have there been any adverse medication side effects, such as hallucinations, psychosis, and/or impulse control difficulties?
- Are there frequent on–off fluctuations that trigger distress?
- How did the patient initially cope with the diagnosis?
- What is the level of acceptance of the diagnosis?
- What functional limitations have occurred as result of the motor symptoms?
- What is the current level of socialization?
- Are there any cognitive changes or concerns?
- How have family/occupational demands been affected by the symptoms?
- Are there feelings of being a burden to the family?
- Has the patient had any thoughts of not wanting to live? Suicidal thoughts?
- Is there a history of psychiatric difficulties before the diagnosis of PD?
- Has the patient ever received formal psychiatric care or treatment?
- What are the patient’s goals regarding treatment?
- Is the patient optimistic about his or her future?
Mental Status Examination

- The Mental Status Examination (MSE) is a comprehensive evaluation of the patient’s current state of psychiatric functioning, based on the examiner’s observations and responses directly elicited from the patient.
- Documenting a thorough and descriptive MSE is important in accurately capturing a patient’s current mental state, which will assist not only in the diagnosis and management of the underlying psychiatric condition but also in the longitudinal monitoring of a patient’s stability.
- The components of the MSE are listed in Table 11.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Domain</th>
<th>Description/Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Orientation</td>
<td>Intact, disoriented, confused</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attention</td>
<td>Alert, engaged, awake, drowsy, lethargic, sedated, sleepy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appearance</td>
<td>Well nourished, well groomed, well dressed, unkempt, malodorous, obese, tired, cachectic, pale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behavior</td>
<td>Gentle, confrontational, hostile, combative, passive, apathetic, restless, relaxed, casual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attitude</td>
<td>Agreeable, pleasant, cooperative, difficult, threatening, suspicious, shy, resigned, assertive, stubborn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speech</td>
<td>Appropriate rate and tone, underproductive, spontaneous, rapid, slow, overly inclusive, slurred, rambling, soft, incoherent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mood</td>
<td>Usually taken directly from the patient’s report (“depressed,” “anxious,” “irritated,” “angry,” “good”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affect</td>
<td>Usually derived from the examiner’s observations (mood-congruent, mood-incongruent, restricted, blunted, flat, labile, intense, bright, serious, animated, aloof, worried)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thought process/form</td>
<td>Linear, goal-directed, ruminative, circumstantial, loose, tangential, disorganized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thought content</td>
<td>Paranoid, delusional, grandiose, nihilistic, somatically preoccupied, religiously preoccupied, magical thinking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suicidality and homicidality</td>
<td>Presence of any suicidal/ homicidal thinking, intent, and/or plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insight and judgment</td>
<td>Intact, limited, good, fair, appropriate, impaired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory</td>
<td>Status of remote memory, recent memory, and immediate memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fund of knowledge</td>
<td>Appropriate, above average, below average, developmentally appropriate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impulse control</td>
<td>Intact, poor, unpredictable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Special Situations: Asking About Suicide

- As a result of the progressive impact of most movement disorders on functioning and quality of life, it is critical to ask about suicide at every visit.
- Be direct! Ask patients if they have thoughts about suicide. Practitioners should not fear that asking someone about suicide will trigger suicide.
- Although the word *suicide* can be dramatic and intense, using it nonjudgmentally and openly will make patients feel more comfortable discussing it.
- If suicidal ideation is endorsed, ask about the patient’s level of intent to act on these thoughts or whether there is a plan. Inquire about any access to weapons or a past history of suicide attempts or violence that may elevate the risk.
- Inquire about any protective factors that may prevent someone from acting on suicidal thoughts, such as children or spirituality/religion.
- Evidence of imminent intent and/or plan should trigger acute intervention and stabilization, such as psychiatric hospitalization.

Special Situations: Asking About Trauma

- Asking about *exposure* to trauma (including emotional, verbal, physical, and sexual abuse and domestic violence) should be part of an initial neurological evaluation; however, the clinician should avoid pushing the patient to recount details of the trauma (ie, giving a trauma narrative).
- Many patients may deny trauma altogether in an effort to avoid talking about the experience or to avoid triggering symptoms of posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD).
- Rarely, patients may volunteer too much detail about a history of trauma, not realizing the possibility for psychiatric decompensation, which may include the following:
  - Emotional dysregulation
  - Self-harm behaviors
  - Intrusive thoughts, memories, nightmares, or flashbacks
- If a patient begins to divulge an excessive trauma history too early in treatment, it is best to respectfully (while validating the patient’s honesty) change the course of the interview. It may be helpful to offer a referral to an experienced mental health provider to further address/manage the psychological trauma.
DIAGNOSIS

- Psychiatric diagnoses are defined by the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition (DSM-5)*. Tables 11.3 through 11.8 briefly highlight some of the psychiatric conditions that may be encountered in patients with movement disorders.

- It is important to keep in mind that many of the diagnostic descriptions/criteria may somewhat differ when seen in patients with neurological conditions. For example, patients with neurodegenerative disorders may display changes in somatic symptoms (eg, sleep, appetite, concentration, energy) that may be a product of the neurological condition and not necessarily a primary psychiatric condition.

### Table 11.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mood Disorders</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Major Depressive Disorder</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Two-week period of change in functioning with depressed mood and/or loss of interest in pleasurable activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Other symptoms: sleep disturbance, appetite change, concentration difficulties, fatigue, agitation/retardation, excessive guilt, and/or suicidal thinking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Persistent Depressive Disorder (Dysthymia)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Two-year period of depressed mood for more days than not (1 year for children)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Other symptoms: sleep disturbance, appetite change, concentration difficulties, fatigue, low self-esteem, feelings of hopelessness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bipolar Disorder (Mania/Hypomania)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Distinct period of elevated, expansive, or irritable mood (1 week for mania, 4 days for hypomania)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Common symptoms: inflated self-esteem, insomnia, pressured speech, racing thoughts, distractibility, and/or risk-taking behaviors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mood Disorder with Anxious Distress</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Criteria met for specific mood disorder (Major Depressive Disorder, Persistent Depressive Disorder, Bipolar Disorder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Accompanied by feeling keyed up, tense, and unusually restless; difficulty concentrating; having catastrophic fears and/or a feeling of losing control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disruptive Mood Dysregulation Disorder</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Severe recurrent temper outbursts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Grossly out of proportion to situation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Diagnosis made after age 6 or before age 18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11.4
**Anxiety Disorders**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Generalized Anxiety Disorder | - Six-month period of excessive anxiety or worry over multiple situations  
                               - Accompanying symptoms: restlessness, fatigue, mind going blank, muscle tension, irritability, and/or sleep disturbance |
| Social Anxiety            | - Marked fear about social situation(s)  
                               - Worry about scrutiny from others, being humiliated or embarrassed  
                               - Anxiety is out of proportion to threat of situation |
| Phobias                   | - Marked fear about specific object or situation  
                               - Anxiety is out of proportion to actual danger |
| Panic Disorder            | - Abrupt surge of intense fear or discomfort  
                               - Common symptoms: palpitations, sweating, shaking, sensations of shortness of breath, nausea, dizziness, fear of losing control or dying  
                               - Persistent concern about future attacks |
| Agoraphobia               | - Marked fear or anxiety about using public transportation, being in open/enclosed spaces, standing in line, being in a crowd, and/or being away from home alone |

### Table 11.5
**Obsessive–Compulsive, Impulse Control, and Addictive Disorders**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Obsessive–Compulsive Disorder         | - Intrusive thoughts, urges, or images (“obsession”)  
                               - Repetitive behaviors or mental acts performed to neutralize anxiety (“compulsion”)  
                               - Behaviors are time-consuming or functionally impairing |
| Obsessional Jealousy                  | - Nondelusional preoccupation with partner’s perceived infidelity |
| Intermittent Explosive Disorder       | - Recurrent behavioral outbursts (verbal or physical)  
                               - Grossly out of proportion to precipitator |
| Impulse Control Disorder, unspecified | - Failure to resist an impulse, drive, or temptation to perform an act that is harmful to the self or to others |
### Table 11.6  
**Psychotic, Trauma-Related, and Stressor-Related Disorders**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Schizophrenia**         | • Six-month presence of two or more of the following: delusions, hallucinations, disorganized speech, disorganized behavior, or diminished emotional expression  
• Functionally impairing symptoms |
| **Delusional Disorder**   | • One-month duration of delusional thinking  
• Outside the context of the delusion, behavior is not obviously bizarre, odd, and/or functionally impairing |
| **Posttraumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD)** | • Exposure to serious threat, injury, or violence  
• Combination of reexperiencing phenomena, avoidance behavior, negative alterations in mood or thought, and hyperarousal symptoms |
| **Adjustment Disorder**   | • Development of emotional or behavioral symptoms in response to stressor within 3 months of the onset of stressor |

### Table 11.7  
**Somatic Symptom Disorder and Related Disorders**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Somatic Symptom Disorder**                 | • Distressing somatic symptoms  
• Excessive thoughts, feelings, or behaviors related to somatic symptom  
• Disproportionate and persistent thoughts about the seriousness of somatic symptom  
• Persistently high levels of anxiety related to health or symptoms |
| **Illness Anxiety Disorder**                  | • Preoccupation with having a serious illness  
• Minimal, if any, evidence of somatic symptoms  
• High level of anxiety about health |
| **Functional Neurological Symptom Disorder (Conversion Disorder)** | • Symptom of altered motor or sensory function  
• Incompatibility between the symptom and recognized neurological condition  
• Symptom types: weakness/paralysis, abnormal movement, swallowing, speech, attacks/seizures, sensory loss, mixed symptoms |
### Table 11.8
**Neurodevelopmental and Neurocognitive Disorders**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder (ADHD)** | • Persistent pattern of inattention and/or hyperactivity–impulsivity  
• Inattention: careless mistakes, poor concentration, distractible, disorganized, forgetful  
• Hyperactivity/impulsivity: fidgety, restless, talkative, intrusive, impatient  
• Symptoms occur in more than one setting |
| **Mild Neurocognitive Disorder** | • Modest cognitive decline in one or more cognitive domains  
• Deficits do not interfere with independence |
| **Major Neurocognitive Disorder** | • Significant cognitive decline in one or more cognitive domains  
• Deficits interfere with independence |

### TREATMENT

See Tables 11.9 through 11.11.²,³

### Table 11.9
**Medications Commonly Used to Treat Depression and Anxiety**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic Name</th>
<th>Brand Name</th>
<th>Usual Total Daily Dosing Range⁶</th>
<th>Approved Indication(s)²</th>
<th>Off-Label Psychiatric Uses²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citalopram</td>
<td>Celexa</td>
<td>10–40 mg (doses &gt;20 mg contraindicated &gt;60 y/o)</td>
<td>Major Depression</td>
<td>Anxiety Disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escitalopram</td>
<td>Lexapro</td>
<td>5–20 mg</td>
<td>Major Depression, GAD</td>
<td>Anxiety Disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluoxetine</td>
<td>Prozac</td>
<td>10–80 mg</td>
<td>Major Depression, OCD, Panic Disorder</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluvoxamine</td>
<td>Luvox</td>
<td>25–300 mg</td>
<td>OCD</td>
<td>Major Depression, Anxiety Disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxetine</td>
<td>Paxil, Paxil CR</td>
<td>10–60 mg (CR: 12.5–50 mg)</td>
<td>Major Depression, OCD, PTSD, Anxiety Disorders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sertraline</td>
<td>Zoloft</td>
<td>25–200 mg</td>
<td>Major Depression, OCD, PTSD, Anxiety Disorders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

²,³ continued
### Table 11.9 (cont.)
Commonly Used to Treat Depression and Anxiety

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic Name</th>
<th>Brand Name</th>
<th>Usual Total Daily Dosing Range&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Approved Indication(s)&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Off-Label Psychiatric Uses&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Serotonin–norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desvenlafaxine</td>
<td>Pristiq</td>
<td>50–100 mg</td>
<td>Major Depression</td>
<td>Anxiety Disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duloxetine</td>
<td>Cymbalta</td>
<td>20–120 mg</td>
<td>Major Depression, GAD, neuropathic pain, fibromyalgia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venlafaxine</td>
<td>Effexor XR</td>
<td>37.5–300 mg</td>
<td>Major Depression, Anxiety Disorders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Benzodiazepines</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alprazolam</td>
<td>Xanax</td>
<td>0.25–8 mg</td>
<td>Anxiety Disorders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clonazepam</td>
<td>Klonopin</td>
<td>0.25–4 mg</td>
<td>Anxiety Disorders, seizures</td>
<td>Insomnia, sleep disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diazepam</td>
<td>Valium</td>
<td>2–40 mg</td>
<td>Anxiety Disorders, convulsive disorders, muscle spasms</td>
<td>Insomnia, sleep disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lorazepam</td>
<td>Ativan</td>
<td>0.5–8 mg</td>
<td>Anxiety Disorders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Others</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amitriptyline</td>
<td>Elavil</td>
<td>10–150 mg</td>
<td>Major Depression</td>
<td>Insomnia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bupropion</td>
<td>Wellbutrin SR, Wellbutrin XL</td>
<td>SR: 50–400 mg, XL: 150–450 mg</td>
<td>Major Depression</td>
<td>Apathy, inattention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buspirone</td>
<td>Buspar</td>
<td>15–60 mg</td>
<td>Anxiety Disorders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clomipramine</td>
<td>Anafranil</td>
<td>12.5–250 mg</td>
<td>OCD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gabapentin</td>
<td>Neurontin</td>
<td>100–2,400 mg</td>
<td>Partial seizures, post-herpetic neuralgia</td>
<td>Anxiety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirtazapine</td>
<td>Remeron</td>
<td>7.5–45 mg</td>
<td>Major Depression</td>
<td>Anxiety Disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trazodone</td>
<td>Desyrel</td>
<td>25–300 mg</td>
<td>Major Depression</td>
<td>Insomnia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vilazodone</td>
<td>Viibryd</td>
<td>10–40 mg</td>
<td>Major Depression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** GAD, Generalized Anxiety Disorder; OCD, Obsessive–Compulsive Disorder; PTSD, Posttraumatic Stress Disorder.

<sup>a</sup>Based on author experience in the population of patients with movement disorders.

**Source:** Adapted from Ref. 2: Physicians’ Desk Reference. 67th ed. Montvale, NJ: PDR Network; 2013.
### Table 11.10
Medications Commonly Used to Treat Irritability, Impulsivity, and Psychosis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic Name</th>
<th>Brand Name</th>
<th>Usual Total Daily Dosing Range (mg)</th>
<th>Approved Indication(s)</th>
<th>Off-Label Psychiatric Uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mood stabilizers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbamazepine</td>
<td>Tegretol</td>
<td>250–1,000</td>
<td>Epilepsy</td>
<td>Mania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamotrigine</td>
<td>Lamictal</td>
<td>12.5–300</td>
<td>Bipolar disorder, epilepsy</td>
<td>Irritable depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lithium</td>
<td>Lithobid</td>
<td>300–1,800</td>
<td>Mania</td>
<td>Impulse control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topiramate</td>
<td>Topamax</td>
<td>25–300</td>
<td>Epilepsy</td>
<td>Anxiety, irritability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valproate</td>
<td>Depakote</td>
<td>250–2,000</td>
<td>Mania, epilepsy</td>
<td>Impulse control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conventional (“typical”) antipsychotics (avoid in parkinsonian states!)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluphenazine</td>
<td>Prolixin</td>
<td>2.5–10 mg</td>
<td>Psychotic disorders</td>
<td>Aggressive behavior, impulse control, hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
<td>Haldol</td>
<td>0.5–10 mg</td>
<td>Schizophrenia, tic disorders</td>
<td>Aggressive behavior, impulse control, hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perphenazine</td>
<td>Trilafon</td>
<td>4–16 mg</td>
<td>Schizophrenia</td>
<td>Hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pimozide</td>
<td>Orap</td>
<td>1–8 mg</td>
<td>Tics in Tourette syndrome</td>
<td>Hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trifluoperazine</td>
<td>Stelazine</td>
<td>2–12 mg</td>
<td>Schizophrenia, acute anxiety</td>
<td>Hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Atypical antipsychotics (may worsen parkinsonism in parkinsonian disorders)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aripiprazole</td>
<td>Abilify</td>
<td>2–20 mg</td>
<td>Schizophrenia, acute mania, augmentation of depression</td>
<td>Impulse control, hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asenapine</td>
<td>Saphris</td>
<td>5–20 mg</td>
<td>Schizophrenia, acute mania</td>
<td>Hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clozapine</td>
<td>Clozaril</td>
<td>12.5–200 mg</td>
<td>Schizophrenia</td>
<td>Tardive dyskinesia, hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iloperidone</td>
<td>Fanapt</td>
<td>2–16 mg</td>
<td>Schizophrenia</td>
<td>Hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
### Table 11.10 (cont.)
Medications Commonly Used to Treat Irritability, Impulsivity, and Psychosis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic Name</th>
<th>Brand Name</th>
<th>Usual Total Daily Dosing Range</th>
<th>Approved Indication(s)</th>
<th>Off-Label Psychiatric Uses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lurasidone</td>
<td>Latuda</td>
<td>20–80 mg</td>
<td>Schizophrenia, bipolar depression</td>
<td>Hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olanzapine</td>
<td>Zyprexa</td>
<td>2.5–20 mg</td>
<td>Schizophrenia, acute mania</td>
<td>Aggressive behavior, impulse control, hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quetiapine</td>
<td>Seroquel</td>
<td>12.5–400 mg</td>
<td>Schizophrenia, acute mania</td>
<td>Insomnia, anxiety, hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risperidone</td>
<td>Risperdal</td>
<td>0.5–8 mg</td>
<td>Schizophrenia, acute mania</td>
<td>Aggressive behavior, impulse control, hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ziprasidone</td>
<td>Geodon</td>
<td>20–160 mg</td>
<td>Schizophrenia, acute mania</td>
<td>Hallucinations, delusions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aBased on author experience in the population of patients with movement disorders.


### Table 11.11
Medications Used to Treat Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder (ADHD)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic Name</th>
<th>Brand Name</th>
<th>Dose Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Adults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stimulants</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphetamine/ dextroamphetamine</td>
<td>Adderall</td>
<td>5–60 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adderall XR</td>
<td>5–60 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dextroamphetamine</td>
<td>Dexedrine Dextrostat</td>
<td>5–60 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dexedrine Spansule</td>
<td>5–60 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

continued
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic Name</th>
<th>Brand Name</th>
<th>Dose Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Adults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lisdexamfetamine</td>
<td>Vyvanse</td>
<td>20–70 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylphenidate</td>
<td>Ritalin</td>
<td>5–60 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Methylin</td>
<td>5–60 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metadate ER</td>
<td>20–60 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Methylin ER</td>
<td>20–60 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ritalin SR</td>
<td>20–60 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metadata CD</td>
<td>20–60 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ritalin LA</td>
<td>20–60 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Concerta</td>
<td>18–72 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Daytrana transdermal patch</td>
<td>10–30 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Quilliant oral solution</td>
<td>20–60 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dexmethylphenidate</td>
<td>Focalin</td>
<td>5–20 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Focalin XR</td>
<td>5–40 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nonstimulant medications**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Guanfacine&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Tenex</td>
<td>Not FDA-approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.5 mg per dose up to 2 mg/d (27–40 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.5–1 mg per dose up to 3 mg/d (40.5–45 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 mg per dose up to 4 mg/d (&gt; 45 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Intuniv</td>
<td>Not FDA-approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1–4 mg (&gt; 6 y/o)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clonidine</td>
<td>Catapres</td>
<td>Not FDA-approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.003–0.005 mg/kg/d–0.1 mg per dose up to 0.3 mg/d (27–45 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.003–0.005 mg/kg/d–0.1 mg per dose up to 0.3 mg/d (&gt; 45 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kapvay</td>
<td>Not FDA-approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.1–0.4 mg (&gt; 6 y/o)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*continued*
### REFERENCES


---

**Table 11.11 (cont.)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic Name</th>
<th>Brand Name</th>
<th>Adults</th>
<th>Children and Adolescents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atomoxetine</td>
<td>Strattera</td>
<td>10–100 mg</td>
<td>0.5–1.4 mg/kg (&gt; 6 y/o)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modafinil(^a)</td>
<td>Provigil</td>
<td>100–400 mg</td>
<td>Not FDA-approved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Based on author experience in the population of patients with movement disorders.

PSYCHIATRIC ISSUES IN PARKINSON’S DISEASE

INTRODUCTION

- Psychiatric complications associated with Parkinson’s disease (PD) are common. They represent a special challenge to the practitioner because many of the psychiatric syndromes do not merely co-occur with PD but often are predictable consequences of responsible treatment of the underlying neurological condition.¹

- Cavalier treatment of the psychiatric complications may result in poor control of motor symptoms, increased dysfunction, and decreased quality of life, particularly in late or burdensome disease.

- Some psychiatric syndromes in PD are associated with the disease itself:
  - Depression and anxiety
  - Cognitive impairment
  - Apathy

- Other psychiatric symptoms may be associated with the treatment of PD:
  - Impulse control disorders
  - Psychosis
  - Irritability/agitation/dysphoria (eg, “off” periods, treatment withdrawal)

- Dopaminergic circuits in the mesolimbic and mesocortical areas play important roles in reward, affective control, and impulsivity. Disruption of these circuits by cell loss or therapy may therefore have tremendous effects on behavior, affect, personality, and thought content.²
Nonmotor-related symptoms of PD are prominent and an important target of therapy. Sixty-seven percent of such symptoms are related to the psychiatric domain (anxiety in 56%, insomnia in 37%, poor concentration in 31%, and major depression in 22.5%).

**EXAMINATION OF THE PATIENT**

An evaluation of the patient with PD starts with a careful examination of the patient’s reported psychiatric symptoms and a complete mental status examination (see Chapter 11).

- Careful elucidation of the patient’s psychiatric symptoms and performance on the mental status examination will guide the diagnosis (Table 12.1).

- A dramatic or unexpected worsening of motor control after the addition of a neuroleptic medication should prompt adjustment of the dose, consideration of an alternative, or optimization of antiparkinsonian medications.

**DEPRESSION AND ANXIETY**

- The incidence of depression and anxiety is greater in patients with PD than in age-matched controls. Depression and anxiety are the result of complex psychological and neurobiological factors.

- The psychiatric burden is not thought to stem solely from the functional decline associated with progressive motor dysfunction or the diagnosis of PD itself.

- Depression in PD follows a bimodal distribution, with the psychiatric burden peaking around the time of symptom onset/diagnosis and with the loss of independence in late disease.

- Fortunately, the depression in PD is often mild.
  - However, several core and associated symptoms of depression (eg, fatigue, apathy, sleep disruption, psychomotor retardation, weight loss) are intrinsic to PD, so that the diagnosis can be tricky at times.
  - There have been isolated reports of increased suicidality among patients who underwent deep brain stimulation surgery of the subthalamic nucleus, although a direct correlation remains unclear.

- The noradrenergic, dopaminergic, and serotonergic pathways are thought to be implicated in depression in PD.
Generalized anxiety disorder, panic disorder, social phobia, phobic disorder, agoraphobia, and obsessive–compulsive disorder (OCD) have all been described in PD.

Just like depression, anxiety can be part of the “premotor” manifestations of PD, and it can be another nonmotor manifestation of wearing off.

### Treatment of Depression and Anxiety

- Depression in patients with PD should be a target of focused therapy because studies have shown that depression in this population is a major determinant of quality of life. The modality of treatment should be tailored to the severity of the depressive symptoms.

- For mild depression associated with PD, nonpharmacologic approaches may be most indicated. These include the following:
  - Supportive psychotherapy
  - Cognitive behavioral therapy

- In moderate to more advanced depression, pharmacotherapy is often indicated.

- Certain phenomena of the “off period,” such as paroxysmal anxiety and panic, may not respond well to antidepressant and anxiolytic therapy but can respond to dopaminergic adjustments that minimize wearing-off periods.

### Table 12.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Associated Phenomena</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low mood, anhedonia, hopelessness</td>
<td>Depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lack of motivation and initiative</td>
<td>Apathy, abulia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impairment in planning/attention, poor orientation, memory,</td>
<td>Executive dysfunction/dementia of Parkinson’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behavioral disturbances</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early or prominent visual hallucinosis</td>
<td>Lewy body dementia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frank psychosis</td>
<td>Dementia, medication-induced effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypersexuality, poor impulse control, disinhibition</td>
<td>Dopamine dysregulation syndrome, frontal lobe dysfunction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The strongest evidence for the treatment of depression in PD has been reported with the tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs). However, these agents may be poorly tolerated because of their anticholinergic effects and arrhythmogenic properties, particularly at higher doses.

Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) may mitigate symptoms of depression and anxiety in patients with PD, with minimal worsening of movement symptoms.

In a recent study examining venlafaxine XR and paroxetine in depression in PD, equal efficacy was found between the two classes. This was the largest randomized, placebo-controlled clinical trial of commonly used antidepressant medications for the treatment of depression in PD, had the longest observation period, and was the first to evaluate a serotonin–norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor (SNRI).

When pharmacotherapy has been ineffective or poorly tolerated, or when depression in PD is severe, electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) and transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS) may be helpful, although the evidence of efficacy for TMS in PD is still being investigated.

It is important to mention that certain PD medications, such as dopamine agonists and monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors, have demonstrated partial antidepressant effects in patients with PD, even when they are not being used for their prokinetic properties. However, they are not typically used as the sole treatment for depression in PD.

There is a remarkable paucity of randomized clinical trials examining the pharmacologic management of anxiety in PD. However, based on clinical experience, the agents that are effective in the treatment of primary anxiety disorders (eg, SSRIs and benzodiazepines) also appear to be effective in PD-related anxiety.

Apathy

Just as the symptoms of depression are sometimes hard to distinguish from those of PD itself (ie, masked facies, psychomotor slowing, poor appetite), differentiating among depression, the symptoms of PD, and apathy may be challenging.

Apathy is associated with symptoms of poor motivation and initiative, without depressed mood, anhedonia, or hopelessness.

Apathy can be part of a depressive syndrome or occur on its own.

Apathy appears to correlate well with more severe depression and greater functional impairment in patients with PD, and it may be a predictor of dementia in the absence of depression.
Treatment of Apathy

- There is also a paucity of randomized clinical trials examining the treatment of apathy in PD.
- The antidepressants commonly used to treat depression in PD, such as SSRIs, are generally ineffective treatment options for apathy.
- Occasionally, optimization of the treatment of motor symptoms with dopamine agonists and levodopa to maximize “on” states may alleviate apathy.
- Psychostimulants such as amphetamine salts and methylphenidate may be effective in the treatment of apathy, although the response is often incomplete and variable.
- Bupropion may also show some benefit, with a minimal risk for worsening movement symptoms.

COGNITIVE IMPAIRMENT

- Subtle cognitive impairment, particularly with frontal lobe features in the domains of executive function and planning, is frequently associated with PD and may appear early in the course. It may include less severe (although clear) memory difficulties and visuospatial difficulties.
- Frank dementia, on the other hand, is less commonly associated with PD and accounts for approximately 10% to 20% of cases. One large, longitudinal epidemiologic study reported that approximately 30% of nondemented patients with PD developed dementia within 4 years, and 80% after 8 years.
- Reported risk factors for the development of dementia in PD include the following:
  - Preexisting cognitive impairment
  - Peripheral vascular disease (PVD)
  - Hypertension
  - Older age
  - Greater disease burden
  - Hallucinations
- The development of cognitive impairment and, in particular, frank dementia is often associated with a decline in mental status and psychosis. These are poor prognostic indicators and predict a greater likelihood of nursing home admission and early mortality.
The presence of dementia and psychosis is perhaps the greatest limiting factor in the optimal use of antiparkinsonian agents.

Treatment of Cognitive Disorders

The development of cognitive impairment in a patient being treated for PD should prompt a careful evaluation of the patient’s medical status and any underlying factors (systemic or focal infections, respiratory insufficiency, metabolic factors, changes to the environment, and offending medications, such as sedatives and anticholinergic agents).

Antiparkinsonian medications often require adjustment in this context because patients with cognitive decline and dementia are more sensitive to their side effects (ie, anticholinergic agents, dopamine agonists).

- Every attempt should be made to simplify anti-PD medications by tapering “adjunctive medications” (eg, anticholinergics, MAO-B inhibitors, and amantadine, followed by dopamine agonists and catechol O-methyltransferase [COMT] inhibitors if necessary) (Table 12.2).

- Patients who have PD with dementia may ultimately be most effectively managed on levodopa alone.

The cholinesterase inhibitors are indicated for mild to moderate dementia in PD, and the efficacy data are generally considered robust, although gastrointestinal side effects may limit their use.

Memantine has shown a small beneficial effect over placebo and appears to be well tolerated in this context.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 12.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Order of Taper or Elimination of Antiparkinsonian Medications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Anticholinergic agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Amantadine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Dopamine agonists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Catechol O-methyltransferase (COMT) inhibitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Levodopa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PSYCHOSIS

- Hallucinations are thought to be the most common treatment-related psychiatric complication of PD.
  - About 50% of patients with PD will develop at least one psychotic episode.
  - In several cross-sectional epidemiologic studies, 20% to 40% of patients with PD have been found to have hallucinations.

- Risk factors for the development of hallucinations include a combination of extrinsic and intrinsic factors, such as cognitive impairment, older age, longer duration of disease, medication effects, delirium, environmental changes, and/or poor visual acuity.¹⁰

- Most hallucinations associated with PD are visual, in stark contrast to those associated with primary psychotic disorders like schizophrenia, wherein auditory hallucinations are much more prominent. Furthermore, insight is often preserved early on, when cognitive functioning is usually intact.

- Visual hallucinations tend to be formed images of a person or animal, although other objects and vivid scenes are possible. “Minor” hallucinations, such as brief perceptual disturbances in the peripheral visual field, are also sometimes reported.

- Delusions are fixed, false beliefs. They occur in patients who have PD with cognitive decline (and to a lesser degree in those without dementia). The delusions are often persecutory in nature, although they may sometimes involve themes of jealousy and infidelity.

- The development of PD psychosis is one of the greatest risk factors for long-term care placement.
  - Moreover, patients living in long-term care settings who have PD with psychosis have been found to have a higher mortality rate than do those without psychosis.

Treatment of Psychosis

- When psychotic symptoms are mild, nontthreatening, and/or when insight is relatively preserved, education and reassurance may often be used in favor of pharmacologic treatment. When insight is lost or delusions become threatening, treatment is indicated, and an assessment of safety is paramount.

- Psychosis in association with fluctuations in the sensorium should prompt a careful evaluation of underlying factors associated with delirium, and efforts should be made to eliminate them.
Tapering or elimination of antiparkinsonian medications, starting with the most recently added medications, is a first step. Usually, those most likely to contribute to confusion are tapered first (see Table 12.2). If at all possible, patients with PD who are psychotic should be on levodopa alone for their motor symptoms.

When psychotic symptoms persist despite the careful elimination of antiparkinsonian medications (or when such elimination is limited by worsening motor symptoms), neuroleptic medications are often indicated.

Low-potency second-generation (ie, “atypical”) antipsychotic medications like quetiapine and clozapine may be of substantial benefit.9

Because of the possibility that clozapine will cause life-threatening agranulocytosis (in fewer than 1% of patients using it), patients require monitoring of the complete blood cell count weekly for the first 6 months, every other week for the next 6 months, and monthly thereafter.

Clozapine should be stopped immediately when the absolute neutrophil count is below 1,500/mm³ and the white blood cell count is below 3,000/mm³.

Higher-potency second-generation agents (ie, risperidone and olanzapine) and first-generation (“typical”) antipsychotics should be avoided when possible because they are often associated with unacceptable motor-related side effects in patients who have PD and dementia with Lewy bodies (DLB), including worsening parkinsonism and acute dystonia.

There are insufficient data on the safety of the newer atypical antipsychotic medications in patients with PD.

More importantly, all antipsychotic medications carry a black box warning regarding increased mortality, especially when they are used in elderly persons with cognitive impairment.

Pimavanserin, a nonantipsychotic agent that works on serotonin (5-HT) 2A receptors, has been reported in a well-designed randomized clinical trial to mitigate psychosis in PD without worsening its motor symptoms.

**IMPULSE CONTROL DISORDERS**

The impulse control disorders (ICDs) are a family of neuropsychiatric conditions whose central feature is the uncontrollable need to engage in repetitive behaviors, often to a maladaptive degree.

It is critical to discover and treat ICDs and compulsive behaviors because their consequences for patients and families may be devastating.
Because of their intimate relationship with dopamine replacement therapy, ICDs may represent a tremendous burden in and of themselves and may also limit the optimal control of motor symptoms, leading to poorer functional outcomes and a greater overall disease burden.

The four most prominent treatment-associated ICDs include compulsive gambling, hypersexuality, binge eating, and uncontrollable spending. Table 12.3 sets forth some impulse control and compulsive behaviors.

ICDs are found in almost 14% of patients being treated for PD, with pathologic gambling and compulsive spending accounting for the largest percentage of cases.11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impulse Control Disorders</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Problem gambling</td>
<td>Excessive or new lottery ticket buying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Excessive or new casino gambling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Risky or new investment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypersexuality</td>
<td>Excessive or new use of pornography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compulsive masturbation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Novel or inappropriate sexual demands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exhibitionism, solicitation of prostitution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binge eating</td>
<td>Excessive food intake in one sitting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Craving for sweets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive spending</td>
<td>Drive to obtain unneeded items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reckless generosity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compulsive Behaviors</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hobbyism</td>
<td>Intensive attention to a hobby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punding</td>
<td>Compulsive need to engage in meaningless rituals, such as assembling and disassembling objects, arranging and rearranging items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walk-a-bout</td>
<td>Aimless or nonpurposeful walking for extended periods of time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dopamine dysregulation syndrome</td>
<td>A dependence-like overuse of dopaminergic medications beyond the need to control motor symptoms despite side effects</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ICDs are most prominent in patients taking dopamine agonists such as pramipexole and ropinirole, and they may be enhanced when any of these is taken in conjunction with levodopa.

Levodopa therapy alone is generally not associated with an increase in ICDs except at very high doses. However, levodopa is commonly associated with the related dopamine dysregulation syndrome (see below).

Patients are often unwilling to discuss the occurrence of or increased urge to engage in impulsive behaviors such as hypersexuality and unrestrained gambling (although an attentive spouse or family member may bring it to the physician’s attention).

Certain ICDs may be idiosyncratic and specific to a particular patient’s tendencies (eg, kleptomania, reckless generosity, hoarding) and therefore difficult to uncover with general screening. This may be particularly true of “hobbyism” and other dopamine dysregulation disorders.

Dopamine dysregulation syndrome is characterized by intense cravings for dopaminergic agents (particularly levodopa) and often present with addictive behaviors and tendencies.

**Treatment of Impulse Control Disorders and Compulsive Behaviors**

Patients with preexisting or comorbid ICDs, as well as those with substance use disorders (eg, alcohol or opiate dependence or abuse), OCD, or tic disorders, are probably at a greater risk for the development of treatment-related ICDs and compulsive behaviors.

Either dopamine agonists should be avoided in these patients, if possible, or the patients should be closely monitored to detect and avoid the occurrence of ICDs.

In most patients, tapering and/or discontinuing dopamine agonist agents will mitigate or eliminate ICDs and compulsive behaviors.

Generally, dopamine agonist therapy should be tapered slowly to reduce the risk for dopamine agonist withdrawal symptoms, or DAWS (eg, irritability, agitation, and dysphoria). Transition to levodopa is generally indicated in these situations.

A patient with dopamine dysregulation syndrome may require transition from levodopa to a dopamine agonist.12

When dysregulated behaviors (impulsive, compulsive, and/or addictive tendencies) persist despite the elimination of dopaminergic agents, there is little evidence available for management. Anecdotal reports have demonstrated variable benefit from atypical antipsychotics, naltrexone, and/or mood stabilizers.
REFERENCES

INTRODUCTION

- Huntington’s disease (HD) is a neuropsychiatric disorder characterized by impairments in movement, emotional regulation, and cognitive functioning.
- Psychiatric disorders are a frequently encountered and longitudinal problem in HD.\(^1,2\)
- The psychiatric and cognitive symptoms may often be more challenging to manage than the movement disorder itself and lead to a greater decline in quality of life for both patients and caregivers.\(^3\)
- The average age at the onset of HD is typically identified as 40 years; however, this refers to the emergence of physical deficits (ie, chorea). In many patients with HD, the psychiatric and cognitive deficits present much earlier.
- There are complicated family dynamics that are important to consider in evaluating the psychiatric vulnerability of any patient with HD.
- Dysexecutive syndrome in HD is a complex group of behaviors resulting from the manifestation of psychiatric and cognitive deficits (Figure 13.1).

GENETIC TESTING

- Genetic counseling is a critical component of the genetic testing process.
- All patients should ideally be seen by a mental health provider before testing, to be evaluated for their emotional and cognitive capacity to receive and understand the results of genetic testing.
- Predictive testing for minors is not routinely recommended.
- Common acute emotional reactions associated with a positive test result include sadness, anger, anxiety, agitation, shock, tearfulness, and hopelessness.
Family dynamics may become altered by a positive or negative test result. For example, parents may feel guilt about passing the gene on to their offspring, children with a positive gene may display anger toward the parent or an unaffected sibling, and unaffected individuals may experience relief and gratitude about not passing the gene on to subsequent generations.

**COGNITIVE DYSFUNCTION**

- Cognitive deficits usually begin in a gradual fashion, initially affecting the speed of cognitive processing and compromising executive functions, such as organization, planning, attention, and multitasking. Visuospatial dysfunction, decline in working memory, and learning impairments are other frequently seen cognitive deficits.\(^4\)

- Inattention and distractibility can be accentuated by motor abnormalities, such as restlessness and chorea.

- Cortical impairments, such as aphasia, amnesia, and agnosia, are rarely seen in HD. Language comprehension also remains fairly unaffected.

- Cognitive inflexibility, inability to appreciate negative consequences, lack of self-awareness, and failure to read social cues and facial expressions are other features that may be encountered in HD and contribute to abnormal behavioral reactions.\(^5\)

- Cognitive dysfunction may be the consequence of or exacerbated by overlapping psychiatric symptoms, such as depression and anxiety, or it may be the result of treatment-related adverse effects (ie, sedation).

- The Montreal Cognitive Assessment (MOCA) is a useful screening instrument in detecting HD-related cognitive changes. Deficits in the serial 7s exercise of the Mini-Mental Status Examination (MMSE) are another change seen in early HD.
Treatment of Cognitive Dysfunction

- There are no significant pharmacologic interventions to change the course of cognitive decline.

- Efforts should be directed at reducing any medications that may be contributory while incorporating interventions that center around environmental adjustments, such as these:
  - Minimizing distractions
  - Implementing routines and structure
  - Creating reminder lists
  - Allowing extended time to complete tasks

DEPRESSION AND APATHY

- The estimated lifetime prevalence of depression in HD is 30% to 70%.

- Patients are susceptible to depression at any point in the course of HD, even if the symptoms are relatively mild and cause minimal functional impairment. As in other degenerative conditions, hopelessness may also surface after a significant change in quality of life (ie, loss of job, loss of driving privileges, increased falls).

- Tetrabenazine, an approved treatment for chorea in HD, carries a boxed warning regarding its propensity to cause depression and suicidal thinking.

- Suicide rates are significantly higher in patients with HD than in the general population; therefore, acute changes in mood and/or an increase in hopelessness should be taken seriously, trigger an immediate assessment, and never be considered a normal reaction.

- Physicians should be aware of how many at-risk children a patient may have and be watchful for changes in mood if these children elect to undergo genetic testing. A positive test result may trigger guilt, self-directed anger, and/or thoughts of self-harm in the affected parent.

- Apathy, defined as a loss of motivation or initiation, appears to worsen with disease progression. Apathy is typically associated with a neutral mood, although it can occur in a patient with depression, which will accentuate the loss of motivation and lack of spontaneity.

- Depression may be difficult to detect or evaluate later in the disease process because of the presence of apathy and impairments in speech and/or cognition. Severe depression may be complicated by hallucinations and delusions.
Treatment of Depression and Apathy

- The primary treatment for depression includes the commonly prescribed first-line antidepressants used in the general population, such as selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), in combination with supportive psychotherapy early in the disease (or pre-manifestation stages), when the ability to communicate is still preserved.

- Most of the antidepressants commonly prescribed in the general population are effective and well tolerated in HD.

- Sedating antidepressants, such as mirtazapine and trazodone, may be useful in the management of depression-related insomnia.

- Adjustments in the doses of fluoxetine and paroxetine should be made cautiously in patients taking tetrabenazine because the former agents are potent inhibitors of cytochrome P450 (CYP) 2D6 and may inadvertently cause fluctuations in tetrabenazine levels.

- Bupropion may be worthwhile in those with significant anhedonia, psychomotor retardation, and/or apathy for its clinically activating effects. Regarding the same point, its stimulating effects may exacerbate irritability or insomnia.

- Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) should be used with caution in HD because of its propensity to cause anticholinergic effects and therefore exacerbate cognitive deficits. Clomipramine may be necessary for resistant cases of obsessive worry or perseveration. In those exhibiting significant impulsivity and/or a high risk for suicide, TCAs should be avoided.

- Patients taking monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors must adhere strictly to a tyramine-free diet, so that the use of these agents in patients with cognitive deficits may be precluded.

- Psychostimulants may be a helpful augmentation strategy to improve motivation in patients with apathy and/or depression.

- Electroconvulsive therapy may be used in severe cases, particularly patients who have a psychotic depression or display significant psychomotor retardation that may compromise nutritional status.7

ANXIETY AND PERSEVERATION

- Anxiety may be an early manifestation in HD as individuals cope with the uncertainty of their gene status and anticipate future illness. As physical symptoms surface, anxiety may be a reaction to changes in changes in efficiency, functionality, and quality of life.
Obsessive and/or compulsive behavior (OCB) is frequently observed in HD, although it may not present as the classic “obsessive–compulsive disorder” seen in the general population. For example, patients typically have obsessive worry and compulsive tendencies that may not be linked (ie, behaviors are not necessarily conducted to mitigate an obsession).

Perseveration, or fixation on the same thought or behavior, may be exacerbated by anxiety. Perseverative tendencies may be difficult to distinguish from OCB, but the affected individual commonly appears to have trouble disengaging from a recently completed activity or conversation (ie, is “stuck”).

**Treatment of Anxiety and Perseveration**

- Anxiety is primarily treated with commonly prescribed first-line anxiolytics for maintenance, such as SSRIs or serotonin–norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs).
- Most of the antidepressants commonly prescribed in the general population have anxiolytic properties. They are well tolerated in patients with HD and useful in the management of pervasive anxiety complaints.
- Clomipramine may be a useful intervention for OCB if patients are unresponsive to initial treatment.
- Discrete episodes or symptoms of anxiety, such as panic attacks, intermittent restlessness, obsessive worry, and/or perseveration, may be effectively managed with low-dose benzodiazepines on an as-needed basis. Those benzodiazepines with a relatively short half-life will have fewer cumulative cognitive effects than agents with a longer half-life.
- Benzodiazepines may also be ideal for those who exhibit anxiety-induced worsening of their movement disorder (ie, chorea, dystonia, rigidity).
- For more severe or resistant cases, augmentation with low-dose atypical antipsychotics may be helpful.
- The ability to incorporate behavioral strategies will depend on the patient’s cognitive status.

**Mania, Irritability, and Impulsivity**

- Mania has been reported to occur in patients with HD, but at a relatively lower rate than depression. Commonly observed manic symptoms (more likely as a result of frontal lobe dysfunction) include insomnia, distractibility, impulsivity, irritable mood, and risk-taking behaviors, such as substance abuse and hypersexuality.
Substance abuse may exacerbate mood disorders, impulsivity, and cognitive deficits, and therefore every patient with HD should be screened for substance abuse.

Manic symptoms of grandiosity, an expansive or elated mood, and tangentiality are less frequently observed in HD.

Impulsivity is a major contributor to falls, accidents, and poor decision making, which may result in significant morbidity and mortality.

Irritability is a frequently encountered problem in HD, usually resulting from cognitive compromise, that affects frustration tolerance and the ability to appreciate another person’s point of view.

Impulsivity and irritability may lead to verbal or physical aggression, prompting the need for additional caregiver assistance and/or nursing home placement.

Treatment of Mania, Irritability, and Impulsivity

- SSRIs and antipsychotics are effective initial interventions for reducing psychomotor agitation and aggression; they also improve impulse control and frustration tolerance.9
- Identifying and anticipating environmental triggers, minimizing unexpected schedule changes, and reducing confrontation may be helpful caregiver strategies to diffuse irritability and avoid aggression.
- Anticonvulsants, such as valproic acid, may be effective in the management of mood lability, mania, irritability, and impulsivity, as well as in the management of certain comorbid conditions, such as myoclonus and seizures, which are seen in juvenile HD.10
- Lithium has been shown to be effective in the management of impulsivity in persons without HD. The evidence of its effectiveness in HD, however, is limited.

PSYCHOSIS

- Psychosis, defined as a loss of touch with reality, may sometimes be observed in patients with HD. Symptoms may consist of perceptual disturbances (ie, hallucinations) and/or delusional thinking, such as paranoia.
- Disorganized thoughts, such as thought blocking, or erratic behavior may be an indication of underlying psychosis and may contribute to accidents and injury.
- An acute change in behavior or thought process should prompt investigations for a medical etiology, such as infection or metabolic derangements.
Visual hallucinations are typically more indicative of an acute physiologic disturbance than of HD psychosis.

**Treatment of Psychosis**

- See Figure 13.2 for an overview of the treatment approach to the psychiatric manifestations of HD.
- Typical and atypical antipsychotics are the mainstay of treatment. The choice depends on the presence and extent of other, accompanying motor and nonmotor symptoms.

![Figure 13.2](image_url)

**Figure 13.2**
Summary of the treatment approach in Huntington’s disease.
Antipsychotic agents are widely used for both the motor and nonmotor symptoms of HD.\textsuperscript{11}

Although conventional antipsychotics (ie, haloperidol) have long been used in the management of chorea in HD, atypical antipsychotics have gained popularity because of their better tolerability and their capacity to control, or augment the treatment of, a spectrum of psychiatric disturbances.

Antipsychotics are useful not only for the management of positive psychiatric symptoms, such as delusions and hallucinations, but also for the control of irritability and aggression.\textsuperscript{9}

For patients requiring a comprehensive treatment strategy targeting chorea, in addition to psychiatric and/or behavioral management, risperidone or olanzapine may be an ideal initial agent of choice.\textsuperscript{10}

High-potency antipsychotics should be avoided in those exhibiting evidence of parkinsonism or other hypokinetic movements, usually appreciated in later stages. Quetiapine and clozapine may be better choices in these circumstances.

\textbf{REFERENCES}

PSYCHIATRIC ISSUES IN TOURETTE SYNDROME

INTRODUCTION

- Tourette syndrome (TS) is considered to be a neuropsychiatric illness. Studies have shown that up to 88% of individuals display psychiatric comorbidity or psychopathology. Up to 36% have more than one psychiatric comorbidity.

- The presence of a psychiatric comorbidity correlates with a worse prognosis, exposure to more medications, and a greater degree of functional impairment.

- The age of onset of motor or phonic tics coincides with the onset of the most common psychiatric comorbidities, such as obsessive–compulsive disorder (OCD) and attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD).

- It is commonly thought that these psychiatric illnesses share neural circuitry with tic disorders.

- The severity of the symptoms associated with tics can be influenced by environmental changes or stresses.

- Effectively managing a tic disorder includes understanding the psychiatric/psychological aspects that are commonly seen with this illness.

TICS AND BEHAVIOR

- Tics themselves are categorized as either motor or vocal manifestations. Their characteristics include fluctuating symptomatology over time, suppressibility followed by rebound, suggestibility, and they are preceded by premonitory sensations. Multiple psychiatric symptoms can present in a similar manner (Table 14.1).
### Table 14.1
Psychiatric Differential Diagnosis for Tics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Movement Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Corresponding Illnesses in Psychiatry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Stereotypy    | Repetitive, simple movements that can be voluntarily suppressed. Often rhythmic and usually confined to upper extremity. There is no premonitory urge, but movements occur with stress or excitement. | Waving  
Rocking back and forth  
Hand flapping  
Punding | • Autism spectrum disorders  
• Intellectual disabilities  
• Stereotypic movement disorder  
• Schizophrenia  
• Frontotemporal dementia  
• Amphetamine or methamphetamine use in healthy children throughout preschool years |
| Dystonia (secondary) | Involuntary sustained or intermittent muscle contractions resulting in twisting or repetitive movements. | Torticollis  
Buccolingual crisis  
Oculogyric crisis  
Facial grimacing | Acute dystonia encountered after exposure to high-potency neuroleptics in  
• Schizophrenia  
• Autism spectrum disorders |
| Compulsions   | Persistent and repetitive acts that do not lead to reward or pleasure. Aimed at reducing internal psychic stress or urges. They can be simple or complex rituals including both movements and vocalizations. | Rituals that are bizarre in nature, occur at inappropriate times, or are of inappropriate duration, such as repetitive hand washing or checking locks; excessive hoarding, eating, picking, counting, or sexualized behaviors | • Obsessive–compulsive disorder  
• Paraphilias  
• Impulse control disorders |
| Mannerisms    | Idiosyncratic or peculiar movements or vocalizations. They are not consciously produced and are suppressible without psychic anxiety. | Snapping knuckles  
Tapping a foot  
Greeting everyone with a handshake | Autism |
| Akathisia     | Unpleasant sensation of internal restlessness manifesting as an inability to remain still. | Pacing  
Repetitive limb shaking | • Medication-induced  
• Serotonin syndrome |
| Psychogenic movements | Presentation can be similar to that of biological tics. Do not occur during sleep or relaxation but worsen with stress. | Repetitive movements or vocalizations similar to tics | • Somatoform disorders  
• Reactions to emotional stress  
• Can occur along with biological tic disorders |
Distinguishing between tics and other motor or vocal symptoms may be difficult, but a careful history of the movements or vocalizations may aid the clinician in distinguishing one from another.\(^3\)

Persons with tic disorders may display behavioral symptoms even without psychiatric comorbidities, such as hyperarousal states manifesting as anxiety, hyperactivity, and even self-injurious behaviors.

**PSYCHIATRIC COMORBIDITIES**

**Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder**

ADHD is a neurobehavioral disorder that affects 3% to 9% of children. It is characterized by symptoms of hyperactivity, impulsivity, and inattention.

Children can exhibit symptoms of either inattention or hyperactivity, or they can meet the criteria for both. Symptoms must be present before the age of 11 years\(^4\) and must affect the individual in multiple settings (home, school, work, day care).

The frequency of ADHD in clinic samples of children with tic disorders is estimated at 50% to 70%\(^1\). Conversely, up to 20% of children with ADHD present with a comorbid tic disorder.

Studies suggest that the combination of a tic disorder plus ADHD results in greater overall impairment than either a tic disorder or ADHD alone.

A comprehensive treatment program for a patient with a tic disorder and comorbid ADHD should include cognitive behavioral therapy plus psychoeducational and psychosocial interventions, along with a consideration of medications.

There is strong evidence to support the use of habit reversal training in individuals with TS and comorbid ADHD, and such training should be considered before and along with medication management.

**TREATMENT OF ATTENTION-DEFICIT/HYPERACTIVITY DISORDER**

Stimulants (methylphenidate, dexamphetamine, dextroamphetamine, lisdexamfetamine, and mixed amphetamine salts) are widely recognized as first-line pharmacologic treatments of ADHD.

Multiple studies comparing the efficacy of stimulants have shown few differences between methylphenidate and mixed amphetamine salt preparations.

Available evidence indicates that 70% of children with ADHD will show a positive response to a stimulant trial and that approximately half of the nonresponders will show a positive response to a trial of an alternative stimulant.
Other medications used for the treatment of ADHD include alpha-2-adrenoceptor agonists, atomoxetine, bupropion, and tricyclic antidepressants.

Stimulants, alpha-2-adrenoceptor agonists, atomoxetine, and partial dopamine agonists have been studied in individuals with comorbid tic disorders and ADHD. Stimulants may produce a transient worsening of tics upon initiation of the medication.

However, recent well-designed, controlled clinical trials have not indicated chronic exacerbation of tics in persons treated with stimulants.\(^5,6\)

Alpha-2-adrenoceptor agonists activate presynaptic autoreceptors in the locus ceruleus and reduce norepinephrine release and turnover. These medications have been shown to be beneficial in reducing tics as well as hyperactivity and impulsivity in individuals with ADHD.

In a randomized, controlled study comparing clonidine, methylphenidate, and placebo, clonidine appeared to be most helpful for impulsivity and hyperactivity and methylphenidate for inattention.

Atomoxetine is a novel nonstimulant medication used to treat ADHD. It acts by blocking presynaptic norepinephrine reuptake.

In one setting, atomoxetine was effective in treating both tics and ADHD in patients affected with both. In that study, significant increases were observed in pulse rate and nausea, and decreases in appetite and body weight.\(^7\)

**Obsessive–Compulsive Disorder**

OCD is the second most common comorbidity in patients with TS. It is characterized by intrusive thoughts that produce uneasiness, apprehension, fear, or worry, and by repetitive behaviors aimed at reducing the associated anxiety.\(^4\)

Approximately 20% to 30% of individuals with TS have an additional diagnosis of OCD. OCD is commonly accompanied by another psychopathology, such as depression, anxiety, ADHD, or aggression.

TS and OCD share several characteristics. Both are characterized by a juvenile or young adult onset, a waxing and waning course, and the presence of repetitive behaviors associated with premonitory urges.

It can be difficult to distinguish compulsive behaviors from tics, and some individuals will display both. It is possible at times to distinguish compulsive behavior when the patient is able to explain that the ritualistic physical or mental affect serves to reduce intrusive thoughts or images rather than an uncomfortable feeling. However, this distinction is not easily made.\(^8\)
Obsessions commonly reported by individuals with TS include sexual, religious, aggressive, and symmetric themes.

**Treatment of Obsessive–Compulsive Disorder**

- For individuals with OCD, the cognitive behavioral therapy model of exposure and response prevention is the recommended nonpharmacologic treatment of choice.
- Medications used to treat OCD include selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) and clomipramine. There is also evidence to support using antipsychotic agents as an augmentation strategy for treatment-resistant OCD. However, there is currently little evidence to support the use of medications to treat comorbid TS and OCD.

**Autism Spectrum Disorders**

- Autism spectrum disorders (ASDs) are typically characterized by social deficits, communication difficulties, stereotyped or repetitive behaviors and interests. TS and ASD share several clinical and behavioral features, including speech abnormalities, such as echolalia and palilalia, and repetitive movements.
- In one study, approximately 5% of the participants with TS had comorbid ASD, and if these illnesses were found together, there was a significant increase in additional comorbidities; conversely, approximately 20% of individuals with ASD displayed tics.
- Stereotypical behavior is common in individuals with ASD and may be difficult to distinguish from tics.

**Treatment of Autism Spectrum Disorders**

- Applied behavioral analysis and facilitated communication therapy are the first-line treatments for individuals with ASDs.
- Currently, only two medications (aripiprazole and risperidone) are approved by the Food and Drug Administration to treat aggressive behaviors in individuals with ASDs. No evidence is available at this time regarding the effect of these medications when ASD is comorbid with a tic disorder.

**Depression**

- Depression is characterized by sadness, loss of pleasure and interest in activities, changes in sleeping and/or eating habits, concentration difficulties,
thoughts of death or dying, inappropriate and intense feelings of guilt or diminished self-worth, and perceptual disturbances if severe.\textsuperscript{4}

- Individuals with TS have reported more depressive symptoms than age-matched controls. In one study, 60\% of children met the diagnostic criteria for major depressive disorder.\textsuperscript{11} An important differential and consideration in patients with depressive disorders is the concept of demoralization.

- Children with TS tend to have a heightened awareness of how they are different from their peers, and they frequently experience frustration or feelings of incompetence regarding controlling their symptoms, which may lead to demoralization.

**TREATMENT OF DEPRESSION**

- Demoralization may be mitigated when the patients are placed in environments in which they are protected from harassment or adverse consequences of their symptoms, which may include changes in peer interactions, support systems, and educational interventions.\textsuperscript{12}

- In contrast to demoralization, biological mood disorders tend to persist despite environmental changes and are usually associated with more neurovegetative symptoms (eg, changes in sleep, appetite, and/or energy). The biological mood symptoms should be addressed in parallel with tic control.

- Psychotherapy, including cognitive behavioral therapy and interpersonal therapy, has been shown to be effective in mild to moderate depression. Medications such as SSRIs have shown utility in moderate to severe depression and can be used in combination with psychotherapy.

- Depression may occur in the setting of bipolar disorder, which includes manic mood states. Mania can be described as an abnormally and persistently elevated, expansive, or irritable mood. It is associated with such symptoms as grandiosity, euphoria, and irritability; decreased need for sleep; increased talkativeness; distractibility; and excessive involvement in pleasurable activities.\textsuperscript{4}

- Children and adolescents tend to exhibit irritability and aggression rather than euphoria. Few studies have looked at the prevalence or management of mania in individuals with comorbid tic disorders.

- Of note, both traditional mood stabilizers (lithium, antiepileptic medications) and antipsychotic medications, especially second-generation antipsychotic medications, have been shown to be effective in reducing symptoms of mania or depression associated with a bipolar affective disorder. Specifically, second-generation antipsychotics may be useful in managing both tics and mood symptoms.
Anxiety

- The relationship between tic disorders and anxiety disorders is not well understood. Separation anxiety disorder, generalized anxiety disorder, and social phobia are all thought to be comorbid with tic disorders.

- Anxiety symptoms have been noted in 16% to 80% of individuals with tics and are not correlated with the severity of tics.

TREATMENT OF ANXIETY

- Anxiety can be managed with either cognitive behavioral therapy or SSRI medication with good success. There are limited data on the management of anxiety disorder when it is associated with tics.

- One older study demonstrated benefit and a reduction of non-OCD anxiety along with a reduction of tics with the use of benzodiazepines, but the results have not been duplicated.13

Aggression

- Aggressive symptoms and TS are strongly associated and are often seen with family stress, impaired personal and/or occupational functioning, psychiatric hospitalizations, and alternative school or residential placements.

- Aggression may be either reactive (impulsive) or proactive (predatory). It may range from mild temper tantrums to extreme irritability and can include oppositional behaviors, such as bullying and cruelty to animals.

- Aggressive symptoms are fairly common in individuals with TS, occurring approximately 37% of the time.1

- Aggression is more likely to occur when an individual with TS has a psychiatric comorbidity (eg, ADHD, OCD).

TREATMENT OF AGGRESSION

- In most cases, the effective management of aggression and TS necessitates a combination of both pharmacologic and psychosocial interventions.14

- The impulsive type of aggression appears more likely to respond to pharmacologic and psychosocial interventions that target irritability, impulsivity, and arousal, whereas controlled, proactive, predatory aggression is addressed with behavioral therapy, such as anger management, dialectical behavioral therapy, and relapse prevention programs.15
Multiple classes of medication have been used to target aggression, including the following: serotonin agonists, SSRIs, mixed serotonin–norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs), lithium, anticonvulsants, anxiolytics, first- and second-generation antipsychotics, alpha-2 agonists, beta-blockers, opiate antagonists, and dopamine agonists.

Mood stabilizers have been shown to be effective in individuals displaying explosive outbursts.

Risperidone and aripiprazole have been studied for the treatment of aggression in children with cognitive impairments in ASD with demonstrated efficacy. Both of these medications have also been shown to be effective in the treatment of aggression in children with TS.

Psychostimulants are beneficial for reducing aggression symptoms associated with ADHD. Alpha-2 agonists alone or in combination with a stimulant have been shown to reduce aggressive behaviors in children with conduct disorder or oppositional defiant disorder.

Beta-blockers such as propranolol have been reported to be effective in reducing aggression in patients with dementia, personality disorders, and traumatic brain injuries.\(^\text{14}\)

**Pediatric Autoimmune Neuropsychiatric Disorders Associated With Streptococcal Infections**

Pediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorders associated with streptococcal infections (PANDAS) is a diagnosis that Swedo et al proposed in 1998 to describe a new illness characterized by childhood-onset OCD and/or a tic disorder occurring as a postinfectious, autoimmune-mediated phenomenon.\(^\text{16}\)

The diagnostic criteria were developed in 1998 based on findings in 50 patients who had an onset or exacerbation of tics or OCD symptoms after a group A beta-hemolytic streptococcal infection.

Five diagnostic criteria were proposed:

- OCD and/or chronic tic disorder
- Age at onset between 3 years and puberty
- Abrupt onset of symptoms and course characterized by recurrent exacerbations and remissions
- Relationship between streptococcal infection and onset and/or exacerbations of clinical symptoms
- Neurological abnormalities during an exacerbation

After more than a decade of studies, the diagnosis of PANDAS remains controversial.
At this time, it is recommended that the management of symptoms in suspected cases of PANDAS be targeted to the specific symptomatology of tics or OCD with conventional treatment methods.

REFERENCES

APPRAOCH TO THE PATIENT WITH CONVERSION DISORDER

- Patients with medically unexplained symptoms account for a significant proportion of neurological consultations.¹

- Such symptoms may include abnormal movements, seizure-like episodes, paralysis, sensory loss, and blindness. Unfortunately, there is no common language to describe such phenomena, with many different terms used by neurologists and psychiatrists alike.² The term *conversion disorder* (CD), or *functional neurological symptom disorder*, is a unifying diagnosis that can be used to describe neurologically unexplained symptoms.

- Terms used to describe neurologically unexplained symptoms
  - Psychogenic
  - Functional
  - Stress-induced
  - Hysterical

EPIDEMIOLOGY OF CONVERSION DISORDER

- Incidence: CD occurs in 4 to 12 per 100,000 population per year³ and may be seen in both children and adults.

- In children, the prevalence is equal among boys and girls; however, in adults, CD is seen 2 to 5 times more often in women than in men.⁴

- Frequent psychiatric comorbidities include depression, anxiety disorders, post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), dissociative disorders, and borderline personality disorder.⁵
HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE

- Jean-Martin Charcot, a French neurologist, was the first to use the term *functional* to describe symptoms that did not have an organic basis.
- Sigmund Freud was the first to use the term *conversion* to describe a mechanism whereby unwanted experiences, such as trauma, are repressed in the subconscious but then become “converted” to physical symptoms.
- In 1980, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Third Edition* (DSM-III), required that for the diagnosis of CD psychological factors must be associated with the etiology of symptoms, evidenced by the following: there exists a temporal relationship with an environmental stimulus related to a psychological conflict, the symptom enables the patient to avoid a noxious stimulus, or the symptom allows the patient to get support from the environment that might otherwise not be forthcoming.\(^6\)
- In 2000, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fourth Edition, Text Revision* (DSM-IV-TR), retained the criterion of “associated psychological factors” but removed specifiers.\(^7\)
- Presently, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition* (DSM-5), does not note a requirement for any association with psychological factors.\(^8\)

NEUROBIOPSYCHOSOCIAL MODEL

- Neuroimaging studies in patients with CD suggest the following:
  - Increased limbic activity in response to stressful/traumatic stimuli
  - Disruption of prefrontal circuits, including premotor areas
  - Greater connectivity between the amygdala and motor preparatory areas during states of arousal, suggesting a possible mechanism of abnormal emotional processing interfering with normal motor planning.\(^9\)
- Limited studies with voxel-based morphometry (VBM) demonstrated increased thickness of the premotor cortex in patients with hemiparetic CD compared with normal controls,\(^10\) whereas cortical thinning in the motor and premotor regions was observed in patients with nonepileptic seizures compared with normal controls.\(^11\)
DIAGNOSIS

- It remains well accepted that psychological factors play a role in CD; however, such factors may not always be identified or apparent at the time of the initial evaluation or even well into the course of treatment.

- To reflect this, in 2013 DSM-5 removed the criterion for the presence of known psychological factors and provided the alternative name of functional neurological symptom disorder.

- The diagnosis of CD may be challenging, depending on the type of presenting symptom. Whereas nonepileptic seizures may be easily diagnosed by the absence of video electroencephalographic (EEG) findings, the diagnosis of conversion in a patient presenting with a movement disorder (eg, tremor, myoclonus, dystonia) is more difficult.

- When a patient presents with symptoms that do not fit with a known neurological disorder, it is imperative that all possible medical conditions be ruled out before CD is diagnosed. This may involve collaboration with the patient’s primary care physician, internist, or specialist.

- Historical publications have suggested that the incidence of the eventual diagnosis of an actual medical or neurological condition in a patient being treated for CD is quite high, between 30% and 60%. The medical conditions often misdiagnosed as CD are listed in Table 15.1.

- More recent studies, however, have demonstrated a rate of CD misdiagnosis of only 3% to 7%. It is therefore important that physicians be thorough yet do not become preoccupied with the fear of misdiagnosing CD, which risks delay of treatment.

- To complicate the matter, 5% to 15% of patients with CD will have a comorbid organic neurological disorder.

The Use of “Positive Clinical Signs” in the Diagnosis of Conversion Disorder

- Historically, neurologists have used a set of “positive signs” specific to functional disorders to identify patients with CD; however, very few of these commonly used signs have been validated. Results of a recent systematic review of the validity of “positive signs” are shown in Table 15.2.

Historical Approach to the Diagnosis of Psychogenic Movement Disorders

- In 1988, Fahn and Williams developed a set of diagnostic criteria for psychogenic movement disorders (PMDs) to be used in patients with equivocal
or uncertain diagnoses. These criteria have been widely applied by neurologists and movement disorder specialists, although they have not been validated.\textsuperscript{18,19}

- In 2006, Shill and gerber\textsuperscript{20} reorganized the criteria of Fahn and Williams and proposed additional criteria based on disease modeling; however, these too have

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Common Symptoms</th>
<th>Diagnostic Test</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transient ischemic attack</td>
<td>Temporary loss of motor or sensory function, intermittent limb shaking, clonic jerking, tonic posturing</td>
<td>Neuroimaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cerebral angiography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Carotid ultrasound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Coagulopathy screening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontal lobe epilepsy</td>
<td>Bilateral motor activity with preservation of consciousness, lack of postictal confusion; may have “soft signs” of pelvic thrusting, crying</td>
<td>Video EEG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Addition of sphenoidal electrodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SPECT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypokalemic periodic paralysis (thyrotoxic periodic paralysis is subtype)</td>
<td>Muscle paralysis, acute hypokalemia, hyperthyroidism, commonly precipitated by heavy carbohydrate loads or after exercise</td>
<td>Potassium levels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Thyroid function tests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syncope (cardiac arrhythmia, long QT syndrome, vasovagal response, orthostatic hypotension)</td>
<td>Convulsions, myoclonus, loss of consciousness, auditory and visual hallucinations</td>
<td>Electrocardiography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Arrhythmia monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tilt-table testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autoimmune encephalitis (ie, limbic encephalitis, paraneoplastic encephalitis)</td>
<td>Dyskinesias, dystonic posturing, seizures, choreoathetoid movements</td>
<td>CSF/serum antibody testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Rule out neoplasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease</td>
<td>Ataxia, neglect, apraxia, aphasia, hemiparesis, myoclonus, mutism, cognitive decline</td>
<td>EEG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MRI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Brain biopsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CSF 14-3-3 protein</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: CSF, cerebrospinal fluid; EEG, electroencephalography; SPECT, single photon emission computed tomography.

Source: Adapted from Refs. 13–16.
Approach to conversion Disorder

significant limitations, including the suggestion that a PMD can be diagnosed without a consideration of neurological phenomenology (Table 15.3).19,20

Both sets of criteria have demonstrated poor interrater reliability, even among movement disorder specialists.21

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Validated</th>
<th>Not Validated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hoover sign</td>
<td>Nonpyramidal weakness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abductor sign</td>
<td>Absent pronator drift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abductor finger sign</td>
<td>Arm drop test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal injury test</td>
<td>Barré test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collapsing/give-away weakness</td>
<td>Wrong-way tongue deviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co-contraction</td>
<td>Platsysma sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motor inconsistency</td>
<td>Babinski trunk–thigh test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midline splitting</td>
<td>Supine catch sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Splitting of vibration</td>
<td>Sternocleidomastoid test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonanatomical sensory loss</td>
<td>Bowlus-Currier test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inconsistency/changing pattern of sensory loss</td>
<td>Yes–no test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systematic failure</td>
<td>Gait fluctuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dragging, monoplegic gait</td>
<td>Excessive slowness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chair test</td>
<td>Psychogenic Romberg test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Walking on ice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Noneconomic posture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sudden knee buckling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Staggering to obtain support from opposite walls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exaggerated swaying without falling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Astasia–abasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Opposite of astasia–abasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sudden side steps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cross legs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Expressive behavior</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A survey of 519 movement disorder specialists reported that most clinicians diagnose PMD after excluding a wide range of organic illnesses rather than using inclusionary criteria such as those proposed by Fahn and Williams and by Shill and Gerber.22

Ruling Out Factitious Disorder and Malingering

- It is of paramount importance not to mistake CD for factitious disorder or malingering, both of which are intentionally feigned by the patient (Table 15.4).
- CD is not voluntary or feigned.
- Patients with CD are very sensitive to the physician’s perception that they may be faking their symptoms.
- Often, it takes many years before a diagnosis of CD is made. Within that time, a patient will have usually consulted at least one physician who has stated that the patient’s symptoms “are not real,” implying that the patient is faking the symptoms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Diagnostic Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinically proven psychogenic movement disorder&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Remits with psychotherapy, or witnessed to remit when the patient feels unobserved, or there is premovement Bereitschaft potential on electroencephalogram (myoclonus only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinically definite</td>
<td>At least three (3) primary criteria and one (1) secondary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinically probable</td>
<td>Two (2) primary criteria and two (2) secondary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinically possible</td>
<td>One (1) primary criterion and two (2) secondary, or Two (2) primary and one (1) secondary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>If not clinically proven, then apply levels of certainty.

Primary criteria: inconsistent with organic disease, excessive pain or fatigue, previous exposure to a disease model, and/or potential for secondary gain

Secondary criteria: multiple somatizations (other than pain and fatigue) and/or obvious psychiatric disturbance

Table 15.3
Shill-Gerber Diagnostic Criteria for Psychogenic Movement Disorders
Neuropsychological testing with the Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory-2 (MMPI-2) Response Bias Scale and Symptom Validity Scale may help distinguish a patient who is probably malingering from one with CD.

## ETIOLOGY OF CONVERSION DISORDER

- Although the exact pathobiology remains elusive, many patients with CD have experienced trauma, including but not limited to the following:
  - Verbal, physical, or sexual abuse as a child, an adult, or both
  - Physical or emotional neglect
  - Recent or chronic medical illness
  - Life-changing event
  - Life-threatening situation, such as a motor vehicle accident, natural disaster, or being held at gunpoint
  - Witnessing the life of a loved one being threatened
  - Witnessing a physically violent event, such as murder, rape, or abuse of an animal

- Risk factors for PMDs include the following:
  - Childhood trauma (specifically, emotional abuse and physical neglect)
  - Fear associated with traumatic life events
  - Multiple traumatic episodes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease State</th>
<th>Involuntary Versus Feigned Symptoms</th>
<th>Conscious Gain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conversion disorder</td>
<td>Involuntary</td>
<td>Not applicable (any gain unconsciously driven)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factitious disorder</td>
<td>Feigned (voluntary)</td>
<td>Primary gain (patient drive to play the sick role)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malingering</td>
<td>Feigned (voluntary)</td>
<td>Secondary gain (external factors, including but not limited to homelessness, seeking medication, evasion of the law, disability)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Risk factors for PMDs differ slightly from those for nonepileptic seizures, which are associated with childhood sexual trauma, poor perception of parental care, and an increased number of life events in the 12 months before symptom onset. Therefore, it is critical for movement disorder clinicians to be able to ask about trauma appropriately (see Chapter 11).

Often, the nature of the conversion symptom is related to the stressor or trauma, as in the following examples:

- A patient experiences lower extremity paralysis after she is unable to “stand up” to an abusive partner.
- A patient is no longer able to drive because of severe upper extremity tremor that developed after a motor vehicle accident in which he was unable to swerve quickly enough to avoid an oncoming car. The accident resulted in the death of the other driver.
- A young, high-achieving athlete develops convulsions on the basketball court soon after entering a high-profile college on an athletic scholarship.
- A patient becomes blind after watching her three younger siblings burn to death in a fire.

CD may occur together with PTSD. Physicians working with patients who may have CD should be aware of the criteria for PTSD. Identifying PTSD in this population may

- Assist in the identification of CD.
- Facilitate referral to a psychiatrist when a patient is unaccepting of a CD diagnosis yet recognizes that his or her PTSD symptoms require treatment.

### TREATMENT

#### Explaining the Diagnosis to the Patient

- The way in which a CD diagnosis is explained to the patient is of critical therapeutic importance and may affect the patient’s adherence to future treatment recommendations.
- Patients want to be given a diagnosis to explain their experience. It is appropriate to use the term *conversion disorder* or *functional neurological symptom disorder* rather than hide the diagnosis or “talk around” the diagnosis, which may convey the idea that CD is something to be ashamed of.
- Use tactful language and a nonaccusatory tone when explaining the diagnosis (Table 15.5).
There is a paucity of systematic, controlled trials regarding the treatment of CD. Most data are limited to case reports, observational studies, and years of anecdotal evidence.

**Psychiatric Evaluation**

- Once the diagnosis of CD has been made and communicated to the patient, the next step in treatment is referral for psychiatric evaluation.
- Preferably, this should be to a psychiatrist experienced in conversion or trauma-based disorders. Organizations with resources for finding such clinicians include the following:
  - Academy of Psychosomatic Medicine
  - International Society for the Study of Trauma and Dissociation
- The patient should be evaluated for psychiatric comorbidities and the best type of psychotherapy determined.

**Psychopharmacology**

- There is no significant evidence to support the pharmacologic treatment of CD; however, the treatment of psychiatric comorbidities may improve outcomes.

**Psychotherapy**

- Cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) is a robust, evidence-based form of psychotherapy that aims to identify and challenge distorted cognitions or beliefs that lead to maladaptive behaviors (or in the case of CD, somatic

---

**Table 15.5**

Useful Language for Explaining the Diagnosis of Functional Disorder

- Your symptoms do not fit the pattern of a known neurological or medical condition, which is good news.
- It is not uncommon for people to experience symptoms like these.
- These are real symptoms you are experiencing.
- We know you are not faking these symptoms.
- There is a strong connection between the brain, mind, and body.
- Symptoms like these can be your body’s way of letting you know to pay attention to something, like ______ (stress, depression, anxiety, something you might be avoiding or ignoring, etc).
symptoms). CBT is usually performed by a graduate-level psychologist; however, it may also be practiced by psychiatrists and social workers. It is a structured, time-limited treatment that often involves weekly homework assignments for the patient.

- **Psychodynamic psychotherapy** aims to identify and bring into consciousness any subconscious psychological conflicts, traumas, emotions, or cognitions that may be linked to the onset of conversion symptoms. It is believed that the increased insight generated by the integration of subconscious problems with conscious thought leads to a resolution of symptoms.\(^{26}\)

- **Dialectical behavioral therapy** (DBT) is an evidence-based treatment for borderline personality disorder (often a comorbidity of CD) that encourages more adaptive coping strategies in the form of mindfulness, emotion regulation, distress tolerance, and interpersonal effectiveness. There are no published trials of the use of DBT in CD; however, it has been postulated that improving one’s coping mechanisms may decrease the need for the “conversion” of stress into somatic symptoms. As patients with BPD also have high rates of prior trauma,\(^{27}\) the same set of strategies may be helpful for patients with CD.

- **Hypnosis** may be used on a case-by-case basis; however, this should be performed by a mental health provider who is both licensed in clinical hypnosis and experienced in the treatment of trauma and CD.

### Physical Therapy

- A main goal is to remove the patient from the “sick role,” which may be unconsciously reinforced by the social support of family and friends.

- Normal patterns of movement can be reestablished.

- Physical therapy may be a more culturally acceptable treatment than psychotherapy and can serve as a bridge to psychotherapy.\(^{28}\)

### REFERENCES


Surgical Approach to Movement Disorders
HISTORY OF SURGERY FOR MOVEMENT DISORDERS

- In the 1950s, Cooper first described ligation of the anterior choroidal artery for the treatment of Parkinson’s disease (PD). In his series, tremor and rigidity improved in 70% of patients, while contralateral hemiplegia was noted in 11% and operative mortality occurred in 10%. This has been attributed to the variable vascular distribution of the anterior choroidal artery. This procedure fell out of favor because of its high morbidity rates and the efficacy of emerging treatment options.

- During this time period, Spiegel and colleagues introduced a novel stereotactic method in which intracranial landmarks—in this case, the pineal gland and the foramina of Monro—were used to locate adjacent anatomical structures. In further studies, their stereotactic lesioning techniques were shown to be as effective as open procedures for the treatment of movement disorders, with a lower risk for complications.

- Lars Leksell introduced posteroventral pallidotomy in the 1950s after noting better treatment of all three cardinal symptoms of PD (tremor, rigidity, and bradykinesia) with this technique than with anterodorsal pallidotomy. Outcomes of this procedure were described by Svennilson et al in 1960 and confirmed by Laitinen et al in 1992. Posteroventral pallidotomy was considered the standard of care for the treatment of PD before deep brain stimulation (DBS) became available.

- When levodopa was introduced in the 1960s, the surgical treatment of PD declined in favor of medical management. However, the long-term use of levodopa is associated with several side effects, and over time, interest in surgical treatment options was renewed. During this period, significant
advances in technology allowed improved imaging studies, microelectrode recording capabilities, and understanding of the underlying anatomy.

- DBS was pioneered for movement disorders in the 1980s and became a preferred tool because of its reversibility and adjustability. The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved thalamic DBS for essential tremor and PD-associated tremor in 1997, followed by subthalamic nucleus (STN) and globus pallidus internus (GPi) DBS for PD in 2003.6

- The remainder of this chapter will provide an overview of the surgical management options currently available for the treatment of movement disorders, with an emphasis on DBS.

**SURGERY FOR SPECIFIC MOVEMENT DISORDERS**

- Surgical procedures do not treat the cause of movement disorders, and to date, they have not been shown to alter the natural history of the disease. Surgical procedures are aimed at alleviating the symptoms of some movement disorders in order to improve quality of life.
  - Stereotactic procedures for the symptoms of PD include ablative procedures and DBS of several cerebral targets, predominantly the thalamus, globus pallidus, and subthalamic area.
  - DBS is also currently approved by the FDA for the management of essential tremors and, under a Humanitarian Device Exemption, for the treatment of primary dystonias.6
  - The stereotactic methods for probing the brain are similar whether the intent is to produce a radio-frequency thermoablation or to deploy an electrode for chronic electrical stimulation (DBS).
  - In addition, noninvasive techniques, such as radiosurgery, are an option for the ablation of subcortical targets in some cases.

- Surgical management of some movement disorders can lead to the mitigation of motor symptoms and improvement in daily function for patients with advanced disease, resistance to medication, or unmanageable side effects. When patients are counseled regarding the surgical treatment of movement disorders, it is very important to stress that movement disorders have two distinct categories of symptoms: motor and nonmotor (ie, cognitive and behavioral).
  - The goal of all movement disorder surgery is to attempt to control the motor symptoms and minimize nonmotor adverse effects.
  - It is important to have an open discussion with the patient and family regarding which symptoms are more likely to improve and which
symptoms will not or are less likely to improve. It should also be explained that surgery is not curative.

- Keep in mind that the appeal of technology and invasive treatment can give some patients the impression that surgical intervention is curative.

As with all surgical procedures, patient selection can influence outcomes. In our experience, we find that multidisciplinary evaluation is helpful in determining candidates who are likely to respond from a motor standpoint with a lower risk for nonmotor complications.

- The multidisciplinary team may include neurologists, neurosurgeons, neuropsychologists, and physical and/or occupational therapists. A psychiatrist evaluates patients for whom behavioral comorbidities are a significant concern, and a bioethicist is involved as needed.

- This multidisciplinary evaluation has several goals.
  
  - Although it may sound obvious, confirmation or reevaluation of the diagnosis is an important first goal. It is not rare for patients to be labeled with a diagnosis for several years, and revisiting often leads to a change in the primary diagnosis and treatment plan.
  
  - The team reevaluates the current and past treatment regimens. Some patients may benefit from pharmacologic optimization only and may not require surgery.
  
  - A detailed cognitive evaluation can determine the degree of cognitive decline, which may correlate with risk for postsurgical worsening.
  
  - The risk for negative effects of surgery on nonmotor symptoms is related not only to the procedure and insertion of the leads but also to chronic stimulation of these complex subcortical targets.

### Parkinson’s Disease

**GENERAL INDICATIONS (TABLE 16.1)**

- Advanced movement disorder
- Poor symptomatic management with drugs
- Drug-induced side effects
- Manageable comorbidities
**Table 16.1**

**Typical Surgical Candidates With Parkinson’s Disease**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiopathic Parkinson’s Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>• Positive response to levodopa:</strong> a response of $~&gt;30%$ to levodopa in off–on test usually indicates better prognosis$^7$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>• Tremor-predominant:</strong> even levodopa-unresponsive tremor tends to improve with surgery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>• Patient has appendicular symptoms:</strong> rigidity, freezing, dystonia, bradykinesia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>• Patient has dyskinesia while on medication.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>• On–off surgical fluctuations occur.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>• Patient has limited cognitive decline.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>• There is no major or severe and unmanaged psychiatric disorder.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 16.2**

**Parkinson Symptoms Likely or Unlikely to Improve With Deep Brain Stimulation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Likely to Improve</th>
<th>Less/Not Likely to Improve</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Tremor</td>
<td>• Gait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rigidity</td>
<td>• Sialorrhea/swallowing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Bradykinesia</td>
<td>• Balance problems/falling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• On–off fluctuations</td>
<td>• Other axial symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Freezing of gait (±)</td>
<td>• Urinary/gastrointestinal symptoms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Ability of the patient to understand the goals, risks, possible benefits, and limitations of surgery and the available alternatives to surgery

**GENERAL CONTRAINDICATIONS (TABLE 16.2)**

- Dementia, major cognitive decline
- Severe or unmanaged psychiatric/behavioral disorder
  - Note: Depression and anxiety are common. They are not contraindications per se if managed.
- Poorly controlled medical comorbidities
- Clotting disorders that cannot be managed perioperatively
- Requirement for anticoagulation or anti-aggregation therapy that cannot be stopped
Lack of ability to understand (patient and/or caregiver) the goals, risks, possible benefits, and limitations of surgery

Inability to adequately follow-up at the specialized center (greater limitation for DBS than for ablative treatments)

**Essential Tremor: General Indications and Contraindications**

- As with other neurological disorders, the first-line treatment is medical management.
- DBS for essential tremor is generally noted to have good outcomes; the outcomes for secondary tremor are not as good.
- DBS of the ventral intermediate nucleus (VIM) can be offered to patients with poorly managed tremor.
- The severity of tremor that “requires” surgery varies from person to person. The goals and needs depend on the patient’s occupation, hobbies, and personal interests. Secondary (nonessential) tremor can be treated with DBS (off label), but the outcomes tend to be limited.
- Patients with distal tremor are thought to have a better prognosis.

**Dystonia: General Indications and Contraindications (Table 16.3)**

- Primary generalized dystonia, with or without known genetic mutation (ie, DYT1).
- Primary torticollis.

---

**Table 16.3**

Success of Deep Brain Stimulation in Different Types of Dystonia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Dystonia</th>
<th>Secondary Dystonia</th>
<th>Tardive Dystonia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No evident underlying cause</td>
<td>Associated with identifiable brain insult</td>
<td>Associated with long-term neuroleptic administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subset known to have DYT1 mutation</td>
<td>Can be caused by stroke, trauma, toxin exposures</td>
<td>Postsynaptic dopamine striatal receptors sensitized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potential candidates for bilateral DBS</td>
<td>Mixed results with DBS</td>
<td>May benefit from bilateral DBS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Surgical treatment for other segmental or focal dystonias possible, but outcomes not as well defined (off label for use of the device in the United States).

Significant disability related to dystonia.

Failure of nonsurgical management, including oral drugs, botulinum toxin injections.

**SURGICAL TREATMENT OPTIONS AND SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT**

- DBS implantation is the most common procedure for the treatment of movement disorders in the United States. DBS has largely supplanted ablative techniques, but some patients are still good candidates for ablative treatment (Table 16.4).
  - The two most common ablative procedures used for movement disorders are radio-frequency (RF) ablation and gamma knife radiosurgery (GKRS).
  - The size of the lesion created with RF ablation can be tailored to a certain extent.
  - Frequent neurological examinations are usually conducted while RF ablation is performed to minimize risk of unforeseen effects due to the lesion created.
- In GKRS, a focused beam of ionizing radiation from multiple locations is used with a high level of precision to create the lesion.
  - Some advantages of GKRS are that patients are discharged home on the day of the procedure and that it can be used for patients who are otherwise not good surgical candidates because of comorbidities.
  - Because of the nature of the ionizing radiation that creates the lesion, the clinical results associated with GKRS are not immediately visible to the patient and may take weeks to become apparent.
- Although ablative procedures are not as commonly performed as DBS, they do have some advantages that should be considered in certain situations.
  - Patients do not have any implanted hardware that can be susceptible to erosion or infection.
  - Patients do not require as frequent follow-up for the adjustment of stimulation (but continue to require medication adjustments and follow-up). This is especially useful when patients are not able to follow up regularly with the movement disorder team.
- DBS has largely replaced ablative procedures like thalamotomy and pallidotomy as standard of care for the treatment of movement disorders because DBS is reversible and does not create a permanent lesion.
addition, the stimulation can be modulated, and the location of the lead can be revised if necessary. On the other hand, implanted hardware is associated with risks. It is important to note that the goal for each of the preceding procedures is similar. Each technique has specific benefits and limitations.

### Deep Brain Stimulation

- DBS is the procedure most commonly performed for the treatment of movement disorders in the United States.
- The implanted device has three components: lead, connecting cable, and implantable pulse generator (IPG).
- A risk for cognitive decline has been noted in some patients, although it is usually not clinically significant in selected candidates.
- DBS is associated with improvement in quality of life and a reduction in motor symptoms, including tremor, rigidity, bradykinesia, dyskinesia, and off–on fluctuations.
- Levodopa challenge is a good indicator of symptomatic improvement.
- Complications can be related to surgery (eg, hemorrhage, infection, misplaced lead); hardware (eg, lead migration or failure, erosion through skin); or stimulation (eg, dyskinesia, freezing, speech disturbance, muscle contraction).

### Table 16.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deep Brain Stimulation</th>
<th>Ablative Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reversible, nonablative</td>
<td>Irreversible, tissue permanently changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possible to revise location</td>
<td>Not possible to revise location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possible to adjust parameters to modulate</td>
<td>Reoperation required to increase effects but cannot reverse effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effects of stimulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased cost associated with equipment</td>
<td>No further surgical cost after uncomplicated procedure performed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>management postoperatively</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possibility of equipment failure, infection,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erosion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less risk for bilateral surgery</td>
<td>Greater risk for speech, cognitive, or other deficits with bilateral ablations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Radio-Frequency Ablation

- Lesions are created with insulated leads that have exposed tips. An RF generator is used to perform the ablation.
- The lesion size depends on the size of the exposed tip, the temperature, and the duration of RF.
- Before the lesion is created, electrical stimulation is performed through the lead to assess the effects. The lesion size can be titrated, and multiple small lesions can be used to “stack” a larger lesion shape.
- Controversy exists regarding lesion site and size and regarding the safety of bilateral lesions.\(^8\)
- Serial intraoperative neurological examinations are performed to assess for efficacy and adverse effects as a lesion is created.

Gamma Knife Radiosurgery

- GKRS is considered mostly for patients with medical comorbidities that preclude other surgical procedures.
- There is a minimal risk for complications such as hemorrhage, infection, and other perioperative medical issues. A delay of weeks to months before the appearance of clinical improvement (or adverse effects) is expected after the procedure.
- There is a risk for delayed enlargement of lesion into normal tissue secondary to radiation necrosis or cyst formation.
- Another disadvantage is the inability to perform intraoperative physiologic testing before the target is treated.
- Results of GKRS have been mixed. Some studies show good safety and efficacy, whereas other studies show limited or no improvement.\(^9,10\)
- Doses from 100 to 160 Gy for stereotactic radiosurgery thalamotomy have been described.\(^10\)

Frameless Versus Frame-Based Stereotactic Surgery (Table 16.5)

- Frame-based systems are thought to be the “gold standard” for stereotactic surgery because they are precise and reliable, and they have been used for many years with good results. Head frames are usually placed under local anesthesia. When the head frame is placed, the line between the lateral canthus and the tragus is observed, and the head frame is placed approximately parallel to the anterior commissure–posterior commissure (AC-PC) line.
Some groups use frameless systems. These may improve patient comfort, facilitate image acquisition, and increase efficiency in surgical planning. Both systems have been shown to be safe and effective, so the decision is often based upon surgeon preference.\textsuperscript{11}

### FRAME-BASED SYSTEM

- The stereotactic frame is placed over the patient’s head and secured with pins. It remains in place for the entire procedure.
- CT/MRI is performed, and the stereo imaging (containing the fiducial data) is co-registered with the preoperative imaging. The target is selected and trajectories are based upon anatomical structures, coordinates, or atlases.
- The clinical workstation helps calculates coordinates for the frame and arc.
- The entry point is marked and a burr hole placed.
- A microdrive is mounted to the frame for microelectrode recording and/or DBS lead implantation or RF lesion creation.

### FRAMELESS SYSTEM

- Skull fiducials are placed before the procedure, sometimes several days in advance of image acquisition.
- A lightweight disposable “frameless system” is affixed to the head.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Frame-Based</th>
<th>Frameless</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reference point</td>
<td>Frame</td>
<td>Fiducials/frameless system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benefits</td>
<td>Solid metal construction Stable even with tremor Good support for surgical instrumentation</td>
<td>Greater mobility of head, easy access to airway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawbacks</td>
<td>More discomfort or pain at placement Head fixed and immobile</td>
<td>Nonreusable, possibly less secure fixation to head, predetermined penetration points in some systems, less adjustable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preoperative imaging</td>
<td>CT/MRI performed, images co-registered with frame (fiducial box)</td>
<td>CT/MRI performed, images co-registered with fiducials</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A disposable microdrive is mounted over the frameless system for recording or lead placement.

Frameless surgery is today considered an equivalent choice to the head-frame at many centers.

**Microelectrode Recording**

- The image-based target localization can be physiologically verified and refined with microelectrode recording techniques. Fine, high-impedance electrodes are placed through the target area while recording is performed.
- Anatomical structures are identified by characteristic electrophysiological activity.
- Single or multiple passes may be required to delineate anatomical boundaries. Once the target area is determined, the DBS lead is inserted.

**Intraoperative, Real-Time MRI Stereotaxis**

- A diagnostic MRI suite prepared for surgery or an intraoperative MRI system is required.
- Intraoperative real-time MRI is used to guide DBS lead implantation.

**RESULTS**

**STN and GPi Deep Brain Stimulation for Parkinson’s Disease**

- STN DBS allows a greater decrease in postoperative medication requirements.
- A large, double-blinded study showed significant improvements in motor scores with bilateral GPi and STN stimulation, with a trend for superior outcomes with STN stimulation.\(^{12}\)
- Another large multicenter, randomized, blinded trial showed that STN and G Pi targets are associated with similar improvements in motor function after bilateral implantation, and that target selection should take into account the constellation of symptoms and the physician’s preference.\(^{13}\)
- Some evidence indicates that STN DBS is more strongly associated with cognitive and behavioral dysfunction.\(^{14,15}\)
- Advanced age and levodopa-equivalent dose were found to be correlated with a postoperative decline in neuropsychology test results in one study.\(^{15}\)
VIM Deep Brain Stimulation for Tremor

- VIM DBS is used for the treatment of tremor from PD and for essential tremor. However, it is not commonly used for PD because STN and GPi targets can also manage other cardinal symptoms.
- DBS is the procedure of choice for essential tremor because it has been shown to have efficacy similar to that of thalamotomy and a lower risk profile.
- Bilateral DBS implantation is considered for patients with bilateral symptoms, although it is often staged. It is not as effective for axial tremors. Bilateral thalamic DBS may carry an increased risk for dysarthria.
- One study showed a mean reduction in contralateral limb tremor of 79% after 3 months.16

GPi Deep Brain Stimulation for Dystonia

- Pallidotomy can be effective, but bilateral procedures can be associated with lethargy and other complications.
- Improvement after bilateral DBS can be seen up to 3 years after the initial DBS procedure.
- Patients with primary dystonia (including those positive for the DYT1 mutation) had a greater improvement on the Dystonia Rating Scale.7,17

COMPLICATIONS

Surgical Complications

- Intracranial hemorrhage is reported in 0.5% to 5% of DBS procedures. In one series, 0.5% of cases were asymptomatic and 0.5% were symptomatic.18
- Subdural, epidural, and intracortical hemorrhages may occur.
  - Some techniques are commonly used to minimize complications, although their efficacy is not proven: avoid hypertension, limit microelectrode recording, use contrasted imaging studies to assess trajectories.
- Lead misplacement may require surgical revision.

Infection

- One large study showed an overall infection rate of 4.2%.19
- Most commonly presents within the first three months after surgery.19
If hardware is exposed or if there is pus in contact with the hardware, partial or complete explantation of the system is usually recommended.

Partial explantation may be possible if the infection is localized, but the remaining parts of the system may already be contaminated.

**Hardware-Related Complications**

- These include electrode fracture, extension wire failure, skin erosion, hardware-related pain, and IPG malfunction (Table 16.6). One study showed a 4.3% overall rate of hardware-related complications.20

- Erosion through the skin is thought to be more common in slim patients implanted with bulkier hardware.

**Stimulation-Related Complications**

- Ocular symptoms, worsening dyskinesia and axial symptoms, speech dysfunction, and corticospinal stimulation may be noted.

- Lack of or less than expected change in motor symptoms postoperatively.

- Cognitive decline develops after implantation and chronic stimulation.

- Involuntary muscle contractions.

- Typically, all patients will have stimulation-induced “side” effects at the first programming visits. These define the threshold for stimulation-related side effects. Programming is then set to lower settings.

- Stimulation-related side effects are usually corrected with adjustments to stimulation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Table 16.6</strong> Hardware-Related Complications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lead Failure</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fractures, sometimes after trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short Circuits</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SAFETY ISSUES

Electrocautery

- A monopolar electrocautery device (Bovie) can be used with caution in patients after DBS implantation. The tip and plate of the Bovie device should be away from the DBS system, and the neurostimulator should be turned off preoperatively.

- Medtronic package instructions: When electrocautery is necessary, following these precautions may reduce electromagnetic interference effects:
  - Disconnect any cable connecting the lead or extension to a screener or external neurostimulator.
  - Use only bipolar cautery.
  - If unipolar cautery is necessary:
    - Use only a low-voltage mode.
    - Use the lowest possible power setting.
    - Keep the current path (ground plate) as far from the neurostimulator, extension, and lead as possible.
    - Do not use full-length operating room table grounding pads.
    - Keep the implanted neurostimulator and lead system out of the conductive path.
    - Keep the electrocautery current flow perpendicular to a line drawn between the neurostimulator case and the lead electrodes.

MRI

After implantation of a DBS, a patient CANNOT undergo MRI with body coils. In some cases, MRI of the head may be performed only with transmit–receive head coils and limited sequences. For information regarding safety guidelines, consult the manufacturer’s information. At the time of this publication, information for the only marketed system can be found at http://professional.medtronic.com/dbsmri

- It is important to counsel patients regarding these safety issues so that they are aware of the dangers associated with these devices.

Diathermy

Medtronic safety labeling for diathermy:

- Do not use shortwave diathermy, microwave diathermy, or therapeutic ultrasound diathermy (all now referred to as diathermy) on patients
implanted with a neurostimulation system. Energy from diathermy can be transferred through the implanted system and can cause tissue damage at the location of the implanted electrodes, resulting in severe injury or death.

- Diathermy can also damage the neurostimulation system components, resulting in loss of therapy and requiring additional surgery for system explantation and replacement.
- Advise your patients to inform all their health care professionals that they should not be exposed to diathermy treatment.
- Injury to the patient or damage to the device can occur during diathermy treatment when:
  - The neurostimulation system is turned on or off.
  - Diathermy is used anywhere on the body—not just at the location of the neurostimulation system.
  - Diathermy delivers heat or no heat.
  - Any component of the neurostimulation system (lead, extension, neurostimulator) remains in the body.

REFERENCES


V

Nonpharmacologic Approach to Movement Disorders
Patients with movement disorders can develop motor, cognitive, and behavioral impairments that can lead to a loss of functional ability and independence in activities of daily living and result in decreased quality of life. Physical and occupational therapy can help to prevent and treat these symptoms, and to rehabilitate patients in order to restore maximum movement, functional mobility, and participation in work, family, and society. The aim of therapy is to maximize independence and quality of life at the time of the diagnosis and throughout the course of the disorder.

This chapter is designed to focus on the role of physical and occupational therapists in the care and management of patients with movement disorders. We first discuss the emerging role of exercise in the management of Parkinson’s disease (PD). We subsequently discuss the roles of physical and occupational therapists as part of a multidisciplinary team. Finally, we discuss the specific issue of falls in people with movement disorders.

Movement disorders are grouped together on the basis of the similarity of the clinical presentation. Many movement disorders represent progressive, multisystem neurodegenerative processes that can result in increased disability over time. A few important conceptual points are relevant to the clinical care of patients:

- Forms of parkinsonism such as progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP), multiple systems atrophy (MSA), dementia with Lewy bodies (DLB), and corticobasal ganglionic degeneration (CBDG) result in relatively rapid rates of decline.\textsuperscript{1–4}

- Idiopathic PD usually has a relatively slower rate of progression, but disabling deficits that are unresponsive to medication will develop over time in a majority of patients.\textsuperscript{5}
Hereditary choreas, ataxias, and dystonias similarly result in progressive decline at a variable rate, which depends on the disease process.\textsuperscript{6–8}

**THE ROLE OF EXERCISE IN THE MANAGEMENT OF PARKINSON’S DISEASE**

Exercise is an important part of healthy living for everyone, regardless of the presence of any movement disorder. Regular exercise is a vital component to maintain balance, mobility, and activities of daily living in people with movement disorders. Upon diagnosis, people with movement disorders have already reduced their overall level of physical activity and often have withdrawn from recreational and leisure activities despite minimal reports of disability. Individuals with PD show a significant decline in their levels of physical activity in the first year after their diagnosis. Inactivity can accelerate the degenerative process and result in multiple preventable secondary impairments.

**Evidence-Based Benefits of Exercise in People With Parkinson’s Disease**

- Improved physical function
- Improved quality of life
- Increased strength
- Improved balance
- Increased walking speed and stride length
- Increased flexibility and posture

**Potential Motor and Nonmotor Targets of Exercise**

- Prevention of cardiovascular complications
- Reduced risk for osteoporosis
- Improved cognitive function
- Prevention of depression
- Improved sleep
- Decreased constipation
- Decreased fatigue
- Improved functional motor performance
- Improved drug efficacy
- Optimization of the dopaminergic system
Disease Modification

Animal models have shown that physical activity may directly impact the neurodegenerative process, likely mediated by brain neurotrophic factors and neuroplasticity. Potential mechanisms include angiogenesis, synaptogenesis, reduced oxidative stress, decreased inflammation, and improved mitochondrial function. Vigorous aerobic exercise has been associated with a reduced risk for developing PD and improved cognitive function. This type of exercise has been shown to increase the volume of gray matter in the brain, and to improve functional connectivity and cortical activation related to cognition. There is also emerging evidence that exercise can improve corticomotor excitability in people with PD. With the potential benefit of neuroplasticity and neuroprotection, exercise is an important part in the medical management in people with PD (Figure 17.1).

Ingredients to Promote Neuroplasticity and Neuroprotection

- Exercises based on motor learning
- High level of repetition
- Task-specific training
- “Forced” aerobic exercise
- “Forced-use” exercise
- Complexity: dual tasking
Evidence-Based Approach to Exercise for Parkinson’s Disease

- Progressive aerobic training
- Treadmill training
- Pole walking
- High-effort, whole-body, large-amplitude movements (eg, Lee Silverman Voice Therapy–Big [LSVT-BIG])
- Spinal flexibility
- Agility (coordination and balance training)
- Augmentation of proprioceptive feedback
- Kinesthetic awareness training
- High-effort rate or strength training
- Dual-task training
- Dancing, tai chi, music, boxing

PHYSICAL THERAPY AND OCCUPATIONAL THERAPY IN A MULTIDISCIPLINARY APPROACH TO MANAGEMENT

The management of movement disorders is best approached with a patient-centered multidisciplinary team (Figure 17.2 and Table 17.1).

Differentiating the Roles of the Physical Therapist and the Occupational Therapist

Physical therapists and occupational therapists have different areas of expertise (Figure 17.3), and a physician referring a patient to one of these specialists should be familiar with the domains of expertise of each.

THE ROLE OF THE PHYSICAL THERAPIST. Postural instability and dysfunction of gait and balance are common symptoms in many movement disorders. The goal of physical therapy is to partner with patients to develop exercises and strategies that maintain or increase activity levels, decrease rigidity and bradykinesia, optimize gait, improve balance and motor coordination, and develop an individualized exercise program to prevent secondary impairments (Figures 17.4 and 17.5; Table 17.2).

WHEN TO REFER TO A PHYSICAL THERAPIST. Upon diagnosis, referral to a physical therapist for an early intervention exercise program is vital in the management of most people with movement disorders. The benefits of early referral include the following:
Establish baseline physical functional status with the use of standardized outcome tools

Develop an individualized exercise program

Identify motor dysfunction as well as impairments that can be addressed through exercise and behavioral modification

Develop effective gait and balance strategies, which is more easily done before significant disease progression ensues

**Figure 17.2**
The multidisciplinary team providers.

**Table 17.1**
Members of the Management Team and Their Respective Roles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function or Problem to Be Addressed</th>
<th>Specialist</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dexterity, gait, balance</td>
<td>Physical and occupational therapists, physiatrists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swallow function, dysarthria, hypophonia</td>
<td>Speech and swallow clinicians, laryngologists, gastroenterologists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cognitive decline</td>
<td>Neurologists, geriatricians, neuropsychologists, pharmacists, occupational therapists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mood disorders</td>
<td>Neurologists, primary care physicians, clinical psychologists, sex therapists, psychiatrists</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dysfunctions appropriate for referral to an Occupational Therapist

- Fine motor function
  - Handwriting
  - Feeding
  - Dressing
  - Bathing
  - Household tasks
  - Ergonomics (Work Site Modification)

Dysfunctions appropriate for referral to a Physical Therapist

- Gross motor function
  - Gait
  - Balance/Falls
  - Transfers
  - Decrease Endurance
  - Flexibility

**Figure 17.3**
Differentiating the roles of the physical therapist and occupational therapist.

**Figure 17.4**
Example of balance training. The patient is standing on a “wobble board.” The upper extremities are occupied with a task to mimic the multitasking necessary in many activities of daily living.

- Educate patients and care partners about the disease process and its motor and nonmotor consequences
- Reduce the risk for and fear of falling
**Figure 17.5**
Example of a stepping exercise. A patient with gait freezing develops a motor program of stepping by using visual cues.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deficit</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Physical capacity</td>
<td>Cardiovascular endurance training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rigidity (axial extension and rotation)</td>
<td>Range of motion and flexibility exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weakness (trunk and lower extremity extensors)</td>
<td>Resistance and functional strength training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postural instability (anticipatory and reactive postural responses)</td>
<td>Balance training (see Figure 17.4), postural adjustment exercises, cognitive strategies training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gait dysfunction (bradykinesia, freezing, festination)</td>
<td>Whole-body activation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retraining in acceleration and large-amplitude functional movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Treadmill training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adaptive stepping techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Visual cues (ie, stepping over an object or caregiver’s foot, inverted cane, using a laser pointer to create a dot on floor as a target; see Figure 17.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Auditory cues (ie, metronome, counting aloud, walking with music)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Internal cues (for patients with mild disability who are able to concentrate on step-by-step activity rather than continuous gait). Patients can stop/pause to regroup/reset and start again with one good step.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declining ability to perform activities of daily living</td>
<td>Exercises to improve bed mobility and transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exercises to improve performance in leisure and recreational activity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- Monitor changes in functional status and ability to sustain an optimal exercise program
- Delay the onset of activity limitations and prevent secondary impairments
- Evaluate functional or work capacity

The role of the physical therapist in current practice is to harness available circuitry to re-learn skills that have been lost due to deficiencies in striatal function, whether this is due to dopamine deficiency or to other degenerative processes affecting the basal ganglia.

THE ROLE OF THE OCCUPATIONAL THERAPIST. Deficits in dextrous movements, as well as gait and balance deficits affecting performance of the activities of daily living, are common in movement disorders. The primary goal of the occupational therapist is to improve the patient’s quality of life throughout the disease process by increasing functional movement and by prescribing adaptive devices to assist in maintaining independent function (Figures 17.6 and 17.7; Table 17.3).25–29

**Figure 17.6**
Examples of adaptive devices.

**Figure 17.7**
Examples of writing exercises.
WHEN TO REFER TO AN OCCUPATIONAL THERAPIST. Early referral to an occupational therapist will address the following:

- Baseline evaluations of the severity of the motor disorder, active functional movement, passive joint movement, dependence level in activities of daily living, speed of performance of self-care activities, handwriting skills, and ability to perform simultaneous and sequential tasks
- Cognitive rehabilitation
- Instructions in accommodation principles that can be used throughout the progression of the disease
- Prevention of musculoskeletal deficits
- Instructions in grading of activities so that function can be facilitated despite changing symptoms
- Early initiation of environmental adaptations
- Driver evaluation and rehabilitation
- Caregiver instructions in the disease process and the process of rehabilitation
The occupational therapist uses a different set of strategies from the physical therapist to improve function, and the best outcomes usually develop when the two disciplines work together.

**Physical and Occupational Therapy in Parkinsonism and Other Movement Disorders**

The overall strategy for physical and occupational therapy in forms of parkinsonism and other movement disorders is similar to the strategy in PD; however, the initial functional disability at diagnosis may be greater, responsiveness to medication may be less, and the rate of decline in function can be steeper. Cases must be treated individually, depending on specific needs.

**THE FALLING PATIENT**

Falls are a leading cause of morbidity and mortality in the elderly population and frequently contribute to the need for nursing home placement.\(^30,31\) This is a particular issue in patients with movement disorders, which often result in deficits of gait and balance. For example, parkinsonism is a major risk factor for falls in surveys of the elderly.\(^31,32\) Dystonia, chorea, and ataxia can similarly result in gait disturbances that predispose to falls.

The following factors in movement disorders predispose to falling or increase the risk for falls in individuals with movement disorders:

- Older age
- Longer duration of disease
- Advanced stage of disease
- Rigidity or dystonia of the lower limbs
- Freezing or festination
- Severe chorea or dyskinesia
- Ataxia
- Symptomatic orthostatic hypotension
- Other medical or neurological conditions
- Local environmental factors

The clinician confronted with a patient who is falling should not assume that all the causes of falls are the same. Because the basis of falls may not be readily detected on physical examination, the clinician must take a careful history to determine the true frequency of falling and the potential causes and contributing factors. Identification of the probable cause is important for developing an effective treatment plan. Table 17.4 lists some common causes of falls in different movement disorders, and strategies for evaluating the risk for falls.
Managing Falls

The festination, freezing, and postural instability related to parkinsonism may respond to drug therapy early in the disease. However, ataxia does not usually respond to multiple-modality therapy, and patients with more advanced disease often fail to improve with pharmacologic therapy. Surgical therapy is only occasionally useful in patients with PD in which falls result from motor fluctuations, and surgical therapies such as deep brain stimulation rarely provide satisfactory results in patients with PD when postural stability cannot be improved (even if only temporarily) with medical management. Surgical intervention is ineffective for reducing falls in other forms of parkinsonism or in ataxic disorders. In most patients who begin to fall because of postural instability, a few principal interventions are prudent:

- Physical therapy can assist in recognizing risk and improving strength. Strategies for turning or providing a more stable base of support during activities may also be taught in this environment. Motor and sensory tricks may be taught to reduce freezing and festination.
- Occupational therapy: environmental modifications may be necessary.
- Home safety: environmental factors leading to falls should be evaluated.
- Table 17.5 details some specific strategies for managing falls.

### Table 17.4
Evaluating Falls in Movement Disorders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source of Fall</th>
<th>Associated Disease Processes</th>
<th>Evaluation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Postural instability</td>
<td>Parkinson’s disease and forms of parkinsonism</td>
<td>Mini-best test, timed up and go, five times sit to stand, retropulsion pull test.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freezing/start hesitation</td>
<td>Parkinson’s disease and forms of parkinsonism</td>
<td>Freezing of gait questionnaire, gait observation. Freezing can frequently be observed in enclosed spaces (eg, a small examination room), during turns (turn hesitation), or when the patient starts from a standing position (start hesitation).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia</td>
<td>Ataxia, Huntington’s disease</td>
<td>Evaluate gait. Ataxic gait is wide-based. Patients may weave. Tandem walking is impaired. Individuals are frequently not able to stand with feet together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medications</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Medication history should be obtained. Drugs can contribute to falls, particularly psychoactive drugs, hypotensive medications, and alcohol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental sources</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Environmental causes of falls may interact with any of the above sources of falling.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 17.5
Management of Falls in Movement Disorders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source of Fall</th>
<th>Management Strategy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Postural instability | • Medical therapy: Increasing the levodopa dose may improve postural stability.  
                      • Surgical therapy: If motor fluctuations in Parkinson’s disease are the source of falls, then deep brain stimulation may be useful.  
                      • Physical therapy: Strategies for turning and for improving the base of support may be taught. Strengthening can improve the capacity to resist postural challenge in some patients. |
| Freezing/festination | • Medical therapy: Increasing the levodopa dose may improve postural stability.  
                      • Surgical therapy: If freezing is related to motor fluctuations, then deep brain stimulation may be useful.  
                      • Physical therapy: Teaching patients to develop internal cueing, such as counting or focusing on a single action (eg, stepping over a crack in the floor), may be useful, and some individuals may use strategies such as stepping sideways or rocking the trunk backward and forward to break an episode of freezing; however, care must be taken to avoid inducing a fall. |
| Ataxia               | • Both physical therapy and occupational therapy may be useful to improve balance and adaptation to disability.                                                                                                      |
| Medications          | • Medications that may be contributing to falls should be adjusted or discontinued.                                                                                                                                 |
| Environmental causes | • Evaluation of the home environment is the purview of occupational therapists. Specific interventions may be useful:  
                      o Footwear: Poorly fitting or nonsupportive footwear may result in falls. Nonskid shoes may augment freezing.  
                       An occupational therapist working in concert with a podiatrist may be able to suggest appropriate footwear.  
                      o Home visits may be useful to define safety hazards, such as the following:  
                       ■ Loose throw rugs or torn carpeting  
                       ■ Slippery surfaces  
                       ■ Poor lighting conditions  
                       ■ Unsafe stairways |

Prevention is the best strategy for managing falls.\textsuperscript{33} The underlying cause of falling should be determined and corrected if possible. In patients with postural instability or freezing, establishing the relationship between dopaminergic treatment and falls is crucial, as alterations in treatment may decrease
falls. In all cases, an underlying medical or neurological condition should be identified. Physical therapy can improve strength, cardiovascular fitness, and balance. Educating the patient and caregiver is also important. Environmental risk factors must be evaluated.

CONCLUSION

A multidisciplinary team approach is optimal to appropriately manage disability in patients with movement disorders.

- Physical and occupational therapists are important allies on the health care team.
- Immediate referral at diagnosis to a movement disorder–specific early intervention program will promote the benefit of exercise-induced neuroplasticity and prevent functional limitation for most patients.
- There is growing evidence that ongoing moderate to vigorous exercise beyond a self-selected pace (ie, “forced” aerobic exercise, such as pedaling a stationary bike at a consistent rate and pattern) may be necessary to promote neuroplastic changes.
- Studies have shown improved walking, balance, strength, flexibility, and fitness in people with PD who participate in a regular exercise program. However, these studies also indicate that people with PD gradually lose the gains they have made when they are not able to sustain their exercise program.
- Neurological physical and occupational therapists with experience in treating people with PD and other movement disorders can help develop good long-term exercise habits and decrease the risk for falls.
- Continued access to therapy service is important for people with movement disorders to sustain the benefits of exercise and monitor changes in physical functional status.
- With optimal medication management and a sustained, disorder-specific, individualized exercise program, people with movement disorders can maintain and improve their independence and quality of life.

SELECTED WEBSITES

American Physical Therapy Association
http://www.apta.org

National Center on Physical Activity and Disability
http://www.ncpad.org

National Parkinson Foundation
http://www.parkinson.org
REFERENCES

Speech and swallowing abnormalities occur frequently in patients with movement disorders. The evaluation and treatment of motor speech disorders (ie, dysarthria and apraxia of speech [AOS]) and of oropharyngeal dysphagia are typically performed by speech–language pathologists. These evaluations and treatments can accomplish the following:

- Determine whether speech and swallowing are affected
- Determine the severity of speech and swallowing involvement and the patient’s prognosis
- Assist in the formulation of a treatment plan
- Improve the patient’s functioning and quality of life
- Assist the medical team in making the differential diagnosis

This chapter summarizes the procedures that speech–language pathologists use to evaluate speech and swallowing. The Mayo classification system of motor speech disorders is introduced, with an emphasis on its relevance for physicians and other health care providers. Finally, speech and swallowing disorders and their treatment in a variety of movement disorders are discussed.

EVALUATION OF SPEECH

- Speech–language pathologists use primarily auditory–perceptual methods to evaluate speech disorders, although the use of instrumental assessment techniques, such as direct laryngoscopy, acoustic analysis of speech, and kinematic measurement, is becoming increasingly common.
A traditional clinical motor speech evaluation consists of four components:

- History
- Examination of the speech mechanism with nonspeech activities

## Key Components of a Traditional Clinical Motor Speech Evaluation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>History of the speech problem</th>
<th>Examination of the speech mechanism with nonspeech activities</th>
<th>Examination of the speech mechanism with nonspeech activities</th>
<th>Evaluation of the speech mechanism with speech tasks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Onset and course</td>
<td>Respiratory mechanism</td>
<td>Respiratory mechanism</td>
<td>Connected speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insidious or acute, fluctuations over time, effects of</td>
<td>Access range of loudness and maximum loudness during phonation</td>
<td>Considered the most critical part of the evaluation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medication</td>
<td>Measure maximum phonation duration</td>
<td>Used to determine how components of an individual's speech mechanism work together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associated deficits</td>
<td>Examination of the speech mechanism with nonspeech</td>
<td>Larynx</td>
<td>Used to assess speech characteristics including rate, intonation, stress, rhythm, and naturalness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>activities</td>
<td>Access vocal quality during 3 seconds of the optimal phonation</td>
<td>Elicited during history or conversation (i.e., &quot;Tell me about your family&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>False visualization of the larynx via flexible fiberoptic</td>
<td>Assess pitch range with glide from lowest to highest pitch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laryngial integrity assessed by eliciting vocalizations</td>
<td>Velopharynx (VP)</td>
<td>Repeating words/sentences:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Snowball</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Impossibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Calamaphie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4. Please put the groceries in the refrigerator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5. The valuable watch was missing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6. The shipwreck washed up on the shore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Reading a standard passage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Use a passage with known number of words, frequency of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sounds, and established rate norms, such as the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Grandfather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Passage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(See Appendix A.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 18.1**

Key components of a traditional clinical motor speech evaluation.
- Maximum performance testing of the speech mechanism
- Evaluation of speech performance during a variety of speaking tasks (See Appendix A for a typical paragraph that a patient is asked to read to evaluate speech.)

- Figure 18.1 reviews the components of typical assessment procedures for speech disorders in greater detail.\textsuperscript{1–4}

### The Mayo Classification of Speech Disorders

- Darley et al\textsuperscript{5–7} refined the auditory–perceptual method of classifying speech disorders in a series of seminal works. This classification system, now known as the Mayo system, is based on several premises:
  - Speech disorders can be categorized into different types.
  - They can be characterized by distinguishable auditory–perceptual characteristics.
  - They have different underlying pathophysiologic mechanisms associated with different neuromotor deficits.

- Therefore, the Mayo system has value for localizing neurological disease and can assist the medical team in formulating a differential diagnosis.\textsuperscript{1}

- The Mayo system also provides guidance for treatment planning.\textsuperscript{8}

- Table 18.1 details the types of motor speech disorders, their localization, and their neuromotor basis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 18.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Types of Motor Speech Disorders With Their Localization and Neuromotor Basis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Localization</th>
<th>Neuromotor Basis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flaccid dysarthria</td>
<td>Lower motor neuron</td>
<td>Weakness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spastic dysarthria</td>
<td>Bilateral upper motor neuron</td>
<td>Spasticity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxic dysarthria</td>
<td>Cerebellar control circuit</td>
<td>Incoordination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypokinetic dysarthria</td>
<td>Basal ganglia control circuit</td>
<td>Rigidity or reduced range of movements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperkinetic dysarthria</td>
<td>Basal ganglia control circuit</td>
<td>Abnormal movements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed dysarthria</td>
<td>More than one</td>
<td>More than one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apraxia of speech</td>
<td>Left (dominant) hemisphere</td>
<td>Motor planning and programming</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Behavioral Treatment of Speech Disorders

- Most of the approaches to the treatment of speech abnormalities in patients with movement disorders are presented later in this chapter under the sections on specific medical diagnoses. However, regardless of the medical or speech diagnosis, certain therapeutic principles apply:
  - Treatment should be aimed at maximizing intelligibility and naturalness.
  - For maximum benefit, patients and families must be committed to rehabilitation.
  - In many instances, treatment will need to be intensive.
- For further details regarding the principles of treatment for motor speech disorders, see Rosenbek and Jones.9

EVALUATION OF SWALLOWING

- Swallowing function is typically considered to comprise three stages:
  - Oral stage
  - Pharyngeal stage
  - Esophageal stage
- The assessment and treatment of the oral and pharyngeal stages of swallowing are within the scope of practice of speech–language pathologists as part of an interdisciplinary team that includes physicians, surgeons, occupational therapists, dieticians, nurses, dentists, and other health care professionals. Esophageal dysphagia is managed primarily by physicians (ie, gastroenterologists).
- The evaluation of oropharyngeal swallowing typically begins with a clinical swallowing evaluation. The traditional components include the following:
  - History
  - Oral motor examination, often with sensory testing
  - Physical examination to assess voice quality and strength of cough, and palpation of laryngeal excursion during swallowing
  - Observation of how foods and liquids are swallowed
- Instrumental assessment techniques may also be necessary, such as video-fluoroscopic swallowing evaluation (VFSE) and/or fiber-optic endoscopic evaluation of swallowing (FEES), which allow a skilled clinician to accomplish the following:
  - Assess the integrity of the oropharyngeal swallowing mechanism
- Establish the biomechanical abnormalities causing dysphagia
- Make appropriate recommendations with regard to oral intake, therapeutic intervention, and consultations with other health care professionals

VFSE and FEES also allow the assessment of penetration and aspiration, which are often critical because of their potential negative effects on health.

- Penetration occurs when material enters the larynx but does not pass into the trachea. Figure 18.2 shows penetration during VFSE.
- Aspiration occurs when material passes through the larynx and into the trachea. Figure 18.3 shows aspiration during VFSE.
- Both aspiration and penetration can be measured during VFSE with the penetration–aspiration scale, an 8-point scale to quantitatively measure the depth of airway entry and whether or not the material is expelled.10

Figure 18.2
Penetration, or entry of material into the larynx but not the trachea, during videofluoroscopic swallowing evaluation.
Penetration and aspiration can both occur without overt signs and symptoms (i.e., coughing, throat clearing, wet vocal quality). This is referred to as silent penetration and silent aspiration.

**Behavioral Treatment of Swallowing Disorders**

- Behavioral treatments for dysphagia in patients with movement disorders are based primarily on the biomechanical abnormalities observed during evaluation. Treatments for dysphagia tend to be less condition-specific than those for speech. Therefore, the most common methods are discussed next, and this list is referenced in subsequent sections. Specific treatment approaches with application to particular patient populations follow later in this chapter.

- Regardless of the medical diagnosis, if swallowing (a) remains unsafe, (b) is inadequate to maintain hydration and nutrition, or (c) requires more effort than the patient can tolerate, a variety of behavioral treatments should be considered.
Appropriate behavioral treatments can be most effectively determined with an instrumental assessment of swallowing, which allows a biomechanical analysis of swallowing to be completed.

Behavioral treatments can be categorized into rehabilitative and compensatory approaches. General behavioral treatments for patients with dysphagia are described below.

Rehabilitative treatments include the following:

- **Supraglottic swallow** is an airway protection technique in which forceful laryngeal adduction is followed by throat clearing/coughing and a repeated swallow.\(^{11}\)

- **Super-supraglottic swallow** is a similar airway protection technique, but in which the patient bears down while holding his or her breath.\(^{11,12}\)

- **Effortful swallow** is used to increase posterior tongue base movement and improve bolus clearance from the vallecula by squeezing the muscles forcefully during swallowing.\(^{13}\)

- The **Mendelsohn maneuver** is primarily a technique to prolong upper esophageal sphincter (UES) opening.\(^{14}\) The larynx is held for 1 to 3 seconds in its most anterior–superior position, followed by completion of the swallow.\(^{11}\)

- **Shaker head raise** is an exercise for increasing UES opening in which the patient lies supine and repetitively raises and lowers his or her head.\(^{15,16}\)

- **Lee Silverman voice treatment** (LSVT) is a series of maximum performance exercises primarily associated with dysarthria rehabilitation. LSVT may also have a general therapeutic effect on swallowing movements.\(^{17}\)

- **Expiratory muscle strength training** (EMST) is an exercise in which a pressure threshold device is used to overload the muscles of expiration. EMST may have a general therapeutic effect on speech and swallowing movements.\(^{18}\)

- The **Showa maneuver** requires forceful elevation of the tongue against the palate followed by a long, hard swallow, during which the patient is instructed to squeeze all the muscles of the face and neck. This technique appears to influence oral and pharyngeal movements during swallowing.

- The **Masako technique** is an exercise to increase posterior pharyngeal wall movement. The patient protrudes and holds the tongue while executing a forceful dry swallow.\(^{19}\)

- In the **falsetto exercise**, the patient elevates the larynx by sliding up a pitch scale and holding the highest note for several seconds with as much effort as possible.\(^{11}\)
Various lingual strengthening techniques involve moving the tongue against resistance, which may improve oral stage function and swallow initiation.\(^\text{20}\)

Sensory therapies include stimulation with cold, sour, and electrical current. These treatments may improve oral and pharyngeal stage function.\(^\text{21,22}\)

Intention/attention treatment is a new type of treatment with no formal protocols established.\(^\text{23}\)

- If rehabilitative treatments are unsuccessful or impractical, a variety of compensatory treatments can be considered.
  - General postural stabilization
  - Postural adjustments to the swallowing mechanism, including the chin tuck and head turn
  - Throat clearing or coughing to clear the airway after swallowing
  - Repeated swallows to clear oropharyngeal residue
  - Use of a “liquid wash” to clear oropharyngeal residue
  - Controlling bolus size with instruction or adaptive equipment
  - Increasing the frequency and reducing the size of meals to optimize nutritional intake and swallowing function, especially if swallowing is effortful or causes fatigue
  - Eliminating troublesome foods from the diet or preparing them in a softer, moister form
  - Using dietary supplements
  - Timing eating and drinking to coincide with maximal medication effects
  - Thickening liquids and pureeing foods as a last resort

- If rehabilitative and compensatory strategies are inadequate, decisions about enteral nutrition may become necessary.

**SPEECH AND SWALLOWING IN PARKINSON’S DISEASE**

**Speech Disorders**

Hypokinetic dysarthria occurs in most individuals with Parkinson’s disease (PD) at some point in the progression of the disease, with approximately 90% of patients with PD having dysarthria in some series.\(^\text{24,25}\) See Appendix B for a description of the perceptual features of hypokinetic dysarthria.
Hypokinetic dysarthria may be the presenting symptom of neurological disease in some patients with PD.

The term hypophonia is often used to describe the decreased vocal loudness of patients with PD.

Inappropriate silences may occur frequently and be associated with difficulty initiating movements for speech production.

Neurogenic stuttering, consisting most often of sound and word repetitions, may also be observed in some patients with PD.

Patients with PD appear to have a perceptual disconnect between their actual loudness level and their own internal perception of loudness.

When patients have insight into their speech problem, they often describe the presence of a “weak” voice. They may report avoiding social situations that require speech.

The severity of dysarthria may not correspond to the duration of PD or the severity of other motor symptoms.

Hyperkinetic dysarthria, rather than hypokinetic dysarthria, may also be encountered. This most often occurs in the presence of dyskinesia, particularly after prolonged levodopa therapy. Other “communication disorders” commonly encountered in patients with PD include cognitive impairments, masked facies, and micrographia.

**TREATMENT**

Although a variety of medical and surgical approaches have been attempted to improve the speech of patients with PD, behavioral treatments have shown the most sustained beneficial effect.  

LSVT has a robust literature supporting its beneficial effects and is considered the treatment of choice for individuals with PD and hypokinetic dysarthria.  

Other maximum performance treatments, such as EMST, may also be beneficial.  

A variety of other behavioral techniques may be indicated.

- Speaker-oriented treatments focus on compensatory strategies to improve intelligibility.
- Communication-oriented strategies are often used along with speaker-oriented strategies to improve understanding between speaker and listener.
- Rate control techniques, such as delayed auditory feedback (DAF), pitch-shifted feedback, and pacing boards, may be used.
Augmentative–alternative communication (AAC) treatment approaches, such as the use of voice amplifiers or speech-generating computers, may be appropriate, particularly as the severity of dysarthria progresses.

For many patients with PD, pharmacologic treatment does not appear to have a significant beneficial impact on speech production, although speech function may be improved in some patients.

Surgical treatments for PD also do not appear to have a consistently significant benefit for the speech disorders encountered in PD. Although speech performance may be improved in some patients after surgery, this is not considered an expected outcome. Speech may be unchanged or worsened following surgery.

Swallowing Disorders

Oropharyngeal dysphagia has been reported in up to 90% to 100% of people with PD. However, dysphagia is often unrecognized or underestimated by patients.\textsuperscript{33–35}

Oropharyngeal dysphagia may be the initial symptom, and a particular pattern of lingual fenestration characterized by repetitive tongue pumping motions is considered a pathognomonic sign of PD.\textsuperscript{11}

The severity of dysphagia may not correspond to the duration of PD or the severity of other motor symptoms.

All stages of swallowing function can be affected in patients with PD.

- Oral stage deficits may include drooling, increased oral transit time, repetitive tongue pumping motions, and premature spillage of the bolus.
- Pharyngeal stage function may be remarkable for a pharyngeal swallow delay, post-swallow pharyngeal residue, penetration, and aspiration.
- Esophageal stage swallowing problems are also common and most frequently include abnormalities in esophageal motility.

TREATMENT

General treatment strategies can be found in the earlier section on the behavioral treatment of swallowing disorders.

Patients with PD often respond well to active range-of-motion and falsetto exercises, effortful swallow, Mendelsohn maneuver, and effortful breath-hold.\textsuperscript{11}

Maximum performance techniques typically used in the rehabilitation of speech disorders in PD, such as LSVT and EMST, may also improve oropharyngeal swallow function.\textsuperscript{17}
Referral to an occupational therapist may be beneficial to determine the appropriateness of adaptive utensils and equipment to promote independence with meals and reduce the effects of motor symptoms (ie, tremor) on self-feeding skills.

Although dopaminergic medications are not typically associated with significant improvements in swallow function, in some patients these medications may provide benefit. In these selected cases, “on” effects can be timed to coincide with meals.

The surgical treatment of PD does not appear to improve swallowing function for most patients, and postoperative dysphagia has been described in the literature as an adverse event.

Although dysphagia is common in PD, it rarely is severe enough that patients require an alternative means of nutritional support.

**SPEECH AND SWALLOWING DISORDERS IN MULTIPLE SYSTEM ATROPHY**

**Speech Disorders**

- Dysarthria is a common symptom of multiple system atrophy (MSA) and has been reported in up to 100% of unselected patients in some studies.\(^3\)

- Dysarthria in MSA is usually more severe than in PD and often emerges earlier in the course of the disease.\(^1\)

- Because of the involvement of multiple brain systems in MSA, the presentation of dysarthria can be expected to be heterogeneous and complex.

- A mixed dysarthria with features of hypokinetic, ataxic, and spastic types of dysarthria is described most frequently in patients with MSA.\(^1\) See Appendix B for a description of the perceptual features of these dysarthria types.\(^1\)
  - In patients with prominent features of parkinsonism (ie, MSA-P subtype), features of hypokinetic dysarthria may be expected to predominate.
  - In patients with prominent features of cerebellar dysfunction (ie, MSA-C subtype), features of ataxic dysarthria may be most notable.
  - In patients with prominent features of autonomic failure and ataxia, hypokinetic, and/or spastic dysarthria, alone or in combination, have been described.\(^3\)

- Stridor may occur in patients with MSA. This may result in respiratory ataxia and even necessitate a tracheostomy in severe cases. Stridor in MSA has usually been attributed to vocal cord paralysis, but some data suggest that the cause is laryngeal–pharyngeal dystonia.\(^3\)
TREATMENT

- Some data suggest that patients with MSA may benefit from LSVT.39
- Other maximum performance treatments, such as EMST, may be a sensible approach in some patients.

Swallowing Disorders

- Dysphagia is a well-known symptom of MSA.
- Dysphagia is often more severe in MSA than in PD.40
- Results of VFSE in patients with MSA reveal deficits in both the oral and pharyngeal stages.
  - Oral stage dysphagia in patients with MSA is often present even early in the disease and may become severe with disease progression. Oral deficits may include difficulty with holding and transporting the bolus.
  - Pharyngeal stage function may also be impaired, but much less so than the oral stage, especially early in the disease. Pharyngeal deficits may include decreased pharyngeal clearance, reduced laryngeal elevation, and incomplete relaxation of the UES.41,42
- Not surprisingly, dysphagia has also been reported in the literature, which uses the old terminology for MSA subtypes—striatonigral degeneration (SND), olivopontocerebellar atrophy (OPCA), and Shy-Drager syndrome (SDS)—although it has received little systematic attention.
  - Dysphagia has been reported in 44% of patients with SND and has been described infrequently as the initial symptom.2,43
  - In patients with OPCA, dysphagia has been reported in 24% to 33% of cases and has been described infrequently as the initial symptom.44
  - Dysphagia in SDS has received little attention, and it can be hypothesized that oropharyngeal dysphagia may be relatively uncommon in “pure” autonomic failure. Of course, with disease progression and the additional involvement of the extrapyramidal and cerebellar systems, oropharyngeal dysphagia becomes increasingly likely.

TREATMENT

- General treatment strategies can be found in the earlier section on the behavioral treatment of swallowing disorders.
- Intention treatment and attention treatment may be good approaches if akinesia dominates or if attention is disturbed.23
Depending on the biomechanical cause of the swallowing deficit, other strengthening exercises may be beneficial. Maximum performance techniques, such as LSVT and EMST, may benefit oropharyngeal swallow function in patients with MSA.

Speech and Swallowing in Progressive Supranuclear Palsy

Speech Disorders

- Dysarthria is common in patients with progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP). Some series of unselected patients demonstrate the presence of dysarthria in 70% to 100% of cases. The dysarthria of PSP is a mixed dysarthria with features of hypokinetic, spastic, and ataxic types. Appendix B details the perceptual features of these types of dysarthria.
- Recognizing the presence of a mixed dysarthria in PSP can help to distinguish it from PD.
- Dysarthria in PSP occurs early, often within the first 2 years of the onset of disease.
- Dysarthria is more frequently an initial symptom of neurological disease in PSP than in PD.
- Dysarthria may be severe, even relatively early in the disease. Anarthria or mutism may be exhibited in the later stages of the disease.
- Cognitive–linguistic deficits and other problems that affect communication, such as apathy and disinhibition, may also be present.

Treatment

- Although the data are limited, maximum performance treatments, such as LSVT and EMST, may be beneficial in the treatment of dysarthria in PSP. This approach may be most sensible when prominent features of hypokinetic and ataxic dysarthria are present.
- DAF has been reported to slow the speech rate, increase vocal intensity, and improve intelligibility in PSP.
- The rapid nature of decline in patients with PSP and the frequent cognitive deficits are negative prognostic indicators for treatment. Thus, speech treatments in PSP may be more effective if implemented early in the course of the disease, before speech and cognition become severely impaired.
Swallowing Disorders

- When swallowing function has been assessed with VFSE, dysphagia has been reported in more than 95% of patients with PSP.\textsuperscript{49}
  - In contrast to patients with PD, those with PSP and dysphagia are often aware of their difficulty in swallowing, even when they present with cognitive impairments.\textsuperscript{21}
  - The onset of swallowing difficulties in individuals with PSP may be a negative prognostic indicator of survival.\textsuperscript{24,45}
  - Oral stage deficits are often more frequent and severe than pharyngeal deficits in patients with PSP.\textsuperscript{23}

TREATMENT

- General treatment strategies can be found in the earlier section on the behavioral treatment of swallowing disorders.
- Intention treatment may benefit patients with prolonged inactivity during the oral stage or inefficient swallowing.\textsuperscript{23}
- When long delays in the oral initiation of the swallow are present, thermal tactile application may help.\textsuperscript{23}
- Strengthening exercises may also be indicated.
- Maximum performance techniques, such as LSVT and EMST, may benefit oropharyngeal swallow function in patients with PSP.

SPEECH AND SWALLOWING IN CORTICOBASOGANGLIONIC DEGENERATION

Speech Disorders

- The frequency of dysarthria in corticobasoganglionic degeneration (CBGD) has been reported to be as high as 85%.\textsuperscript{50}
- Hypokinetic, spastic, and ataxic types of dysarthria, presenting either in isolation or together as a mixed dysarthria, occur most frequently.\textsuperscript{1,50} Appendix B details the perceptual features of these types of dysarthria.
- Dysarthria in CBGD may be less severe than other motor impairments.\textsuperscript{51}
- AOS has also been reported in cases of CBGD\textsuperscript{1,52,53} and may be the earliest symptom.\textsuperscript{1,54–57} The presence of AOS can be important to the differential diagnosis. See Appendix B for a description of the perceptual features of AOS.
Although rarely, the degenerative nature of CBGD may eventually lead to the complete inability to produce speech.\textsuperscript{58–60}

Cognitive–linguistic impairments, including aphasia, often coexist with speech disorders in CBGD.\textsuperscript{7}

**TREATMENT**

- Maximum performance treatments, such as LSVT or EMST, may be sensible when prominent features of hypokinetic and ataxic dysarthria are present.
- Additional targets for treatment of dysarthria in CBGD may include the following:
  - The use of compensatory strategies to increase speech intelligibility, such as reducing the rate of speech, using an alphabet card to identify the first letter of a word, or saying something in a different way when misunderstood.
  - The patient and communication partners can be trained to use compensatory strategies to achieve successful communication.\textsuperscript{61}
- The treatment of AOS with intensive drill of sounds, syllables, words, and phrases may also be useful.
- Advance planning for the acquisition and use of an AAC device is recommended, particularly when cognitive and language skills are relatively intact.\textsuperscript{47,62}

**Swallowing Disorders**

- Swallowing disorders may occur in CBGD.
- No distinctive pattern of swallowing difficulty has been reported in patients with CBGD.
- The onset of swallowing difficulties in individuals with CBGD may be a negative prognostic indicator for survival.\textsuperscript{24,50}

**TREATMENT**

- General treatment strategies can be found in the earlier section on the behavioral treatment of swallowing disorders.
- Treatment may include strength training exercises and intention/attention treatment.\textsuperscript{23}
- Maximum performance techniques, such as LSVT and EMST, may benefit oropharyngeal swallow function in patients with CBGD.
SPEECH AND SWALLOWING IN SYNDROMES OF PROGRESSIVE ATAXIA

Speech Disorders

- Dysarthria is a common symptom in syndromes of progressive ataxia.
- Ataxic dysarthria is the type of dysarthria most frequently associated with these conditions. See Appendix B for a description of the perceptual features of ataxic dysarthria.
- Mixed dysarthria may also be encountered when neurological involvement is not restricted to the cerebellum. A description of the perceptual features of the following types of dysarthria may be found in Appendix B.
  - Dysarthria in the spinocerebellar ataxias, such as Friedreich ataxia, may present with components of ataxia and spasticity.\(^1,36\)
  - Mixed dysarthria, with features of the ataxic, hypokinetic, spastic, and flaccid types of dysarthria, may be encountered in patients with OPCA (see the section on MSA for further details).\(^1,36\)

TREATMENT

- The literature on the treatment of dysarthria in syndromes of progressive ataxia is noticeably sparse.
- The literature on the treatment of patients with ataxic dysarthria due to a variety of etiologies may provide guidance.
  - Rate control strategies can be beneficial in improving intelligibility in patients with ataxic dysarthria.\(^63\) Appropriate strategies may include DAF or the use of a pacing board.
  - Maximum performance treatments, such as LSVT and EMST, may have benefit in patients with ataxic dysarthria.\(^64,65\)

Swallowing Disorders

- Dysphagia appears to occur less frequently than dysarthria in patients with progressive ataxia.
  - However, VFSE results have shown oral and pharyngeal stage dysphagia, including premature spillage of the bolus, piecemeal deglutition, pharyngeal residue, and aspiration.\(^66\)
  - A likely explanation for dysphagic signs is the discoordination of oral, pharyngeal, and respiratory movements.
TREATMENT

- General treatment strategies can be found in the earlier section on the behavioral treatment of swallowing disorders.

- Dietary modifications, such as thickened liquids, and therapeutic techniques, such as the chin tuck and the supraglottic swallow, have been reported to be beneficial in preventing aspiration in patients with degenerative ataxia.66

SPEECH AND SWALLOWING IN HUNTINGTON’S DISEASE67

Speech Disorders

- The chorea of Huntington’s disease (HD) also manifests in the speech mechanism and results in a hyperkinetic dysarthria. The perceptual features of hyperkinetic dysarthria in chorea are shown in Appendix B.

- Dementia in HD may result in a variety of cognitive–linguistic impairments that have a negative influence on communication.61

TREATMENT

- Yorkston et al recommend a treatment approach for patients with HD that depends on the severity of their dysarthria and coexisting cognitive–linguistic deficits.61
  - In patients with mild dysarthria, drills to target prosody, techniques to reduce hyperkinesia in the larynx, and rate control activities may be beneficial.
  - In patients with moderate dysarthria, the behavioral techniques used in patients with mild dysarthria may continue, with the addition of patient and family training in strategies used to address communication breakdown.
  - In patients with HD and severe dysarthria, speech may no longer be understandable. Therapy may focus on techniques such as natural speech with supportive partners, alphabet boards, calendars and memory aids, making choices, yes–no questions, and conversation starters.

Swallowing Disorders

- In patients with HD who have primarily hyperkinetic symptoms, swallowing difficulties may include uncontrolled tachypagia, darting lingual chorea, uninhibited swallow initiation, and impaired inhibition of respiration with swallowing (ie, respiratory chorea).68,69
- Tachyphagia, or rapid uncontrolled swallowing, occurs often in patients who have HD with hyperkinetic symptoms.\textsuperscript{68,69}

- In patients with HD who have primarily symptoms of rigidity and bradykinesia, dysphagia is characterized by mandibular rigidity, inefficient mastication, and slow oral transit.
  - Post-swallow vallecular residue occurs frequently in patients with HD.\textsuperscript{68,69}

- Laryngeal penetration and aspiration occur infrequently in patients who have HD with hyperkinetic symptoms, but they are more frequently reported in patients with prominent rigidity and bradykinesia.\textsuperscript{68,69}

- Esophageal dysphagia occurs relatively infrequently, but eructation (excessive belching), aerophagia (swallowing air), vomiting, and esophageal dysmotility have been noted in some patients.\textsuperscript{69}

- Often, patients with HD do not report symptoms of dysphagia despite the presence of clinical symptoms.\textsuperscript{69} Aspiration pneumonia, asphyxiation due to choking on food, cachexia, and severe unintentional weight loss are the most common causes of death in those with long-standing HD.\textsuperscript{70}

**TREATMENT**

- General treatment strategies can be found in the earlier section on the behavioral treatment of swallowing disorders.

- Exercises may include effortful swallow and Showa maneuver as well as intention treatment.\textsuperscript{23}

- Management approaches often used in patients with HD and dysphagia include postural and position changes, assistive devices, supervision of meals to control rate of consumption and bolus size, dietary changes, and tube feeding.\textsuperscript{65}

- Bracing by having the patient rest his or her head against a wall or other supportive surface may aid swallowing during the early stage of the disease.

- Successful implementation of these approaches generally requires a great deal of caregiver assistance owing to the cognitive deficits in patients with HD, but they have been reported to be of considerable benefit.\textsuperscript{71}

- Patients with HD are at increased nutritional risk because of a multitude of factors, which include dysphagia, difficulty with food preparation due to chorea and cognitive deficits, impaired self-feeding skills, and increased calorie consumption due to chorea. Dietary supplements and consultations with dieticians may be beneficial in patients with HD.\textsuperscript{72}
Speech and Swallowing in Wilson’s Disease

Speech Disorders

- Dysarthria occurs commonly in patients with Wilson’s disease and has been reported in more than 90% of unselected patients with neurological manifestations of the disease. Wilson’s disease is most commonly associated with a mixed dysarthria that has features of the hypokinetic, spastic, and ataxic types. Appendix B details the perceptual features of these types of dysarthria.

- Dysarthria has been described to be the most frequent neurological manifestation of Wilson’s disease. Dysarthria may be the presenting symptom of Wilson’s disease.

- Lingual abnormalities, such as tremor, involuntary transverse and bilateral movements at rest and with action, and protrusion of the tongue, have been described in selected cases of Wilson’s disease.

- Speech involvement in Wilson’s disease may be complicated by coexisting dementia.

TREATMENT

- Very few data on the behavioral treatment of dysarthria in Wilson’s disease are available, although the benefit of speech therapy has been described.

- Although pharmacologic treatment with D-penicillamine (with or without zinc sulfate) has been shown to mitigate many neurological symptoms of Wilson’s disease, dysarthria may be resistant to this treatment.

- Improvement or elimination of dysarthria following liver transplant has been described.

Swallowing Disorders

- Dysphagia in Wilson’s disease has received little attention, although swallowing difficulties, including drooling, may occur. Dysphagia appears to be a less frequent neurological manifestation of the disease than dysarthria.

- Aspiration may be expected as disease severity increases.

- Pharyngeal and esophageal dysmotility has been reported.

- Sialorrhea, or an excessive secretion of saliva, has been reported in some cases. This problem is likely related to oropharyngeal dysphagia and decreased frequency of swallowing rather than to a true excess in the production of saliva.
General treatment strategies can be found in the earlier section on the behavioral treatment of swallowing disorders.

Because of the likelihood of behavioral, psychiatric, and cognitive abnormalities, strengthening exercises may be difficult for persons with Wilson's disease.23

The effect of dietary changes, pharmacologic treatment, and liver transplant on swallowing has received little attention.

### SPEECH AND SWALLOWING DISORDERS IN DYSTONIA

#### Speech Disorders

When the locus of dystonia targets any of the components of the speech mechanism, hyperkinetic dysarthria may result. See Appendix B for a description of the perceptual features of the hyperkinetic dysarthria associated with dystonia.

- **Generalized dystonia** may negatively affect respiratory function and be associated with decreased speech intelligibility.82

- **Neck dystonia** (cervical dystonia or spasmodic torticollis) may have a negative influence on laryngeal function, with lower habitual pitch, restricted pitch range, and decreased phonatory reaction time described in the literature.83 Speech differences in patients with neck dystonia are likely due to the effect of postural abnormalities on speech muscle activity and/or changes in the shape of the vocal tract.1

- **Laryngeal dystonia** or spasmodic dysphonia (adductor, abductor, or mixed type) results in prominent laryngeal abnormalities. Adductor spasmodic dysphonia, the most common type, results in a strained, strangled vocal quality, whereas abductor spasmodic dysphonia presents with a voice that is intermittently breathy or aphonic.1

- **Mouth and face dystonia** or oromandibular dystonia (OMD) may involve the masticatory, lower facial, and tongue muscles in a variety of combinations. When coupled with blepharospasm, this condition is often known as Meige syndrome or Brueghel syndrome. OMD can severely disrupt the function of the orofacial mechanism. Speech in OMD has been described as having imprecise consonants, a slow rate, inappropriate pauses, and abnormalities in stress.84,85

- **Lingual dystonia** may also occur in isolation, although rarely. This has been described as unilateral tongue puckering, ridging, and bulging.86 Lingual dystonia with tongue protrusion in isolation87 and combined
with OMD\textsuperscript{88} has also been reported. Lingual dystonia frequently causes dysarthria owing to involvement of the orofacial mechanism.\textsuperscript{88} Lingual dystonia coupled with palatal dystonia may also occur in rare cases.\textsuperscript{89} In a case such as this, involvement of both the orofacial mechanism and the velopharynx during speech may be expected.

- Jaw dystonia can result in either jaw-opening or jaw-closing OMD. Jaw-opening dystonia has been reported to be associated with cervical dystonia in some patients.\textsuperscript{90,91} Either jaw-opening or jaw-closing OMD can be expected to disrupt the orofacial mechanism component of speech production, and speech difficulties have been reported in patients with this condition.\textsuperscript{90,91}

- In dystonias that are considered focal, there may be more widespread involvement than expected. For example, respiratory involvement has been described in patients with cervical dystonia and blepharospasm.\textsuperscript{92} Dystonia of the soft palate has been reported in a high percentage of cases with laryngeal involvement (spasmodic dysphonia or essential voice tremor).\textsuperscript{93}

**TREATMENT**

- Sensory tricks (\textit{geste antagoniste}), such as a light touch to the affected area, may be beneficial for the speech of many patients with dystonia.\textsuperscript{1}

- The use of a bite block, a custom-fitted prosthesis placed between the upper and lower lateral teeth, has been reported to be beneficial in patients with OMD. Such a device may help to inhibit jaw movements during speech.\textsuperscript{94,95}

- The most widely used and accepted therapy for dystonia is local intramuscular injections of botulinum toxin type A, which may have a beneficial influence on speech.\textsuperscript{16,96,97}

- Lesion surgery and deep brain stimulation (DBS) are being increasingly used in the management of dystonia. The effects of surgical treatments on speech function are largely unexplored. Dysarthria may occur as a consequence of stimulation-related muscle contractions in patients who have dystonia treated with DBS.\textsuperscript{98}

**Swallowing Disorders**

- When the locus of dystonia targets any of the components of the swallowing mechanism, dysphagia may result.

  - Generalized dystonia may be associated with dysphagia. Coordination of respiration with swallowing may be more difficult in patients with respiratory involvement.
○ Neck dystonia (cervical dystonia or spasmodic torticollis) has been reported to be associated with dysphagia in approximately 50% of unselected patients in some series. Most frequent swallowing abnormalities include a delay in swallow initiation and vallecular residue.99

○ Laryngeal dystonia or spasmodic dysphonia (adductor, abductor, or mixed type) may result in dysphagia, but swallowing is usually relatively preserved in comparison with speech.

○ Mouth and face dystonia or oromandibular dystonia (also known as Meige syndrome or Brueghel syndrome) may have a negative effect on swallow function. In a series of unselected patients, 90% presented with swallowing abnormalities, which included premature spillage of the bolus and vallecular residue.100 Swallowing abnormalities in OMD may also include chewing difficulties and other deficits in oral preparation of the bolus.101

○ Lingual dystonia often results in dysphagia. In patients with tongue protrusion lingual dystonia with or without OMD, tongue biting and pushing food out of the oral cavity with the tongue have been described.88

○ Jaw dystonia may result in a variety of oral and pharyngeal stage deficits, which can be severe.

TREATMENT

■ General treatment strategies can be found in the earlier section on the behavioral treatment of swallowing disorders.

■ Postural adjustments and sensory tricks may have a beneficial effect on swallowing.23

○ Dysphagia may occur after or be exacerbated by treatments such as botulinum toxin injections102 and selective denervation.3

○ Lesion surgery and DBS are being increasingly used in the management of dystonia. The effects of surgical treatments on swallowing function are largely unexplored. Dysphagia may occur as a result of stimulation-related muscle contractions in patients who have dystonia treated with DBS.98

SPEECH AND SWALLOWING DISORDERS IN TARDIVE DYSKINESIA

Speech Disorders

■ Hyperkinetic dysarthria is the type of dysarthria associated with tardive dyskinesia (TD).1
Dysarthria in TD is most often due to orobuccal and lingual dyskinesia, but laryngeal and respiratory dyskinesia has also been reported.\textsuperscript{1,4,103,104}

Hyperkinetic dysarthria may also be the presenting symptom of TD.\textsuperscript{104}

\textbf{TREATMENT}

Medical management of TD appears to be the most appropriate treatment for dysarthria associated with this condition.

The literature on behavioral treatments for TD is very limited. Appropriate treatments for patients who have hyperkinetic dysarthria associated with other etiologies may include postural adjustments and the use of a bite block.

\textbf{Swallowing Disorders}

Dysphagia in TD most commonly consists of difficulty containing foods and liquids in the mouth, as well as inefficient bolus formation and movement.

The discoordination of oral and pharyngeal swallowing may result in delayed initiation of the swallow, post-swallow pharyngeal residue, and aspiration.

Dysphagia can be severe enough to cause weight loss.\textsuperscript{105}

\textbf{TREATMENT}

General treatment strategies can be found in the earlier section on the behavioral treatment of swallowing disorders.

The medical management of TD appears to be the most appropriate treatment for dysphagia associated with this condition.

\textbf{REFERENCES}


APPENDIX A

Grandfather Passage

You wish to know all about my grandfather. Well, he is nearly 93 years old, yet he still thinks as swiftly as ever. He dresses himself in an old black frock coat, usually with several buttons missing. A long beard clings to his chin, giving those who observe him a pronounced feeling of the utmost respect. Twice each day, he plays skillfully and with zest upon a small organ. Except in the winter, when the snow or ice prevents, he slowly takes a short walk in the open air each day. We have often urged him to walk more and smoke less, but he always answers, “Banana oil!” Grandfather likes to be modern in his language.

### Table Appendix B
Perceptual Features of Motor Speech Disorders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hyperkinetic Dysarthria–Chorea</th>
<th>Hyperkinetic Dysarthria–Dystonia</th>
<th>Apraxia of Speech</th>
<th>Flaccid Dysarthria</th>
<th>Spastic Dysarthria</th>
<th>Ataxic Dysarthria</th>
<th>Hypokinetic Dysarthria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imprecise consonants</td>
<td>Imprecise consonants</td>
<td>Consonant distortions</td>
<td>Hypernasality&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Imprecise consonants&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Imprecise consonants</td>
<td>Monopitch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prolonged intervals&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Distorted vowels&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Substitutions</td>
<td>Monopitch</td>
<td>Equal and excess stress</td>
<td>Reduced stress</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable rate&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Harsh vocal quality&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Distorted substitutions</td>
<td>Imprecise consonants</td>
<td>Reduced stress</td>
<td>Irregular articulatory breakdowns&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Monoloudness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monopitch</td>
<td>Irregular articulatory breakdowns&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Additions</td>
<td>Breathiness (continuous)&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Harshness</td>
<td>Distorted vowels&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Imprecise consonants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harsh vocal quality&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Strained–strangled voice&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Distorted additions</td>
<td>Monopitch</td>
<td>Low pitch&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Harsh vocal quality</td>
<td>Inappropriate silences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inappropriate silences&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Monopitch</td>
<td>Omissions</td>
<td>Nasal emission&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Slow rate&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Prolonged phonemes&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Short rushes of speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distorted vowels</td>
<td>Monoloudness</td>
<td>Slow overall rate</td>
<td>Audible inspiration&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Strained–strangled voice&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Prolonged intervals&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Harsh vocal quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excess loudness variations(^a)</td>
<td>Inappropriate silences(^a)</td>
<td>Syllable segregation</td>
<td>Harsh vocal quality</td>
<td>Short phrases</td>
<td>Monopitch</td>
<td>Breathy voice (continuous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prolonged phonemes(^a)</td>
<td>Short phrases</td>
<td>Groping for articulatory postures</td>
<td>Short phrases(^a)</td>
<td>Distorted vowels</td>
<td>Monoloudness</td>
<td>Low pitch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monoloudness</td>
<td>Prolonged intervals</td>
<td>Difficulty with initiation</td>
<td>Monoloudness</td>
<td>Pitch breaks</td>
<td></td>
<td>Variable rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short phrases</td>
<td>Prolonged phonemes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Increased rate in segments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular articulatory breakdowns</td>
<td>Excess loudness variations(^a)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equal and excess stress</td>
<td>Reduced stress</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\) Indicates features that may be more distinctive or severe than in other types of dysarthria.

Good nutrition is essential to maintain the well-being of individuals with neurological disease. There are several reasons why nutrition is important in movement disorders:

- Nutrition may impact mobility, cognition, and swallowing function. Movement disorders, by definition, result in changes in mobility and may lead to a decreased capacity to perform activities of daily living, such as cooking and shopping.
- Cognitive dysfunction may impact the capacity to plan healthy meals.
- Parkinson’s disease (PD), other parkinsonian disorders, and many causes of chorea and ataxia can be associated with dysphagia.
- Poor nutrition in movement disorders may contribute to weight loss. Conversely, decreased levels of activity may lead to a sedentary lifestyle and obesity, exacerbating the underlying neurological disability.
- Finally, individuals with movement disorders often actively pursue both traditional and nontraditional treatment alternatives, vitamin therapies, and herbal remedies, which are frequently proposed for the management of many symptoms.

Patients will often discuss nutrition with their primary neurologist or primary care physician. All of the reasons listed above suggest that physicians caring for individuals with movement disorders should be familiar with appropriate nutritional strategies for these patients. This chapter is structured to discuss the malnourished patient and nutritional issues with respect to the various movement disorders (ie, PD and other parkinsonian disorders, Huntington’s disease [HD] and other choreiform disorders, dystonia, and ataxia). These sections are followed by a discussion of nutritional supplements.
Unintended weight loss is simply defined as a decrease in body weight that is *not* voluntary. Weight loss can occur with decreased food intake, increased metabolism, or both. Individuals with movement disorders should be weighed periodically as part of a routine neurological evaluation. Significant weight loss (<10% of body weight) that is unintended should prompt a discussion of potential causes. Various parkinsonian disorders, choreiform disorders, essential tremor, and ataxic disorders can all be similarly associated with weight loss. Weight loss in movement disorders may be due not only to decreased intake but also to changes in energy demands (in some cases, individuals with severe tremor, dyskinesia, or chorea may have associated weight loss).¹,² Unintentional weight loss can have similar causes across movement disorders (Figure 19.1).

- *Decreased ability to swallow.* Patients who have trouble swallowing eat more slowly, are satiated (satisfied) more easily, and eat less.

---

**Figure 19.1**

Factors leading to poor nutrition in patients with movement disorders.
Decreased appetite. Apathy, anxiety, or depression frequently accompanies movement disorders such as HD and PD, and any of them may result in a decreased interest in food or food preparation. Drugs such as levodopa may cause nausea or decreased appetite. Changes in sensation, such as a decreased sense of smell (a common finding in PD), may result in decreased taste and craving for food.

Poor oral hygiene. Motor deficits associated with difficulties in performing activities of daily living, such as attending to hygiene needs, may contribute to poor dentition and impact nutrition.

Elevated energy needs. Patients who have frequent episodes of moderate to marked tremors, dyskinesia, or rigidity may burn calories faster.

Psychosocial factors. Individuals with advancing disease may progressively burden caregivers, sometimes overwhelming their capacity to provide adequate care.

Gastrointestinal dysfunction. In many disorders, such as PD and multiple system atrophy (MSA), autonomic dysfunction can affect gut function, causing reflux, constipation, and other problems.

Executive dysfunction. Cognitive dysfunction, particularly difficulties in planning and coordinating complex activities, can interfere with the capacity of individuals with limited support networks to plan and cook meals.

Other disorders of aging. Although weight loss may be a unique feature of many movement disorders, unplanned weight loss may also be a sign of other medical illnesses, such as malignancy, gastrointestinal defects, chronic infections, and endocrine defects.

Nutritional assessment and intervention are important components of overall care in individuals with movement disorders. The purpose of this chapter is to discuss factors that may result in poor nutrition in the various movement disorders and strategies for their evaluation and management.

Nutrition in Parkinson’s Disease

Helping patients become aware of their dietary habits and energy needs, and educating them about the elements of a balanced diet as well as techniques for altering poor eating habits, can be an important part of the management of nutrition in PD. Patients should eat a balanced diet with sufficient fiber and fluid to prevent constipation. Individuals with PD may have many of the barriers to nutrition identified in Figure 19.1. Management strategies tailored to each assessed need should be formulated.
Dysphagia

Increased oral transit time is a common finding in PD. As discussed in Chapter 18, all phases of swallowing can be involved. The early phases (oral and pharyngeal) of swallowing are most affected. Modified barium swallow examination or videofluoroscopic assessment may be needed. There is no universal approach to the management of dysphagia in PD. **Management can be challenging because dysphagia in PD invariably does not respond well to pharmacologic treatment for the motor symptoms of PD.** Current management includes the following:

- Referral for speech therapy for any patient who experiences choking or problems with swallowing. Alterations in swallowing technique may help with function.
- Changes in food consistency (soft, texture-modified diet and thickening of fluids) may be helpful for some patients.
- Postural adaptations and adjustments may be useful.
- Optimizing dopaminergic medications may be helpful in some patients. Levodopa and apomorphine can improve the early phases of swallowing.
- Gastrostomy feeding tube placement should be considered in patients with advanced disease.
- Botulinum toxin injection, cricopharyngeal muscle resection, and deep brain stimulation (DBS) for dysphagia in PD have been reported in a limited number of cases.
- Currently, there is no clear evidence to recommend the use of complementary therapies for the treatment of dysphagia in PD.
- Limited reports on the benefits of speech therapy (eg, Lee Silverman voice therapy) suggest that it may mitigate dysphasia because it strengthens not only the speech muscles but the swallowing muscles as well.

Decreased Appetite

Individuals with weight loss should specifically be asked about appetite. Dopaminergic therapy can change appetite. Levodopa, for example, commonly decreases appetite and may cause nausea. Dopamine agonists, on the other hand, may increase appetite. A mood disorder, such as depression or anxiety, may also impact appetite. Management may include the following:

- Taking levodopa with meals. Patients who experience nausea as a side effect of levodopa may take this medication with meals. However, in the presence of wearing-off symptoms, protein competition (large amino acids
in particular) can limit levodopa absorption; therefore, it may be best for the patient to take levodopa at least half an hour before meals or 2 hours after eating. The timing of levodopa dosing should be individualized.

- Evaluation for and treatment of anxiety or depression. These may cause a loss of appetite or sometimes overeating.
- Although some nutritional supplements, such as branched-chain amino acids, may stimulate appetite, they may induce wearing off and should be used with extra caution.\(^3\)

### Elevated Energy Needs

Treatment should be tailored to the patient.

- Mild dyskinesia may be a necessary compromise to maintain good motor function in levodopa-sensitive patients in the later stages of PD, and it should not automatically be a reason to alter medical therapy. A mild increase in dietary caloric intake may be an appropriate management strategy to replenish calories lost from excessive movement.
- In patients with severe dyskinesia sufficient to alter energy requirements, changes in medication, including lowering the overall dose of levodopa, may help mitigate symptoms.
- Severe tremor can increase energy requirements and can significantly interfere with quality of life. Increasing the levodopa dose or adding an agonist or anticholinergic agent may be helpful.
- If medication alterations are not helpful for severe tremors or dyskinesia, DBS may be considered in selected patients, as discussed in Chapter 16.

### Autonomic Dysfunction

Autonomic dysfunction is a common complication of PD. Although overshadowed by motor dysfunction in many patients, a large number of patients with PD experience significant effects of autonomic dysfunction, including constipation, urinary problems, impotence, orthostasis, impaired thermoregulation, and sensory disturbances. Gastrointestinal manifestations may in particular impact nutrition.

- **Gastroesophageal reflux.** Poor transit through the stomach can lead to the reflux of acid into the esophagus. Gastroesophageal reflux is treatable and should not be overlooked as a cause of nausea in PD. If reflux is present, decreasing the size of meals and avoiding trigger foods like caffeine, citrus fruits, tomatoes, and alcohol should be first-line treatment. Numerous small meals and snacks that are nutrient-dense and moderate in fat and
fiber may be helpful. The day’s final meal should be consumed at least 4 hours before bedtime, so that the stomach is empty before the patient lies down. Herbal remedies for dyspepsia with metallic additives should not be given because they can inhibit levodopa absorption.

- **Constipation.** There is evidence that the neurodegenerative process may cause constipation. Lewy body deposition has been discovered in the myenteric plexus of patients with PD. Slowed stool transit time may result in constipation, with changes in appetite related to a feeling of fullness and intestinal discomfort. Dietary changes form the keystone of good management for PD. The management of constipation can be conservative, pharmacologic, or both.

  - **Conservative treatment** includes the following recommendations:
    - Drink at least eight full glasses of water each day.
    - Include high-fiber raw vegetables in at least two meals per day.
    - Oat bran and other high-fiber additives may be helpful.
    - Avoid baked goods and bananas.
    - Increase physical activity; for example, walking and swimming are good.
    - Discontinue medications causing constipation if possible.

  - **Pharmacologic treatment**
    - Consider psyllium (5.1 g twice daily) or polyethylene glycol 3350 (up to 17 mg daily) if conservative management fails.
    - Avoid the chronic use of laxatives, including senna and cascara sagrada, as these are less physiologic strategies that may damage the colon with prolonged use.

- **Defecatory dysfunction.** Some practitioners have suggested that a paradoxical contraction of the pelvic floor musculature consistent with a pelvic floor dystonia may occur in some patients, leading to poor colonic emptying. In one study, defecatory function was improved in eight patients with PD after the administration of apomorphine. Botulinum toxin injections into the puborectalis muscle under ultrasonic guidance have also been reported to improve anorectal function in PD.

- **Sialorrhea.** Sialorrhea is very common in PD, affecting more than 70% of patients. It may affect nutrition and can be embarrassing in social situations. Recent studies have shown that sialorrhea results from concomitant swallowing difficulties rather than excessive salivation. Although the use of sugar-free chewing gum or hard candy may be helpful in patients with mild symptoms, pharmacologic treatment should be considered when more
aggressive interventions are warranted. Evidence-based pharmacologic treatment includes the following:

- Glycopyrrolate (1 mg 3 times daily)\(^\text{10}\)
- Sublingual administration of ipratropium spray and atropine ophthalmic\(^\text{11}\)
- Botulinum toxin type A or B injections into the parotid and submandibular glands\(^\text{12,13}\)

**Xerostomia (dry mouth).** Some anticholinergic medications, such as benzotropine and medications used for bladder dysfunction, can cause dry mouth. The long-term effects of dry mouth include increased dental caries and gingivitis, and dry mouth can be a significant problem in individuals who already have difficulty in performing the activities of daily living, including oral hygiene. Stopping the offending medication, if possible, is usually the only effective therapy.

### Cognitive and Psychosocial Factors

Caregivers of individuals with PD, especially spouses, face an increasing burden with time, particularly in the later stages of disease, when the rate of depression for caregivers is higher.\(^\text{14}\) Caregivers may themselves be ill or older. Increasing problems with activities of daily living may result in decreased overall hygiene, including decreased oral hygiene, which may affect the patient’s capacity to eat. Evidence of malnutrition in a patient with PD should prompt a full psychosocial evaluation, including the following:

- Home physical therapy and occupational therapy evaluation to evaluate the living situation
- Social work interaction to evaluate caregiver resources
- Dental evaluation if there is evidence of dental disease
- Neuropsychological evaluation to gauge the presence of significant dementia interfering with function

### Other Disorders

- Individuals with PD are subject to other disorders of aging, and abrupt changes in weight or appetite should prompt a consideration of other potential medical causes, including malignancy and endocrine abnormalities.
- A recent review suggested that overweight in PD seems to be associated with cardiovascular risk factors, such as hypertension, diabetes, and hypercholesterolemia.\(^\text{15}\) However, further studies are needed to put forth strong evidence of this association.
Other Nutritional Considerations in Parkinson’s Disease

Medical management in PD has significant nutritional ramifications. Dopaminergic medications may cause nausea and vomiting in some patients. Medications may also cause other side effects that impact nutrition. Conversely, protein intake may interfere with medication absorption. The effects of medical therapy on overall nutritional status should be attended to. Specific issues include the following:

- **Levodopa-related nausea and vomiting.** The initiation of levodopa may cause nausea and vomiting. Management strategies to mitigate levodopa-induced nausea include these:
  - When a patient starts levodopa, an initial dose of half a tablet 3 times daily should be used to decrease the chance of nausea.
  - Initially, patients may need to take levodopa with food.
  - Ginger tea and crystallized ginger, which can be chewed, may help some patients.
  - Extra carbidopa (25- to 50-mg dose, taken with levodopa) may help mitigate the peripheral effects of levodopa (when converted to dopamine outside the central nervous system), including nausea.
  - Domperidone, available in pharmacies outside the United States and occasionally in compound pharmacies, has proved to be effective and safe in PD and can also mitigate nausea.
  - Prochlorperazine (Compazine) and metoclopramide (Reglan) are to be avoided because they block dopamine receptors and can increase parkinsonian symptoms.

- **Levodopa–protein interaction.** Large, neutral amino acids compete with levodopa for uptake, both from the gut and across the blood–brain barrier. Interactions between protein and levodopa usually become evident in patients in the later stages of PD. Management strategies include the following:
  - The immediate-release formulation of levodopa is taken 30 minutes before meals.
  - Protein restriction during the day has been recommended by some practitioners. This strategy works as a short-term solution but may not be as effective as a long-term solution. It is not tolerated by patients and results in a low energy intake.
  - Domperidone can improve both gastric emptying and levodopa absorption. It can combat nausea and vomiting in extreme cases.
Recently, levodopa/carbidopa intestinal gel, which is delivered directly to the proximal jejunum via a percutaneous endoscopic gastrojejunostomy tube connected to a portable infusion pump, has been tested in patients with advanced PD, as delayed gastric emptying may contribute to the motor fluctuations seen with oral levodopa.\textsuperscript{17}

\textbf{Unplanned weight gain.} Unplanned weight gain can be an idiosyncratic side effect of dopamine agonists such as pramipexole (Mirapex), rotigotine (Neupro patch), and ropinirole (Requip). They may cause an increased caloric intake, or they may increase fluid retention. Compulsive eating, particularly sweets and carbohydrates, may also occur. Amantadine may also increase fluid retention. Management may include the following:

\begin{itemize}
  \item Physical activity can be increased.
  \item Decreased salt intake may help in some cases.
  \item Discontinuation or alteration of the dose of the offending medication may be necessary.
  \item Obsessive behaviors related to dopamine agonists are idiosyncratic and do not appear to be strictly dose-related. Typically, these problems are not treatable except by stopping the offending medication. The observation of obsessive eating should prompt questions about other obsessive behaviors, such as gambling and sexual obsessions.
  \item DBS, in particular DBS of the subthalamic nucleus (STN), may result in weight gain for unclear reasons.
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Nutrition in Other Parkinsonian Disorders}

The management of nutrition in other neurodegenerative parkinsonian conditions is similar to the management in PD. In many cases, dysphagia is a more significant cause of poor nutrition. Specific issues relevant to individual disorders are discussed next.

\textbf{Multiple System Atrophy}

Patients with MSA have unique pharmacologic challenges related to nutrition. In many cases, autonomic instability with orthostasis is a significant cause of disability.

Many patients are levodopa-responsive, but levodopa may cause significant side effects, such as lowering blood pressure. Blood pressure fluctuations may also be related to the digestion of meals. Dysphagia clearly impacts nutrition. Issues related to nutrition in MSA may include these:
Dysphagia. Individuals with MSA may experience choking, difficulties swallowing, and aspiration. Management includes the following:

- Speech pathologists should be part of the management team and should be consulted early.
- Because dysphagia can become significant later in the disease process, it is reasonable to ascertain early the patient’s wishes with respect to feeding tubes and other supportive nutritional devices.

Gastrointestinal dysfunction. The autonomic dysfunction impacting the gastrointestinal tract is similar to that found in idiopathic PD but is frequently more severe. Management is similar to the management in PD.

Postprandial hypotension. This complication commonly occurs 30 to 90 minutes after a meal. Hypotension can be significant and sometimes results in syncope and falls. Management includes the following:

- Limiting meal size and increasing the frequency of meals.
- Taking 5 to 10 mg of midodrine before meals to increase adrenergic tone after meals. **Midodrine should not be taken within 4 hours of sleep.**
- Limiting the levodopa dose. The impact of levodopa on motor function must be balanced against its impact on blood pressure.

Cognitive dysfunction. Executive dysfunction can become a significant source of disability and caregiver strain later in the disease process, and it should be managed in a multidisciplinary fashion.

Increased energy requirements. Later in the disease process, patients are less mobile and prone to develop pressure sores, and a catabolic metabolism may develop as the capacity to take food by mouth declines. The management can be challenging, and the strategy should be based on the wishes of the family and patient.

Progressive Supranuclear Palsy

Patients with progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP) are rarely levodopa-responsive, and medications interact less with nutrition than they do in PD or MSA. Dysphagia and executive dysfunction are significant sources of disability. The management of issues related to nutrition includes the following:

- Dysphagia. Aspiration is a common cause of mortality in PSP. A speech pathologist should be consulted early. End-of-life issues should be discussed early, before cognitive dysfunction limits the patient’s capacity to make decisions.
- Executive dysfunction. Executive dysfunction is a significant cause of disability in PSP. Significant cognitive changes develop relatively early in the course of the disease, increasing caregiver burden.
Apraxia. Individuals with PSP and parkinsonism associated with dementia may develop progressive bradykinesia and apraxia of limb movements. This type of apraxia may impact eating behavior. Supranuclear gaze palsy together with neck rigidity frequently interferes with the ability to look down at a plate in the later stages of the disease. Consequently, individuals with PSP develop progressive problems with self-feeding.

Increased energy requirements. As mentioned, later in the disease process, patients are less mobile and prone to develop pressure sores, and a catabolic metabolism may develop as the capacity to take food by mouth declines. The management of PSP, MSA, and parkinsonism in the end stages is challenging and should respect the wishes of the family and patient.

Other Parkinsonian Syndromes

Corticobasoganglionic degeneration (CBGD) and other causes of parkinsonism, including vascular parkinsonism, typically require management strategies similar to those delineated for PD, MSA, and PSP.

NUTRITION IN CHOREIFORM DISORDERS

Choreiform disorders comprise a vast landscape of disease processes. Although the causes of these disorders vary, phenomenologically, the disorders share similar issues with respect to nutrition.

Increased energy requirements due to chorea may necessitate an increase in the patient’s caloric intake. In HD, chorea is associated with weight loss. Nutrition should be planned to allow for the increased energy demands of individuals who have significant chorea.

Dysphagia is a common complaint in nearly all choreiform disorders (with the exception of tardive dyskinesia). The speech pathologist is an integral part of the management team for all of these disorders.

Chorea may occasionally interfere with self-feeding.

Cognitive and mood changes are common in all of the choreiform disorders and can impact the caregiver burden, as well as the patient’s and caregiver’s capacity to develop appropriate nutritional plans.

Nutritional management in HD may include the following:

- A thick, pureed, or chopped diet with sufficient energy and protein. Usually, 1 to 1.5 g of protein per kilogram of patient weight is needed. Patients with HD may need up to 5,000 kcal/d.
- Fluid intake should be sufficient because dehydration is common.
○ Adequate fiber should be provided.
○ The caregiver should be educated about thickening liquids to prevent episodes of choking.
○ Percutaneous gastrostomy tube feeding should be implemented when necessary.

NUTRITION IN ATAXIA

Genetic causes of ataxia overlap in many cases with genetic causes of chorea. Ataxia brings specific challenges to nutrition, many of which have been discussed in previous sections with respect to other movement disorders.

- **Dysphagia.** This is a common finding and warrants referral for swallowing evaluation. As in many of the movement disorders, the speech pathologist is an integral part of the team.

- **Ataxia.** Ataxia can significantly interfere with feeding. In some patients, a cerebellar or rubral tremor may prevent the patient from bringing food to the mouth. Occupational therapy may be able to assist with weighted utensils or other devices that allow feeding.

NUTRITION IN TARDIVE DYSKINESIA

Tardive dyskinesia may occur in patients taking dopamine receptor blockers, including neuroleptics and antiemetics. Tardive dyskinesia primarily involves the tongue, lips, and jaw. Nutrition may be affected because these patients mostly have psychiatric conditions, are often elderly, and are not uncommonly institutionalized. Difficulty with self-feeding often leads to weight loss. Nutritional management may include the following:

- Offer a soft diet for some patients to reduce chewing as needed.
- Assess weight status. Increase energy intake in case of increased energy demands due to severe dyskinesia. Decrease energy intake if the patient is obese.
- Carbohydrate craving is common. Watch overall intake of sweets, or offer nutrient-dense varieties to reduce hyperglycemia.¹⁸
- Self-feeding practices may be needed.

NUTRITIONAL DERANGEMENTS AS A CAUSE OF MOVEMENT DISORDERS

Although rare, a limited number of movement disorders are caused by aberrant nutritional absorption. Wilson’s disease is caused by aberrant copper metabolism. Vitamin E deficiency can cause ataxia. Disorders of iron storage can cause chorea and ataxia. Specific nutritional requirements may be required for some diseases based on the diagnosis.
SWALLOWING DYSFUNCTION IN PATIENTS WITH MOVEMENT DISORDERS

It is appropriate to close our discussion of barriers to nutrition in movement disorders by briefly discussing swallowing dysfunction. Swallowing dysfunction is a common feature of many movement disorders.19

- Oropharyngeal dysphagia (abnormal swallowing) may result in many complications, including dehydration, malnutrition, bronchospasm, and airway obstruction, as well as aspiration pneumonia and chronic chest infection.

- Secondary consequences of poor swallowing function may include increased caregiver strain, social isolation, and depression,20 and swallowing dysfunction may therefore become a substantial component of disability.

- Evidence of aspiration, such as coughing or choking during meals, should be elicited during routine history.

- The management of dysphagia in movement disorders is covered elsewhere in this textbook; however, prompt referral to a speech pathologist is mandatory for any patient with swallowing dysfunction. In later stages of disease, the insertion of a percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG) tube for nutrition may be warranted.

EVIDENCE ON NUTRITIONAL SUPPLEMENTS

A large body of literature has been developed in support of the hypothesis that oxidative stress is a contributing factor in the pathophysiology of many neurodegenerative diseases.20,21 This literature led to the hypothesis that nutritional supplements that are antioxidant “scavengers” of free radicals might alter the progression of neurodegenerative disease. Multiple nutritional supplements have been proposed. Well-designed studies are lacking for any but a few nutritional supplements, owing in part to the large number of contenders in the field and to a lack of consensus on appropriate trial design. No nutritional agent has been shown to date to have the capacity to alter the course of any neurodegenerative disease.22 As nutrition is a subject that is frequently brought up by patients, it is appropriate for clinicians to have some familiarity with research in this area. A discussion of the nutritional supplements that have been formally evaluated in well-designed clinical studies follows.

Vitamin Therapy

- Vitamins C and E
  - Vitamins C and E both have antioxidant properties, which has prompted some practitioners to tout them as potential neuroprotective agents. Moreover, vitamin C can elevate levodopa levels, theoretically leading to potential symptomatic effects.23 Epidemiological studies have shown
that consuming foods rich in vitamins C and E is associated with a lower risk for developing PD.\(^{24}\) A nonrandomized, unblinded study suggested that combining vitamins E and C might slow the rate of progression in patients with early PD;\(^{25}\) however, DATATOP (Deprenyl And Tocopherol Antioxidative Therapy of Parkinsonism), a randomized, blinded study of high-dose vitamin E alone by the Parkinson Study Group, in which the initiation of levodopa was used as a surrogate marker, did not show any difference between the vitamin E group and a placebo group.\(^{26}\) In addition, a meta-analysis of observational studies assessing high dietary intake of vitamin E and risk for PD suggested an overall decreased risk for PD.\(^{27}\) Vitamin C supplementation was not found to reduce the risk for incident PD in this meta-analysis. As a result of these studies, the American Academy of Neurology Quality Standards Subcommittee reported that vitamin E probably does not delay the need for levodopa therapy and recommended that treatment with 2,000 units of vitamin E not be considered for neuroprotection in PD.\(^{22}\)

- Vitamin E has also been tried in other movement disorders. A trial of vitamin E in HD showed no improvement in the primary outcome variable (neuropsychological change).\(^{28}\) Although it has been suggested, there is no clear evidence of the beneficial effect of vitamin E in Friedreich ataxia in the literature because of the lack of controlled studies, the variable doses used, and the association with other antioxidant medications. Some researchers have proposed vitamin E as a treatment for tardive dyskinesia. However, current data from small trials of limited quality suggest that the beneficial effect of vitamin E seems restricted, at best, to the prevention of deterioration of tardive dyskinesia rather than relief of symptoms.\(^{29}\)

- A fairly large literature exists on vitamins E and C in the prevention or treatment of Alzheimer dementia; however, randomized, well-controlled studies are lacking, and there is currently no clear evidence in the dementia literature that either vitamin alone or the two in combination affect neurological function in the dementias.\(^{30}\)

- There is therefore no evidence to recommend vitamin E treatment to patients with movement disorders. The evidence is currently insufficient to evaluate if vitamin C may have disease-modifying effects.

### Vitamin D

- Vitamin D deficiency can cause osteoporosis in elderly people. Patients with PD may be at particular risk. Because of postural instability, increased risk for falling, and bone fractures, the prevention of osteoporosis is essential in patients with PD. **Vitamin D insufficiency is common among patients with PD.** It has been proposed that vitamin D deficiency has a significant role in the development and progression of PD.\(^{31}\) A recent longitudinal
study with a cohort of 3,173 individuals and a 29-year follow-up period also showed that subjects with higher serum levels of vitamin D had a significantly lower risk for the development of PD.\textsuperscript{32} Although it is not clear whether vitamin D insufficiency contributes to the development of PD or is a result of reduced physical activity and exposure to sunlight resulting from the nature of the disease, recent studies support the possible link between vitamin D intake and the pathogenesis of PD.

- **Vitamin D levels should be analyzed regularly in patients with PD to maintain bone health.** Vitamin D can be obtained through exposure to sunlight, diet, or nutritional supplements. The diet of patients who live in a region with limited sunshine or who have difficulty getting outdoors should include calcium and vitamin D. Milk, yogurt, fish, and breakfast cereals are the richest sources of calcium. The recommended dietary allowance of vitamin D is 200 to 600 IU per day.\textsuperscript{33}

### Vitamin B\textsubscript{6}, Vitamin B\textsubscript{12}, and Folate

- It has been documented that elevated homocysteine, which is a modestly independent predictor of risk for ischemic heart disease and stroke, occurs in patients with PD who are taking levodopa.\textsuperscript{34,35} Because the B vitamins, including folate, vitamin B\textsubscript{6}, and vitamin B\textsubscript{12}, are important cofactors for homocysteine, a deficiency of B vitamins can lead to elevated homocysteine. A double-blinded study showed that B-vitamin supplementation can lower this elevation.\textsuperscript{36} Therefore, it has been suggested that B-vitamin supplements may be warranted for patients who have PD with levodopa-related elevated homocysteine to overcome the possibly related risk for ischemic heart disease and stroke. However, no studies have shown an increased risk for vascular diseases in patients with PD and elevated homocysteine.\textsuperscript{37}

- The effects of homocysteine and B vitamins on the motor and nonmotor symptoms of PD also have been studied. In a recent study, the homocysteine level did not correlate with global measures of cognition, mood, or parkinsonism in PD or with dyskinesia fluctuations, or freezing, whereas higher levels of vitamin B\textsubscript{12} were associated with a lower risk for dyskinesia risk.\textsuperscript{38} Because it has also been demonstrated that elevated homocysteine levels are more likely in patients with PD who have depression and worse cognition, it has been suggested that the benefits of folate, vitamin B\textsubscript{6}, and vitamin B\textsubscript{12} may be more evident for the nonmotor symptoms of PD than for the motor symptoms.\textsuperscript{39,40}

- In terms of the neuroprotective effects of B vitamins, studies have shown that folate and vitamin B\textsubscript{12} intake does not reduce the risk for incident PD, whereas vitamin B\textsubscript{6} intake may lower the risk for PD among smokers only, probably through mechanisms unrelated to homocysteine metabolism.\textsuperscript{3,41-43}
Although some researchers suggest that supplementation with B vitamins is important for managing elevated homocysteine levels in patients with PD, the effects of B vitamins on PD are still unclear, and further studies evaluating the effects of B vitamins on motor and non-motor function in patients with PD are needed.

Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> supplementation should be considered in PD because its deficiency is very common in elderly people and may cause neuropathy, cognitive changes, and vision loss. Cognitive decline is often the most limiting nonmotor feature of PD. Patients with PD taking high doses of levodopa may also present with peripheral neuropathy due to vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency. On the other hand, patients with PD may avoid meat and other foods that contain vitamin B<sub>12</sub> because protein intake among patients with PD may interfere with the clinical benefit of levodopa. Therefore, patients with PD should be assessed for possible vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency and treated as needed.

The effect of B vitamins on other movement disorders is not clear. A double-blinded, placebo-controlled, crossover study of 15 patients showed that symptoms of tardive dyskinesia were reduced in those taking vitamin B<sub>6</sub> by the third week of treatment. However, the duration of the benefit is uncertain.

### Coenzyme Q

Mitochondrial dysfunction has been demonstrated in idiopathic PD. Coenzyme Q is an important intermediary in the respiratory chain. A single randomized, blinded study of the safety and efficacy of coenzyme Q showed a positive trend ($P = .09$) in individuals given a higher (1,200-mg) dose of coenzyme Q, with less disability as shown by a decreased change from baseline in the Unified Parkinson’s Disease Rating Scale (UPDRS). Subsequently, a randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled trial of coenzyme Q10 evaluating its symptomatic effects in PD showed no significant difference between treatment and placebo, although patients in both groups showed significant improvements from baseline in UPDRS scores. In a multicenter, randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled study of coenzyme Q10, it was found that the mean changes in total UPDRS scores were not significantly greater than the predetermined futility threshold value.

A multicenter, randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled trial of coenzyme Q10 at a dosage of 600 mg/d in patients with HD showed no change in the rate of decline. Because this study noted a trend toward slowed progression of HD without statistical significance among subjects treated with coenzyme Q10, a study evaluating the safety and tolerability of high-dose coenzyme Q10 in HD was recently conducted to assess the possibility of beneficial effects of a higher dose of coenzyme Q. The study showed that high doses of coenzyme Q10 were well...
tolerated, and further studies examining the efficacy of 2,400 mg/d are planned. Currently, the American Academy of Neurology guideline recommends that clinicians may choose not to prescribe coenzyme Q10 for moderate improvements in HD chorea; however, modest antichoreic benefits cannot be excluded.\(^{50}\)

- Coenzyme Q10 was also studied in PSP in a randomized, placebo-controlled trial, which has shown that coenzyme Q10 is safe and tolerable, leads to mild clinical amelioration, and improves cerebral energy metabolism.\(^{51}\) A study of coenzyme Q10 in PSP is now ongoing.\(^{52}\)
- As a result, there is no strong evidence thus far to recommend coenzyme Q10 treatment to patients with any movement disorder.

**Diet and Dietary Supplements**

- **Diet**
  - Although some studies have suggested that low-protein diet, ketogenic diet, high-urate diet, and “prudent” diet may lower the risk for incident PD, currently there are insufficient data to recommend any specific diet for patients with PD.\(^{3}\)

- **Creatine**
  - Recent studies have shown creatine to be safe in HD and to reduce some of the laboratory biomarkers proposed to reflect progressive neuronal damage.\(^{53,54}\) Doses of 8 g/d were well tolerated. Based on one randomized clinical trial, which showed no difference in any 16-week Unified Huntington’s Disease Rating Scale (UHDRS) outcome, the American Academy of Neurology guideline recommends that clinicians may choose not to prescribe creatine for very important improvements in HD chorea; however, moderate antichoreic benefits cannot be excluded.\(^{50}\)
  - Creatine has also been studied in a randomized, double-blinded fashion in a “futility trial” designed to evaluate if further studies of the supplement are warranted in PD.\(^{55}\) No definitive evidence of alteration of clinical function has been demonstrated. A 2-year, randomized, placebo-controlled study also reported that creatine did not improve UPDRS motor scores in patients with PD, whereas creatine can improve mood scores and reduce the doses required for dopamine replacement therapy.\(^{56}\)
  - A large multicenter, double-blind, parallel group, placebo-controlled, long-term study of creatine for treatment of early stage Parkinson’s disease (NET-PD LS-1) has been terminated recently, since the interim analysis showed that it was “futile” to complete the study because longer patient follow-up was not likely to demonstrate a statistically significant difference between creatine and placebo.\(^{57}\) Another study of creatine in both disorders is ongoing based on preliminary work.\(^{58}\)
- **S-Adenosylmethionine**
  
  - S-Adenosylmethionine (SAM) is an over-the-counter dietary supplement. Although an open-label study showed that SAM may reduce depression in patients with PD patients, it may increase the metabolism of levodopa over time and lead to wearing off. So far, there is no clear evidence for recommending SAM in PD, and further studies are needed.

- **Iron**
  
  - Iron supplements can interfere with the absorption of levodopa. Patients with PD should be informed about this interaction. Some patients with restless legs syndrome may have iron deficiency. In this case, iron supplementation should be initiated.

- **Medical food**
  
  - A small, nonblinded study reported that Tarvil, a medical food with a high level of branched-chain amino acids, is beneficial for male patients with tardive dyskinesia. Tarvil targets excess phenylalanine, which has been speculated to be the cause of tardive dyskinesia. However, this study does not provide strong evidence for Tarvil as a treatment for tardive dyskinesia.

**Herbal Supplements**

- Herbal supplements have been used in traditional medicine, especially in China and India. *Mucuna pruriens* and *Vicia faba*, which are natural sources of levodopa, have been studied and suggested to be therapeutic in PD; however, it is difficult to measure the amount of levodopa in these herbs, and taking them with medications may cause significant side effects.

- A recent systematic review of randomized clinical trials of herbal medicines for PD concluded that there is no conclusive evidence about the effectiveness of herbal medicines in PD.

- Although a study with only four patients with HD taking traditional Chinese medicines showed a decrease in UHDRS-m (motor subscale) scores, placebo-controlled studies with a large population of patients with HD are lacking.

- A recent randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled trial of extract of *Ginkgo biloba* for tardive dyskinesia has shown beneficial effects in reducing symptoms of tardive dyskinesia in people with schizophrenia. Choline, lecithin, and manganese supplements and evening primrose oil have also been suggested as possible treatments for tardive dyskinesia; however, there is currently insufficient evidence to recommend any herbal supplement for
tardive dyskinesia. Moreover, because herbs and supplements may interact adversely with drugs used to treat schizophrenia, they should not be taken without a physician’s supervision.

Caffeine and Nicotine

- Epidemiologic studies show that smoking may offer neuroprotection in PD. An inverse association between caffeine intake and risk for PD has also been shown. A recent meta-analysis showed that a history of smoking reduces the risk for PD by about 36%, with coffee and alcohol consumption also reducing risk. Because smoking and alcohol consumption cannot be recommended for patients, caffeine- and nicotine-containing edibles have lately become the center of interest in studies.

- A large, prospective study that included both men and women found a markedly lower risk for the development of PD among individuals who regularly consume caffeine, particularly in men but also in women, with an attenuating influence of hormone replacement therapy.

- A new population-based study including 490 patients with newly diagnosed idiopathic PD has evaluated the association between the consumption of nicotine-containing edibles, such as peppers, tomatoes, and potatoes, and the risk for PD. The study has shown that eating peppers 2 to 4 times per week is “consistently” associated with a 30% reduction in risk for PD. However, these findings are preliminary and need to be further demonstrated in prospective studies evaluating the association.

- Currently, there is no evidence of an association between caffeine and HD. However, in a retrospective study evaluating the relationship between caffeine consumption and age at onset of HD, the consumption of more than 190 mg of caffeine per day was significantly associated with an earlier age at onset.

Melatonin

- Melatonin is an endogenous hormone that promotes sleep in humans. Melatonin can also be taken as a supplement.

- Melatonin has been studied mainly for sleep problems in patients with PD, and it has been shown that melatonin may improve sleep time and quality, although no statistically significant change in motor scores was observed. Based on these findings, the evidence-based review of the Movement Disorder Society reported that there is insufficient evidence regarding the efficacy of melatonin for the treatment of insomnia in PD.

- So far, studies of melatonin in HD are limited to animals. The efficacy of melatonin has also been studied in tardive dyskinesia; however, there is no clear evidence, and further studies are warranted.
CONCLUSION

- Movement disorders often cause barriers to appropriate nutrition.
- Decreased ability to swallow, poor appetite, elevated energy needs, and psychosocial and cognitive factors may all impact the ability of affected individuals to maintain proper nutrition.
- Clinical attention to nutrition in patients with these disorders is useful for preventing further disability.
- Including a speech pathologist and a nutritionist on the multidisciplinary team caring for individuals with these neurodegenerative diseases will improve outcomes.

REFERENCES


INDEX

Note: The letter t following a page locator denotes a table. Letter f denotes a figure. Letter a denotes an appendix.

abetalipoproteinemia, 205t
ablative procedures, 145, 308–310
action dystonia, 13, 123–124. See also
dystonia
action tremor, 29f, 30. See also tremors
addictive disorders, diagnostic criteria, 250t
aggression, Tourette syndrome
manifestation, 285–286
akathisia
characteristics, 149, 161–162
versus restless legs syndrome, 234t
akinesia, 6, 47
anxiety disorders
diagnostic criteria, 250t
in Huntington’s disease, 274–275
in Parkinson’s disease, 260–261
Tourette syndrome manifestation, 285
treatment, 252t–253t, 261–262, 275
apathy
in Huntington’s disease, 273–274
in Parkinson’s disease, 262–263
ataxia
diagnosis, 208, 210–211, 212f–213f
etiology
autosomal dominant inheritance,
201–203, 204t
autosomal recessive inheritance,
203, 205
causes of secondary, 206–208
mitochondrial ataxias, 206
sporadic, 208
X-linked ataxias, 205
management, 211–214
nutritional considerations, 380
pathophysiology, 199–201
patient evaluation, 208, 209t–210t
speech and swallowing disorders,
352–353
athetosis
characteristics, 12, 13f, 149
treatment, 161
attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder
(ADHD)
treatment, 255t–257t
Tourette syndrome manifestations, 219,
281–282
autism spectrum disorders, 283
autonomic dysfunction
nutritional considerations, 373–375
pharmacotherapy, 100t–101t
autosomal dominant neurodegenerative
disorders. See ataxia; dystonia;
Huntington’s disease; Parkinson’s
disease
autosomal recessive neurodegenerative
disorders. See ataxia; dystonia;
myoclonus; Parkinson’s disease;
Wilson’s disease
ballism
  in chorea spectrum, 12, 13f, 149
etiology, 160
treatment, 161
  See also chorea
botulinum toxin, in dystonia treatment, 138, 139, 140t–143t
Bovie device, 315
bradykinesia, 6, 47
caffeine, therapeutic effect, 387
catatonia, 9
central nervous system, ablative procedures, 145, 308–310
central oscillators, 27
cerebellar dysfunction
cerebellar tremor
  characteristics, 30t, 33
treatment, 42
  ataxia (see ataxia)
chemodenervation, 138, 139, 140t–143t
chorea
  clinical features, 11t, 12, 13f, 149–150
diagnosis, 150f
  inherited forms
    Huntington’s disease (see Huntington’s disease)
    Huntington-like syndromes, 154t–155t
  paroxysmal dyskinesia, 125–127, 156t
  movement types, 149 (see also individual types)
nutritional considerations, 379–380
  sporadic forms, 153, 156–158
treatment, 158, 159t, 160
  workup, 158f
chorea gravidarum, 153
choreoathetosis, 12
cock gait, 48
coenzyme Q, 384–385
cognitive behavioral therapy, 297–298
constipation, 374
conversion disorder (functional neurological symptom disorder)
diagnosis
  differential diagnosis, 295
  misdiagnosis, 291
  positive clinical signs, 291
  epidemiology, 289
etiology, 295–296
  neurobiopsychosocial model, 290
treatment, 296–297
corticobasal syndrome, 54
corticobasoganglionic degeneration
  speech disorders, 350–351
  swallowing disorders, 351
creatine supplements, 385
deep brain stimulation surgery
  versus ablative procedures, 308–309
  in dystonia treatment, 145
  history, 304
  in Parkinson’s disease treatment, 109, 118f, 305–307, 312
  in tics treatment, 227
defecatory dysfunction, 374
dementia, pharmacotherapy, 97t–98t
dementia with Lewy bodies, 51–52
depression
  in Huntington’s disease, 274
  in Parkinson’s disease, 260–261
  pharmacotherapy, 97t–98t, 252t–253t, 261–262, 275
  in Tourette syndrome, 284–285
Diagnosis and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition (DSM-5)
  psychiatric diagnoses, 249t–252t
dialectical behavioral therapy, 298
diathermy, 315–316
diabetic therapy. See nutritional considerations
dopamine agonist–responsive dystonia, 130
dopamine agonists, 36
dopamine receptor blockers
  restless legs syndrome treatment, 232
  in secondary parkinsonism, 8
tics treatment, 225–226
drop attacks, 8–9. See also falling patients
drug-induced disorders
  chorea, 157
parkinsonism, 57
tremors, 34–35t, 43
dry mouth (xerostomia), 375
dysarthria. See speech disorders
dysexecutive syndrome, 271, 272f
dyskinesia
  characteristics, 19, 21t–22t
tardive syndrome, 160
dysphagia. See swallowing disorders
dystonia
  causes, 132t
  characteristics, 11t, 12–15, 123–124, 241
classification methods
  clinical features, 124–127
distribution, 124
etiology, 127–137
genetic, 128t–129
definition, 123
speech disorders, 356–357
swallowing disorders, 357–358
treatment
  algorithm, 137f
  chemodenervation, 42, 138, 139, 140t–143t
  in emergencies, 144
  oral medication, 138t
  surgical treatment, 144–145, 307–308, 313
  tremors, 30t, 33–34
dystonia-plus, 127, 130–131
electrocautery device usage, 315
electromyography (EMG), in myoclonus
diagnosis, 186, 192t, 193t, 194t
electrophysiologic analysis, of myoclonus, 186, 194t
enhanced physiologic tremor
  characteristics, 30t, 31
  treatment, 42
episodic ataxia, 201–202. See also ataxia
essential chorea, 153. See also chorea
essential tremor
  characteristics, 30t, 32–33
  versus parkinsonism, 32t, 46t
  treatments, 38, 41t–42, 307, 313
  expiratory muscle strength training, 343
extrapyramidal disorders, 3
factitious disorder, versus conversion disorder, 295
falling patients
  drop attacks, 8–9
  evaluation, 330–331
  management, 331–333
falsetto exercise, 343
fatigue, pharmacotherapy for, 98t
festination, 49
fiber-optic endoscopic evaluation (of swallowing), 340–341
fragile X–associated tremor/ataxia syndrome, 205. See also ataxia
frame-based stereotactic surgery, 310–312
frameless stereotactic surgery, 310–312
Friedreich ataxia, 203. See also ataxia
frontal gait disorder, 49
functional neurological symptom disorder.
  See conversion disorder (functional neurological symptom disorder)
gait dysfunction
  characteristics, 48–49
  patient evaluation, 49–50
gamma knife radiosurgery, 308, 310
gastroesophageal reflux, 373–374
Holmes tremor (rubral tremor), 33
Huntington’s disease
  genetic testing, 271, 272
  nutritional considerations, 379–380
  overview, 151–152, 271, 272f
psychiatric issues
  anxiety and perseveration, 274–275
  cognitive dysfunction, 272
  depression and apathy, 273
  mania, irritability, and impulsivity, 275–276
  psychosis, 276–277
speech and swallowing disorders, 353–354
treatment
  anxiety and perseveration, 275
  cognitive dysfunction, 273
  depression and apathy, 274
  mania, irritability, and impulsivity, 276
  overview, 152t–153t
psychosis, 277–278
hyperkinesia, 3
hyperkinetic disorders
common disorders (see chorea; dystonia; myoclonus; restless legs syndrome; tics; tremor)
hyperkinetic dysarthria, 345
movement classification, 10–11, 17–20
in pediatric patients, 22, 23t–24t
hypnogenic paroxysmal dyskinesia, 235
hypnogenic paroxysmal dystonia, 235
hypnosis, in conversion disorder treatment, 298
hypokinesia, 3, 47
hypokinetic disorders
hypokinetic dysarthria, 344–345
patient examination, 4, 6–10
See also individual disorders
hysterical tremors, 35
impulse control disorders
diagnostic criteria, 250t
in Huntington’s disease patients,
275–276
treatment, 254t–255t, 276
infection, post-surgical, 313–314
infectious chorea, 153. See also chorea intention tremor, 29f, 30. See also tremors
intracranial hemorrhage, 313
intraoperative real-time MRI, 312, 315
iron
dietary supplement, 386
infusion treatment, 233
irritability
in Huntington’s disease patients,
275–276
treatment, 254t–255t, 276
isolated gait ignition failure, 49
kinetic tremor, 29f, 30. See also tremors
Lee Silverman voice treatment, 343
levodopa
nutritional considerations, 372–373, 376–377
in Parkinson’s disease treatment,
36, 103, 104f, 108t, 109, 114t, 118t, 303
levodopa
in vascular parkinsonism treatment, 56
lingual feeding dystonia, 14–15. See also dystonia
lingual strengthening techniques, 344
magnetic gait, 48
magnetic resonance imaging, in deep brain stimulation surgery, 312, 315
malingering, 295
mania, 275–276
Masako technique, 343
Mayo system (of speech evaluation), 339
melatonin, therapeutic effect, 387
Mendelsohn maneuver, 343
microelectrode recording, 312
mitochondrial ataxias, 206
mood disorders, diagnostic criteria, 249t.
See also individual disorders
movement disorders
classification, 4, 5f
multiple presenting diseases, 20t–21t
prevalence, 3, 4t
See also individual disorders
multiple system atrophy
nutritional considerations, 377–378
in parkinsonism diagnosis, 53–54f, 55f
speech disorders, 347–348
swallowing disorders, 348–349
myoclonus
characteristics, 11t, 15, 165
classification
clinical characteristics, 170t–171t
etiology (see myoclonus, etiology)
location of pathology, 171t–175t
overview, 165, 166–167, 169t–171t
diagnosis
differential diagnosis, 165, 166t
electrophysiologic analysis 186,
192–193, 194t
patient evaluation, 166t, 167f,
168f–169f, 190–191t
etiology
axial myoclonus, 172t–173t
asterixis (negative myoclonus), 176,
182, 185, 186, 187f–189f
drug-induced myoclonus, 167, 176f,
177t
focal myoclonus, 171t–172t
inherited, 178t–182t
multifocal and generalized myoclonus, 173t–175t
ocular myoclonus, 238
oppositional–myoclonus–ataxia syndrome, 183t–185t
orthostatic myoclonus, 175
palatal myoclonus, 186f, 237–238
physiologic myoclonus, 175
spinal myoclonus, 236–237
treatment, 190t–191t, 193, 195t–197
myoclonus–dystonia syndrome, 131
myokymia, 239–240
myorhythmia, 239
neurodegenerative disorders
dementia with Lewy bodies, 51–52
spinocerebellar ataxias, 59
See also Parkinson-plus syndromes; Parkinson's disease; progressive supranuclear palsy; Wilson's disease
neurodevelopmental disorders, diagnostic criteria, 252t
neuroleptic malignant syndrome, 144
neuropathic tremor
characteristics, 30t, 34
treatment, 42–43
neurosurgery. See surgical treatment (of movement disorders)
nicotine, therapeutic effect, 387
nonpharmacologic treatments. See nutritional considerations; occupational therapy; physical therapy; speech disorders; swallowing disorders
normal-pressure hydrocephalus, 58–59
nutritional considerations
caffeine and nicotine, 387
dietary supplements, 385–386
herbal supplements, 386–387
for individual diseases (see under disease/disorder name)
low-copper diet, 43
melatonin, 387
unintended weight changes, 370–371, 377
vitamin therapy
B vitamins, 383–384
coenzyme Q, 384–385
vitamin C and E, 381–383
vitamin D, 382–383
obsessive–compulsive disorder
diagnostic criteria, 250t
Tourette syndrome manifestations, 219, 282–283
occupational therapist, role of, 326f, 328
occupational therapy, 326–330. See also physical therapy
oculofaciomasticatory myorhythmia, 239
oculargia, 14
opsoclonus–myoclonus–ataxia syndrome, 183t–185t
oropharyngeal dysphagia. See swallowing disorders
orthostatic tremor
characteristics, 30t, 36
treatment, 42
overflow dystonia, 13–14. See also dystonia
painful legs and moving toes syndrome, 163
palatal tremor
characteristics, 30t, 34
treatment, 43
paraneoplastic ataxia, 206. See also ataxia
paraneoplastic chorea, 156. See also chorea
parkinsonism
bradykinesia, 47
differential diagnosis
atypical disorders, 55t
laboratory tests, 62t–63t
Parkinson-plus syndromes, 51–55
rapid-onset dystonia parkinsonism, 130
secondary parkinsonism, 55–59
spinocerebellar ataxias, 59
Wilson’s disease, 59, 60t–61t
workup for, 61t–62t
gait dysfunction
characteristics, 48–49
patient evaluation, 49–50
overview, 6–8
postural instability, 48
rigidity, 47
tremors, 45–46
Parkinson-plus syndromes
corticobasal syndrome, 54
dementia with Lewy bodies, 51–52
multiple system atrophy (see multiple
system atrophy)
overview, 8
progressive supranuclear palsy (see
progressive supranuclear palsy)
Parkinson’s disease
diagnostic tools
DaTscan, 81–82
imaging and ancillary tests, 83t–85t,
86f
psychiatric assessment interview
questions, 246t
rating scales, 86–87, 88t
UK Parkinson’s Disease Society Brain
Bank Clinical Diagnostic Criteria,
81, 82t–83t
versus drug-induced parkinsonism,
57t
genetic factors, 68, 70f, 71t–72t
motor complications, 99, 101,
102f–103f
neuroprotective trials, 76, 77t–81t
nonmotor symptoms, 87, 88t–96t, 260
nutritional considerations, 371–377
overview, 67–68
pathology, 68, 72–76
patient evaluation, 260, 261t
psychiatric issues
apathy, 262–263
cognitive impairment, 263–264
depression and anxiety, 260, 261
impulse control disorders, 266–268
psychosis, 265
risk factors, 69f
speech disorders, 344–346
swallowing disorders, 346–347
treatment
advanced therapies, 109, 118t
amantadine, 103, 104f, 117t
anticholinergics, 103, 117t
of apathy, 263
catechol-O-methyltransferase
(COMT) inhibitors, 103–104f,
108f, 115t
of cognitive impairment, 264
of depression and anxiety, 261–262
dopamine agonists, 103–104f, 108t,
111t–113, 262
exercise, 322–324
of impulse control disorders, 268
overview, 103–109
levodopa, 103, 104f, 108t, 109, 114t,
303, 372–373, 376–377
monoamine oxidase B (MAO-B)
inhibitors, 103–104f, 108f, 116t
of motor complications, 109, 110t
of nonmotor complications, 96,
97t–99t, 100t–101t, 102t
psychosis, 265–266
surgical treatment, 109, 118f,
305–307, 313
surgical treatment history, 303
tremors, 36, 38, 40t–41t
tremors, 30t, 31, 32t
paroxysmal dyskinesia, 125–127,
156t, 235
pathologic gambling, 97t–98t
patient evaluation, 3, 4, 5f. See also under
individual disorders/diseases
pediatric patients
ADHD (see attention-deficit/
hyperactivity disorder)
ataxia diagnosis, 208–211
autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorders,
286–287
differential diagnosis, 22, 23t–25t
streptococcal infections, 286–287
periodic limb movements of sleep,
234–235
perseveration, 274–275
physical therapist role, 324–326, 328
physical therapy
in conversion disorder treatment, 298
for falling patients
evaluation, 330–331
management, 331–333
intervention types, 326f, 327, 332t
management team, 325
in Parkinson’s disease management,
322–324
See also occupational therapy
physiologic tremor, 31
polycythemia vera, 156. See also chorea
postencephalitic parkinsonism, 8
posteroventral pallidotomy, 304
post-pump chorea, 156. See also chorea
posttraumatic stress syndrome
conversion disorder risk, 295–296
triggering of, 248
postural instability, in parkinsonism, 48
postural tremor, 29f, 30. See also tremors
progressive supranuclear palsy
nutritional considerations, 378–379
in parkinsonism diagnosis, 52–53
speech disorders, 349
swallowing disorders, 350
pseudoathetosis, 12. See also athetosis
psychiatric disorders
diagnostic criteria, 249t–252t
mental status examination
components, 247
suicidal ideation, 248
traumatic exposure, 248
patient interview, 245–246
treatment, 252t–257t
See also individual disorders
psychodynamic psychotherapy, 298
psychogenic movement disorders, historical
See also individual disorders
psychogenic tremors (hysterical tremors), 35
psychosis
diagnostic criteria, 251t
in Huntington’s disease patients, 276–277
treatment, 97t–98t, 254t–55t, 277–278
radio-frequency ablation, 308, 310
rapid-onset dystonia parkinsonism, 130
rehabilitative treatments. See occupational
therapy; physical therapy
REM sleep behavioral disorder, 229, 230–231
resting tremor, 29f, 30. See also tremors
restless legs syndrome
causes, 232, 233f
characteristics, 11t, 15–16t, 149, 231–232
diagnosis, 178, 231t, 232, 234t
treatment, 163, 232, 233
rigidity, 9t, 10, 47
rubral tremor (Holmes tremor), 33
S-adenosylmethionine, 386
secondary parkinsonism
drug-induced parkinsonism, 57
normal-pressure hydrocephalus, 58–59
vascular parkinsonism, 8, 55–57
See also parkinsonism
shaker head raise, 343
Shill-Gerber diagnostic criteria, 294t
Showa maneuver, 343
shuffling gait. See gait dysfunction
salivation, 355, 374–375
sleep-related movement disorders
differential diagnosis, 230f
Isaacs syndrome, 240–241
myokymia, 239–240
myorhythmia, 239
neuromyotonia, 240
oculofaciomasticatory myorhythmia, 239
painful legs and moving toes, 235–236
periodic limb movements of sleep, 234–235
REM sleep behavioral disease, 229, 230–231
See also dystonia; myoclonus;
Parkinson’s disease; restless legs
syndrome; tics
somatic symptom disorders, 251t
speech disorders
behavioral treatment, 340
characteristics, 366a–367a
in corticobasoganglionic degeneration, 350–351
in dystonia, 356–357
evaluation, 337–339
in Huntington’s disease, 353
in multiple system atrophy, 347–348
in Parkinson’s disorder, 344–346
in progressive ataxia syndromes, 352
in tardive dyskinesia, 358–359
in Wilson’s disease, 355
See also swallowing disorders
spinocerebellar ataxias, 59
status dystonicus, 144
streptococcal infections, 286–287
stressor-related disorders, diagnostic
criteria, 251t
subcutaneous apomorphine infusion, 118
suicidal ideation, 248
super-supraglottic swallow, 343
supraglottic swallow, 343
surgical treatment (of movement disorders)
ablation procedures, 145, 308–310
complications from, 313–314
deep brain stimulation surgery
versus ablative procedures, 308–309
Parkinson’s disease treatment, 109, 118f, 305–307, 312–313
tics treatment, 227
for dystonia, 307–308, 313
for essential tremor, 307, 313
frameless versus frame-based stereotactic surgery, 310–312
history of, 303–304
intraoperative real-time MRI technology, 312
limitations of, 304–305
Parkinson’s disease, 109, 118f, 305–307, 312–313
safety concerns, 315–316
swallowing disorders
behavioral treatment, 342–344
in corticobasoganglionic degeneration, 351
in dystonia, 357–358
evaluation of, 340–342
in Huntington’s disease, 353–354
in multiple system atrophy, 348–349
nutritional considerations, 381
in Parkinson’s disease patients, 346–347, 372
in progressive ataxia syndromes, 352–353
in tardive dyskinesia, 359
in Wilson’s disease, 355–356
See also speech disorders
Sydenham disease, 153
systemic lupus erythematosus, 153
tardive syndromes
nutritional considerations, 380
speech and swallowing disorders, 358–359
symptomatic causes, 132t
treatment, 160, 162
tarvil (medical food), 386
task-specific tremor, 29f, 30. See also tremors
tetrabenazine, 226
tics
categorization, 217–218, 220t
causes of secondary, 223t
characteristics, 11t, 16, 219, 241
differential diagnosis, 222t–223t
epidemiology, 219, 221
treatment, 224–227
tonic ocular deviation, 14. See also dystonia
Tourette syndrome
characteristics, 219, 220t, 279
psychiatric comorbidities
ADHD, 281–282
aggression, 285–286
anxiety, 285
autism spectrum disorders, 283
depression, 284–285
OCD, 282–283
pediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorders, 286–287
tics
psychiatric differential diagnosis, 279–281
treatment, 225t–226t
toxins, tremor induction, 34–35t
trauma
conversion disorder risk, 295–296
diagnostic criteria, 251t
tremors
characteristics, 11t, 16–17t
classification, 29–30
clinical disorders
list of, 30t (see also individual disorders)
treatment (see under individual disorders)
clinical evaluation, 36, 37t–38t, 39f
diagnostic testing, 37, 40t
pathophysiology, 27–29
UK Parkinson’s Disease Society Brain Bank Clinical Diagnostic Criteria, 81, 82t–83t
vascular chorea, 156. See also chorea
vascular parkinsonism, 8, 55–57
videofluoroscopic swallowing evaluation, 340–342
vitamin deficiency, hereditary ataxia with, 203, 205
vitamin therapy
  B vitamins, 383–384
coenzyme Q, 384–385
vitamin C and E, 381–382
vitamin D, 382–383
vocal tics, 217–218
weight changes
gain, 377
loss, 370–371
Whipple disease, 239
Wilson’s disease
  clinical characteristics, 60t–61t
  overview, 59
  speech and swallowing disorders, 355–356
  treatment, 43, 139, 143f
tremors, 30t, 36
xerostomia (dry mouth), 375
X-linked ataxias, 205